WORKING PEOPLE OF THE WHOLE WORLD, UNITE!
KIM IL SUNG
WORKS

26

January–December 1971
CONTENTS

NEW YEAR ADDRESS

January 1, 1971 ........................................................................................................................................1

ON INCREASING THE VITALITY OF THE WORK OF THE LEAGUE OF SOCIALIST WORKING YOUTH TO SUIT THE CHARACTER OF YOUNG PEOPLE


1. On Improving and Strengthening the LSWY’s Organizational Work ........................................12

2. On Intensifying the Ideological and Cultural Education of Youth and Students ............................29

3. On Some Tasks for Implementing the Decisions of the Fifth Congress of the Party .............................46

ON THE TASKS OF TRACTOR DRIVERS IN THE RURAL TECHNICAL REVOLUTION

Speech at a National Meeting of Tractor Drivers, February 12, 1971 ..................................................54

ON SOME TASKS FOR IMPROVING THE SUPPLY SERVICES FOR THE PEOPLE IN JAGANG PROVINCE

Speech at a Consultative Meeting with Officials of Party and Government Bodies, Economic Establishments and Working People’s Organizations in Jagang Province, February 28, 1971 .........................................................................................................................65
MOTIVATION WORKERS MUST SET AN EXAMPLE IN ALL WORK AND
KNOW HOW TO ROUSE THE MASSES TO ACTION

Speech Delivered at the National Conference of the Active Motivation Workers
and the Information Workers Each in Charge of Five Families, March 9, 1971 .......... 91

ON SOME PROBLEMS ARISING IN IMPLEMENTING
THE UNIFORM PRICE POLICY

Talk to Officials in the Price Assessment Sector, March 26, 1971 .................. 101

LET US CONSOLIDATE AND DEVELOP THE GREAT
RESULTS OF THE PUKCHONG MEETING

Speech at the South Hamgyong Provincial Meeting to Mark
the 10th Anniversary of the Pukchong Enlarged Meeting
of the Presidium of the Central Committee
of the Workers’ Party of Korea, April 6, 1971 ........................................ 111

CONCLUDING SPEECH AT THE SECOND ENLARGED
PLENARY MEETING OF THE FIFTH CENTRAL
COMMITTEE OF THE WORKERS’ PARTY OF KOREA

April 19 to 23, 1971 .................................................................................. 125

1. On Developing Fruit Culture .................................................................. 125

2. On Developing Foreign Trade ................................................................ 136

3. On Improving the Public Health Service ............................................. 148

CHILDREN’S UNION MEMBERS, ALWAYS BE READY
TO BE RESERVES OF COMMUNIST BUILDERS

Congratulatory Message Addressed to Members of the Korean
Children’s Union on the Occasion of the 25th Anniversary
of Its Foundation, June 6, 1971 ............................................................... 163

OUR YOUNG PEOPLE MUST TAKE OVER THE
REVOLUTION AND CARRY IT FORWARD

Speech Delivered at the Sixth Congress of the League
of Socialist Working Youth of Korea, June 24, 1971 .............................. 172

2
THE REVOLUTIONARY PEOPLES OF ASIA WILL WIN IN THEIR COMMON STRUGGLE AGAINST US IMPERIALISM

Speech at the Pyongyang Mass Meeting Welcoming Samdech Norodom Sihanouk, Head of State of Cambodia and Chairman of the National United Front of Kampuchea, *August 6, 1971* ..................186

LET US STRENGTHEN THE MACHINE-TOOLS PRODUCTION CENTRE

Speech at a Consultative Meeting of the Managerial Workers of the Factories and Other Enterprises in the Kusong Area, *September 4, 1971* .............................................................202

ON IMPROVING THE SUPPLY OF CONSUMER GOODS TO THE WORKING PEOPLE

Speech Delivered to the National Meeting of Commercial Workers, *September 15, 1971* .............................................................217

1. The Advantages of Socialist Commerce in Our Country ..................217

2. Some Tasks in Improving the Supply of Consumer Goods to the Working People .............................................................220

ON SOME PROBLEMS CONCERNING THE INTERNAL AND EXTERNAL POLICIES OF THE WORKERS’ PARTY OF KOREA AND THE GOVERNMENT OF THE REPUBLIC

Interview with the Managing Editor of the Japanese Newspaper *Asahi Shimbun* and the Correspondent of the *Kyodo Press*, *September 25 and October 8, 1971* .............................................................234

ON SOME MEASURES FOR SOLVING THE ACUTE MANPOWER SHORTAGE

Concluding Remarks at the Enlarged Meeting of the Political Committee of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea, *September 30, 1971* .............................................................267
FOR THE INTRODUCTION OF UNIVERSAL TEN-YEAR COMPULSORY GENERAL EDUCATION

Concluding Remarks at an Enlarged Meeting of the Political Committee of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea, September 30, 1971 .................................................. 287

ON SOME PROBLEMS IN RAISING THE PEOPLE’S STANDARD OF LIVING

Speech Delivered to Officials from the Sectors of Commerce, Distribution and Light Industry, October 1, 1971 .............................................................. 302

ON REVOLUTIONIZING AND WORKING-CLASSIZING WOMEN

Speech at the Fourth Congress of the Democratic Women’s Union of Korea, October 7, 1971 .................................................................................. 323

LET US CONSOLIDATE THE SUCCESS ATTAINED IN THE PRODUCTION OF MACHINE TOOLS

Speech Delivered at a Consultative Meeting with Senior Officials and Model Workers of the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory, October 9, 1971 ................................................................. 344

ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS RAISED BY THE IRAQI JOURNALISTS’ DELEGATION

October 11, 1971 ........................................................................................................ 363

ON SOME TASKS OF THE KOREAN FEBRUARY 8 FILM STUDIO

Speech Delivered before Workers of the Korean February 8 Film Studio, October 22, 1971 .............................................................. 374

CONCLUDING REMARKS AT THE THIRD PLENARY MEETING OF THE FIFTH CENTRAL COMMITTEE OF THE WORKERS’ PARTY OF KOREA

November 18 and 23, 1971 ........................................................................................ 386

1. On the Duties of the Machine Industry in Carrying Out the Three Major Tasks of the Technical Revolution ......................................................... 387
2. On Increasing the Production of Consumer Goods for the People

ON IMPROVING AND STRENGTHENING THE TRAINING OF PARTY CADRES

Speech Delivered before the Teachers of Party Cadre-Training Institutions, December 2, 1971

1. On Arming Officials with Our Party’s Revolutionary Methods and Popular Style of Work

2. On Teaching Officials the Specific Experience of the Revolution and Construction in Our Country

ON THE CHARACTER AND TASKS OF THE TRADE UNIONS IN A SOCIALIST SOCIETY

Speech at the Fifth Congress of the General Federation of Trade Unions of Korea, December 14, 1971

ON THE THOROUGH IMPLEMENTATION OF THE PRINCIPLES OF SOCIALIST EDUCATION

Speech Delivered at a National Meeting of Teachers, December 27, 1971
Comrades,
Dear compatriots, brothers and sisters.

Having seen out 1970, which was marked by a great victory and tilled with historic events, we greet the New Year 1971, with fresh hope and a valiant fighting spirit.

On the occasion of the New Year, I should like to offer, on behalf of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea and the Government of the Republic, my warm congratulations and greetings to you comrades and all the Korean people.

The year 1970 was a momentous year in the development of our Party and revolution. It was a year of great victory, a brilliant success, in our people’s revolutionary struggle and in their work of construction.

Last year we successfully held the Fifth Congress of the Workers’ Party of Korea in an atmosphere of great enthusiasm on the part of all the people, enjoying unqualified trust which all the working masses place in our Party and the unanimous support and encouragement of our friends. The congress summed up the great victory which our people had achieved in the revolutionary struggle and in their work of construction under the revolutionary banner of the Marxist-Leninist idea, the Juche idea. It declared before the world that our country had become a socialist industrial state and clearly demonstrated the unbreakable unity and solidarity of the whole Party based on its
monolithic ideology. The congress also put forward a new, militant programme to hasten the complete victory of socialism in the northern half of Korea and the nationwide victory of the Korean revolution, and showed our people the road to a more brilliant victory. Through the Party congress, the fighting efficiency of the Party increased further, its prestige among the people rose and their trust in it deepened, as never before, and unity and solidarity between the Party and the masses became indestructible.

Last year, our people welcomed the Party congress by displaying boundless loyalty to the Party and high patriotic devotion, and by performing brilliant feats of labour. They achieved great successes in all spheres of socialist economic construction and in building up our defence power. All our working people who turned out in the final campaign to carry out the magnificent programme of socialist construction put forward by the Fourth Congress of our Party, advanced rapidly at “Kangson speed,” a new Chollima speed. In this way they attained all the targets of the Seven-Year Plan and carried out the historic task of socialist industrialization with credit. An independent, modern industry was created in our country, and agriculture and all other sectors of the national economy were put on a solid basis of modern technology. In step with the rapid development of industry and agriculture, science and culture made remarkable progress, our towns and villages were made more beautiful, and the living standards of the working people further improved.

Last year the enemy increased their moves towards aggression and another war. In order to deal with the tense situation, we pressed ahead with defence construction and increased the country’s defence capabilities. In this way we defeated every one of the enemy’s ceaseless acts of military provocation and defended the security of the country and the people with credit.

At present, encouraged by the great prospects outlined by the Party congress, our people are working in soaring spirits, making new innovations and achieving undreamt-of success in all sectors of socialist economic and defence construction almost every day.
All our successes in the past year prove the validity and unbreakable strength of our Party’s policies. They are the results of the heroic struggle of our people who, under the leadership of the Party, continue to advance forcefully along the path blazed by the Party without giving in to hardships.

Looking back upon 1970 which enriched the history of the country, I should like to offer my warm congratulations and thanks to our heroic working class, cooperative farmers, scientists, technicians, educationists, public health workers, writers, artists, officials of the Party, state and economic bodies, those of the working people’s organizations and all other working people who accomplished brilliant exploits on all fronts of socialist construction.

I also express my heartfelt gratitude and congratulations to the valiant officers and men of the People’s Army and of the People’s Security Forces, public security servicemen, Worker-Peasant Red Guardsmen and Red Young Guardsmen, who are firmly defending the country, the gains of socialism and the happy lives of our people.

Comrades,

This year again finds us welcoming the New Year in a situation where our land and nation are divided because of the occupation of south Korea by the US imperialist aggressors.

The south Korean people are bravely fighting for democratic freedom, national independence and reunification in spite of the enemy’s fascist repression and terrorism. The struggle is gradually spreading to wider areas and in an organized manner. In the course of this, the workers, peasants and other sections of the masses are being awakened more and more to class awareness, and the revolutionary forces in south Korea are steadily growing.

I extend active support and encouragement to the south Korean revolutionaries including the comrades of the Revolutionary Party for Reunification, patriotic democrats, young people and students and the rest of the south Korean people who, in difficult and arduous circumstances, are heroically fighting against the US imperialist aggressors and their stooges. I wish them greater success in their noble
anti-US struggle for national salvation in the new year.

My warm New Year congratulations and greetings also go to all our overseas compatriots, including our 600,000 compatriots in Japan and all cadres of the Chongryon (the General Association of Korean Residents in Japan) who are fighting for their democratic national rights and for the reunification of the country. I wish them greater success in their future struggle.

On behalf of the entire Korean nation I should like to offer my New Year greetings and militant encouragement to the peoples of the socialist countries and the revolutionary people in Asia and the rest of the world and all peace-loving people on this earth who are fighting for the victory of the common cause of peace, democracy, national independence and socialism under the banner of Marxism-Leninism and under the revolutionary banner of the anti-imperialist, anti-US struggle.

Comrades,

Today we have a heavy but honourable task of carrying out the programme formulated by the historic Fifth Congress of our Party. If this task is implemented, our country will become a more prosperous socialist country, our people will be well off in every respect, and a radical change will be brought about in their advance to socialism and communism.

The new year of 1971 is the first year in which we are going to implement the magnificent programme of socialist construction laid down by the Fifth Congress of our Party. This year we set about the worthwhile struggle to implement the Six-Year Plan. As the saying goes, “Well begun is half done,” and success in carrying out the Six-Year Plan as a whole depends largely on how we fight the first battle this year. The whole Party, all state and economic organs, enterprises, working people’s organizations, workers, farmers, scientists, technicians and all the people must rise to the occasion as one and implement the first-year quota of the Six-Year National Economic Plan successfully and must bring about a great new revolutionary advance again on all fronts of socialist construction.
This year we must, first of all, further accelerate the development of the productive forces of the country and relieve the working people from difficult work by forcefully conducting the technical innovation campaign in all fields of the national economy. To this end, we must begin with the mechanization of the coal industry and concentrate our efforts on this project.

The mechanization of coal mining is important not only in freeing coal miners from backbreaking work but also in meeting the growing demands of the different economic sectors for coal more satisfactorily. This year the whole Party has to concentrate its efforts on the coal industry, and the machine-building and metallurgical industries and all other sectors of the national economy must give active assistance to this industry. In this way we must make a decisive advance in the full and partial mechanization of coal mining.

In order to meet all the ever-growing demands for iron and steel for economic and defence construction, this year we must make a great effort in the development of the ferrous metal industry. We have to increase iron ore production more rapidly, and improve the preliminary processing of raw materials so as to increase pig iron output from the existing blast furnaces greatly. We must also increase the variety and standards of rolled steel on a large scale and further develop the output of second-stage-processed metal goods.

The chemical industry must make the most of its existing capacity so as to produce larger amounts of chemical fertilizer and agricultural chemicals for the rural communities and rapidly increase the production of various chemical products including chemical fibre and synthetic resin for light industry. The building-materials industry must operate the newly-built or expanded cement factories at full capacity and increase cement production considerably.

In particular, success in the technical revolution, the central task of the Six-Year Plan, depends mainly on the machine industry. The machine industry must increase the production of different kinds of machine tools to the maximum and manufacture more one-off equipment of better quality needed for the construction of new
factories. It has to produce many vessels needed for fishing and transport, heavy-duty lorries, bulldozers and excavators for the mines, and a large number of new types of farm machines for rural communities.

We must radically improve the quality of consumer goods and quickly boost the manufacture of daily necessities and strengthen the foodstuff industry as soon as possible. This is one of our important tasks this year. In particular, we must improve the guidance of local industry and increase assistance to it so that the large number of local industry factories, including the ones which were built as a present to the Party congress last year, will prove their worth by increasing the production of high-quality consumer goods for the people.

Our loyal fishermen are making fresh innovations every day in catching fish. Last year they caught more than 300,000 tons of fish in December alone and achieved incredible success by catching a maximum of 18,000 tons a day. Allow me to offer my warm congratulations to the Party’s loyal fishermen on their innovations. The workers of the fishing industry must continue to work hard to increase the catch and, in particular, take measures to process it without any waste. They should process fish by freezing, pickling, drying and tinning by means of a mass campaign. They must also organize the transport of fish carefully and rapidly, so as to increase their supply to the working people.

This year we shall have to continue to make great efforts in the development of agriculture.

The agricultural sector must not slacken the efforts which ensured a bumper crop last year, but must carry on the rural technical revolution vigorously. In this way, they will make a further innovation in grain production and in all other branches of agriculture this year.

A great reserve for increased grain production lies in the introduction of non-paddy field irrigation and in the early transplanting of seedlings. All possibilities must be mobilized to expand the area of non-paddy fields under irrigation rapidly, and increase the cultivation of cold-bed rice seedlings. We must see that tractor drivers work with a
higher sense of responsibility and that rice seedlings are bedded out by May 25. We must also ensure that the principle of the right crop on the right soil is strictly observed, that good seeds which have been established to suit specific areas are planted, that rural labour is concentrated on farming, that a vigorous campaign for compost production is instituted and that, in particular, full preparations are made for this year’s farming.

We must work hard to put livestock farming on an intensive basis and modernize it so as to make it highly productive. It is essential to fertilize and tend orchards properly so as to increase fruit production and adopt appropriate measures for its storage and processing.

Easing the strain on transport is a very urgent task in accelerating economic construction in our country at present. This year we must see that the whole Party and all the people pay attention to this task and develop transport, particularly railway transport, further still.

This year the railway transport sector must work hard to demonstrate the effectiveness of the electrification of the railways to the full and reduce the unloading time of goods wagons. It must, therefore, concentrate mainly on increasing the traffic capacity of the existing railways and also press ahead with the laying of new lines.

We must also explore new navigational routes, improve ports and harbours to develop water transport quickly, increase the rate of motor vehicle operations and organize transport rationally so as to increase the carriage of loads by motor vehicles.

An important task in capital construction is the thorough implementation of the Party’s policy on the concentration method of construction. This year the capital construction sector must concentrate its efforts on the projects now under way, including the ten major projects for the construction of the Sodusu Power Station, the Pukchang Thermal Power Plant, the Unggi Thermal Power Plant, the oil processing factory, the steel and rolling shops of the Kim Chaek Iron Works, the sintering and reduced pellet shops of the Hwanghae Iron Works, the synthetic rubber factory, the Ryangchaek Machine Factory, the May Textile Mill, the September Textile Mill, the port of
Sinpho, and the Ryuktae Shipyard, so that they can be finished as soon as possible. In addition, it must refrain from depending solely on the state and centrally-run industry for building materials, and organize the production of bricks, roofing tiles and other building materials in all local areas so that a large number of dwelling houses, schools and other buildings can be constructed with locally available materials. The designing establishments must eliminate waste in designing and produce designs needed for construction on time.

Other sectors of the national economy must also effect fresh innovations and win greater victories.

While accelerating the construction of the socialist economy to the maximum on the one hand, we must, on the other, continue to endeavour to increase the nation’s defence power so that we can counter a possible enemy invasion from any quarter.

The important task of the munitions industry is to carry out all its quotas over and above the plan and supply the People’s Army with greater numbers of better weapons.

The People’s Army must intensify military and political training and increase its combat power in every respect so as to keep itself fully prepared.

The Worker-Peasant Red Guardsmen and Red Young Guardsmen must intensify military and political training while performing their economic and revolutionary tasks in an exemplary manner, and keep themselves prepared and alert at all times.

It is also necessary to fortify the whole country so as to make it more impregnable by finishing the construction of defences both on the front and in the rear as soon as possible, and make energetic efforts to build up reserves of strategic materials.

Our tasks this year are enormous and very difficult, and they require that the whole Party and all the people should work more strenuously.

The workers, farmers, working intellectuals and all the rest of the people must continue to make innovations and advance by bravely overcoming all the difficulties and obstacles in their way in a higher revolutionary spirit of self-reliance, and all sectors and units of the
national economy must strive for maximum economy and for increased production.

The young people who, as a shock brigade in socialist construction, always bear the brunt of difficult and labour-consuming work, must continue to stand in the forefront of the first-year battle to implement the Six-Year Plan. In particular, they must become the pioneers of the technical innovation campaign to speed up the development of the nation’s productive forces and free the working people from backbreaking work by enthusiastically introducing new techniques and the achievements of modern science in production.

All the scientists and technicians must work hard to solve the technical problems which arise in construction and production. In particular, they must ensure that new techniques are introduced in the metallurgical, chemical and machine industries.

Easing the acute manpower situation is the most important task for all sectors of the national economy. Labour must be used most economically by improving its allocation, organizing production carefully and establishing strict order, lest even a single work hand should be wasted.

Raising the efficiency of leadership is an important guarantee for the successful implementation of the national economic plan for this year and for a new advance in the building of socialism.

The senior officials of the state bodies, economic establishments and enterprises must implement the Chongsanri spirit and method thoroughly in all work, radically improve economic management as required by the Taean work system and by the new system of directing agriculture, and organize work in detail so that all sectors and all units carefully work out their quarterly, monthly and daily plans and carry them out without fail.

Cadres in particular must make determined efforts to improve their politico-ideological, technical and practical qualifications. They must thoroughly establish a revolutionary habit of studying by living up to the motto—“The whole Party must study!”—and make the year 1971 a year of raising their qualifications and leadership ability.
We must continue to intensify the ideological revolution, the revolutionization and working-classization of the whole of society, and further the revolutionary work attitude and the revolutionary way of life in all spheres. Everyone must oppose indolence and laxity, lead a frugal and diligent life as befitting revolutionaries, and, in particular, wage an uncompromising ideological struggle to prevent bourgeois and revisionist ideas from infiltrating our ranks. “Let us work, study and live in a revolutionary manner!”—this is the slogan raised by the Party today.

We are still on the road of revolution. We cannot rest content with the success we have already achieved. Complacency and marking time are taboo for revolutionaries; struggle and advance, creation and innovation are all that is required of us.

Let us all equip ourselves more firmly with the monolithic ideology of the Party, unite closely behind it and advance vigorously to carry out the Six-Year Plan before the set time.
ON INCREASING THE VITALITY
OF THE WORK OF THE LEAGUE
OF SOCIALIST WORKING YOUTH
TO SUIT THE CHARACTER
OF YOUNG PEOPLE

Speech at the Conference of the Heads of the Youth-Work
Sections of the Party Committees and the Chairmen
of the League of Socialist Working Youth Committees
of Provinces, Cities, Counties, Factories, Enterprises
and the Institutes of Higher Learning
February 3, 1971

Today I should like to discuss a few matters concerning the improvement and strengthening of the work of the League of Socialist Working Youth.

An important question facing the LSWY today is to put greater vitality into its work.

At present, the LSWY lacks the spirit and energy it should have as a communist youth organization; it is so feeble that it looks like an “old people’s league”. The LSWY is an organization of young people and, therefore, it should always be active and play a vanguard role in the revolutionary struggle and construction, in and out of work, and should act like a youth organization. Then the LSWY will conform to the characteristics of young people—daring, courageous, enterprising and passionate.

We must put more vitality into LSWY work to suit the young
people’s character, thus turning it into a pulsating and vibrating revolutionary communist youth organization.

1. ON IMPROVING AND STRENGTHENING THE LSWY’S ORGANIZATIONAL WORK

The lethargy of LSWY work can be attributed to various factors, including incorrect Party guidance, but the main factor is that LSWY cadres are incompetent and are too old.

In order to animate LSWY work we must first build up the ranks of its cadres with young people.

Young people lead an organizational life in the LSWY for a specified period of time, not for the whole of their lives. Therefore the LSWY membership is constantly changing. In keeping with this special feature of the LSWY its cadres should also be continually replaced by young people. If they are allowed to carry on LSWY work until they get old and are not replaced by young people at the right time, the LSWY will ultimately become senile. A young people’s organization should not become old, although man himself grows old.

The LSWY must positively be a young people’s organization; so its cadres must be constantly replaced by young people. We have made this point more than once, but it has still not been dealt with properly.

We have recently learned that amongst LSWY cadres many comrades are between 38 and 40, and that some of them are even 45 years old. These comrades are not suitable to be LSWY workers, although they may work for the Party or the working people’s organizations. In former days people of over 40 already had grandchildren, and we could hardly call them LSWY workers.

Such old LSWY workers cannot organize and guide work in keeping with the character of young people. As man gets older, his character, behaviour and physique change. When young, people are
high-spirited, have a strong fighting will and are indefatigable and throw themselves readily into any hard work. But as they grow old, they change. A Korean saying goes, “An old cat seeks a well-heated part of the room.” An old man, by nature, hesitates to take the lead in a tough job and prefers comfort. Thus the old people are apt to fall into empiricism and expediency in their work.

Moreover, old LSWY workers do not mix easily with young people or keep in contact with them. Young people do not take to old LSWY workers and do not open their hearts to them. What is worse, if the old LSWY cadres stand on their dignity, they will become more estranged from young people and unable to understand what they have in their minds. Putting on airs is forbidden in all work, and much more so in work with young people.

When LSWY workers are their contemporaries, young people come to LSWY organizations, express opinions freely about their work and even speak frankly about all their personal affairs. This is demonstrated by the case of the chairman of the LSWY committee of the youth construction office of the Sodusu Power Station. He has been engaged in LSWY work for 12 years. Until six years ago he was frequently visited by LSWY members, who raised various problems which had come up both in and outside their work. But as he grew older, he had fewer visitors, and he himself admitted that he was reluctant to mix with young people. If LSWY workers adopt this attitude, they will inevitably be alienated from young people and will not be able to give proper guidance to LSWY work.

The position amongst women LSWY workers is even worse. When they are young, they dance with the girls and get on well with them, but as they grow old and get married, they have to attend to their children and husbands, so they gradually become tired of dancing and feel unable to mix with the girls.

As you see, older people who work as LSWY cadres find it hard to make contact with young people and listen to their opinions and, consequently, are liable to fall into subjectivism. In all respects, older people are unsuitable to be LSWY cadres. All LSWY cadres,
without exception, should be young.

At present, however, many of our officials are not bold enough in appointing young people to leading posts in the LSWY on the pretext that they lack ability or experience. Some of them even continue to select older people as LSWY cadres, alleging that only those who are at least about 40 are eligible for leadership. This is a grave mistake. We are living in a revolutionary era now. Why, then, should we not appoint members of the rising generation as cadres? We must boldly assign tasks to young people who are forming a communist world outlook and train them through struggle. Only then will they work well and become fine cadres when they are older.

There is no reason why young people should be less capable than older people. They can work better than their elders, because they are full of vigour, sensitive to the new and have a very strong will to carry out any difficult task whatever the difficulties might be.

This is also proved by our experience in the course of our own struggle. We organized the Down-with-Imperialism Union and guided the youth movement at the age of 14. At the age of 20 we formed the guerrilla army and fought the Japanese imperialists. After we defeated Japanese imperialism, we were confronted by many difficult and complicated tasks—building the Party and people’s power, founding the People’s Army, forming a united front and so on. We were still young at the time, so we worked deep into the night, never feeling tired; we felt invigorated when we awoke in the morning. During the war we used to inspect different sectors of the front, riding in a car all through the night, yet we did not find it hard because we were young.

When we organized a guerrilla army in east Manchuria, it was joined by many young people of 17-18; and there was only a tiny handful of old people. During the anti-Japanese armed struggle young people were always daring in the fight against the enemy and exemplary in army life.

Those who set out for the revolutionary struggle in south Korea today, unafraid of the gallows, are mostly young.

People also study a great deal during their youth. Marx wrote the
Communist Manifesto at the age of 29. The fact that he wrote such an excellent work at this early age shows that he had read widely and broadened his knowledge of society in his youth.

If young people do have a fault, it is that sometimes they are so bold as to act in a way which can cause some losses. However, this is a fault which arises from the abundant courage they call upon to fulfil their tasks.

Today I should like to tell you comrades about an incident which happened in the early days of the anti-Japanese armed struggle when our young people were fighting to arm themselves. After we had laid down the line of armed struggle at the Mingyuegou Meeting, young people gave it their support and fought valiantly to obtain weapons. At that time there was a certain youth worker who had made several successful attempts to acquire arms. He became so bold that he once led some lads in a raid from an ambush on the roadside in broad daylight and snatched scores of rifles from the enemy. Of course, the action cost a few lives but it was a daring act.

Whatever shortcomings may appear amongst young people from time to time can easily be corrected if Party organizations exercise proper guidance. We must boldly build up LSWY cadres with young people and assign them as many tasks as possible.

We think it better to set the age limit at 29 for the lower-level LSWY cadres who work personally with LSWY members. It does not follow that chairmen of primary LSWY organizations should necessarily be Party members. Our Party Rules stipulate that anyone who has reached the age of 18 may be enrolled in the Party. Therefore, young and able non-Party people, who may become Party members some day, should be appointed chairmen of the primary organizations and trained systematically, before being accepted into the Party.

County LSWY workers should be under 32 years of age and those at provincial and national levels under 35.

The staff of the youth-work sections of all Party committees must also not be too old. Of course, the LSWY workers’ age limit cannot be applied to them. But if they are too old, they cannot give the LSWY
organizations proper Party guidance suited to their specific needs. Therefore, they should not be older than 40.

Working on this principle, we must prepare cadres for the LSWY from amongst young people within the next year or two.

Next, we must establish the system of guidance of activities in the Children’s Union (CU) and the LSWY organizations correctly.

In our country today everyone takes part in political life from his CU days, when he first undergoes organizational training and is educated in a collective spirit. Then he is admitted to the LSWY where he leads an organizational life and prepares himself politically and ideologically for Party membership.

So CU, LSWY and Party life are closely linked and form an integral system. In this organizational system CU and LSWY activities at primary and middle schools occupy a very important place. We must stimulate these activities and encourage the young people and children to participate in the life of the organization. Then they will lead an organizational life faithfully when they grow up, fully convinced that they cannot live without their organizations, and will value the interests of society and the collective more than their own. Intensifying CU and LSWY life at primary and middle schools is of great importance also in arming young people and children with a collective spirit and training them to observe the code of community life willingly, thus accelerating the revolutionization and working-classization of the whole of society.

Our experience during the period of the anti-Japanese armed struggle shows that those who had participated faithfully in the life of the Children’s Vanguard or Children’s Corps did the same in the Young Communist League and, later, in the Party. So, at that time, we composed and sang the song of the “Alliance of Three Generations”--the Children’s Corps, the Young Communist League and the Party.

We must begin by determinedly strengthening organizational life in the CU and LSWY at primary and middle schools.

In your speeches yesterday you said that some LSWY workers who
have graduated from middle schools are not proficient at preparing a report or a resolution and that they do not know how to preside over a meeting properly. This indicates that LSWY organizations have failed to give correct guidance to CU and LSWY activities at middle schools.

Today you have all the necessary conditions for the education of children and young people. In our country there is a people’s government led by the working class, and universal compulsory nine-year technical education is in force. Thanks to our Party’s correct educational policy, all the children and young people between 7 and 16 receive free education at schools where they lead a CU or LSWY life. They lead eight years of organizational life in the CU and LSWY at primary and middle schools. During this period, the students regularly attend CU and LSWY meetings, where they take part in debates, see, hear and learn how a report and a concluding speech are delivered and how a meeting is run. Therefore, if LSWY organizations give proper guidance to CU and LSWY activities at middle schools and help the students take an active part in the life of their organization, middle school graduates will no longer be bad at drawing up reports and resolutions or be at a loss when presiding over meetings.

If we are to improve CU and LSWY activities at schools, we must select competent people as teachers who directly guide the organizational life of the students.

School education in our country is aimed at training all students to be fine builders of socialism and communism and ardent revolutionaries. Therefore, our schools must not merely pass on knowledge of natural science and technology to their students but also give them a broad knowledge of society and politics which is needed for their organizational activities—how to make a speech, prepare reports and resolutions, conduct meetings and so on. In addition, schools must give their students political and ideological training through an organizational life. Therefore, competent teachers must give the students systematic guidance.

From now onwards, the LSWY should systematically train CU instructors and LSWY chairmen of middle schools and assign them to
primary and middle schools. At the same time, CU instructors and school LSWY chairmen should be provided with suitable working conditions and allotted fewer teaching duties so that they can exert all their efforts to guide CU and LSWY activities. In our opinion, they should be assigned a couple of lessons a week on such subjects as communist ethics or revolutionary history and be allowed to devote the remaining hours entirely to guiding the student activities in the organization.

In order to improve guidance to LSWY members’ organizational life it is necessary to establish a system of collecting chronological data about them from their CU days.

As you know, children and young people do not stay in a particular organization for a long time; they often move as they grow older and change their schools and workplaces. In other words, they lead a CU life at primary schools and for two years or so at middle schools; then they lead a LSWY life at middle schools for about three years and continue this after they go out into the world. Some LSWY members who graduate from middle school continue to lead an organizational life either at factories or on farms, and others in the army or at higher schools.

Under these circumstances, LSWY organizations must always inform each other about the organizational activities of every CU or LSWY member on his transfer, so that continuity of guidance to their activities in their organization is guaranteed. This will enable LSWY organizations to understand fully how each of their members has led his organizational life since his CU days, and what his good and bad points are, and to give proper guidance in each individual case.

Suppose that scores of middle school graduates are sent to work at a certain factory. The school LSWY committee must hand over to the factory LSWY committee the records specifying who has been exemplary in CU and LSWY activities, who has studied hard and conducted himself well in his school days and who has weaknesses and of what kind, and how he must be educated. Then the factory LSWY committee can give appropriate guidance to the organizational life of
each member concerned, based on the detailed information about his past activities at school, about his good and bad points, and about his tastes and qualities.

Since there is no such system at present, LSWY organizations in factories, on farms, in the People’s Army, universities and other branches do their work without knowing which of the LSWY members were activists and hard-core elements at middle schools and waste a great deal of time before learning something about them. And when they have completed their term as LSWY members, the LSWY organizations just transfer them to the trade union, the Union of Agricultural Working People (UAWP) or the Women’s Union, giving no information whatsoever about their life in the organization. As the LSWY works in this manner, its organizations in factories and rural areas are unaware of their members’ life in their school days, nor do the Party, the trade union, the UAWP or the Women’s Union know about their members’ activity in the CU and LSWY. Today this shortcoming in the LSWY is adversely affecting the work of other working people’s organizations and the Party.

A LSWY organization must prepare a record concerning the activities of each person from his CU days, which should be sent to the organization concerned, when he goes out into the world after school: to a Party organization when he is enrolled in the Party following his LSWY membership; and to the trade union or the UAWP or the Women’s Union.

This will remove difficulties in Party work and in the work of the working people’s organizations and help them solve many personnel problems.

In our country everyone goes through the CU and LSWY. Therefore, if a systematic record of his membership in these organizations is prepared from now onwards, there will be no need to search everywhere to find relevant information about him. For example, if a Party organization needs some information about a certain trade union member’s activities, it will just take a look at his record kept in a file by his trade union; if it wants to know about a
Women’s Union member, it will ask her organization about her. Then it will be fully acquainted with her life since childhood as a member of the various organizations.

If we introduce a system of keeping a chronological record of each person’s membership, it will be of great help in correctly implementing our Party’s policy of evaluating him, with the main emphasis on his ideological preparedness and his fidelity to the Party.

At present, personnel papers only contain data concerning a person’s family and relatives; there is no information about his socio-political life about his activities in the CU and LSWY, how he has tried to arm himself with the Party’s monolithic ideology or how he carried out his revolutionary tasks. Needless to say, such personnel papers should include his family background but, at the same time, they must include specific records of his history—on his life in the organizations concerned, his services to the revolution and construction, and so on. Only then can a general idea of his good and bad points be obtained so as to make a correct assessment of him.

All LSWY organizations should prepare an evaluation card on the organizational life of a youngster and child as soon as possible and, on this basis, should give effective guidance to his or her activities.

Next, we must set up a proper system of training LSWY cadres.

At present, life in the CU is the first stage of our people’s political and organizational life. Of course, the first phase of our collective life is at the kindergarten. But the kindergarten has no political organization and, accordingly, the kindergarten contains no politically organized life. Only after their enrolment in primary school are children attached to the CU, which is a political organization, and through their life in the CU, they undergo their first political and ideological training. Then they move on to the LSWY, a youth organization, and receive more revolutionary training. Metaphorically speaking, LSWY life is a sort of intermediary process between the first and second stages in the machine-building industry. After passing through their LSWY organization, people are transferred to the Party, the trade union, the UAWP or Women’s Union organization, where
they will lead an organizational life for the rest of their days. Therefore, life in the CU and LSWY can be regarded as transitional, although the organizations themselves are not.

Just as life in the CU and LSWY is transitional, so CU instructors and LSWY cadres must move on. They cannot stay in fixed posts for a long time, unlike cadres of Party and other working people’s organizations. As CU and LSWY members move on to other organizations when they reach the age limit set for their respective organization, overage CU instructors and LSWY cadres must also be moved to other posts and the newly-trained must take their places.

In keeping with this, we must establish a proper system of training LSWY cadres and, particularly, increase the function and role of the LSWY University and other LSWY cadre-training institutions. Then we can train a large number of LSWY cadres and CU instructors and continue to replace cadres who have been transferred.

However, LSWY leadership has so far failed to give proper guidance to the LSWY University and other training institutions, nor have Party organizations built up the LSWY’s cadre-training institutions properly.

We should give better guidance to the LSWY’s cadre-training institutions so that they will bring up a larger number of competent cadres.

It is necessary first to determine accurately the extent of enrolment required for the LSWY University and other LSWY’s cadre-training institutions. The number of trainees will have to be fixed on the basis of a correct estimate of the total number of LSWY cadres required to take the place of those who are transferred.

Needless to say, we cannot train all LSWY cadres at the LSWY University and other training institutions. It would be ideal if we could, but the present situation does not allow us to train so many people. Therefore, the extent of the enrolment in the training institutions will have to be decided by taking into account the fact that some LSWY officials have to be trained directly at the point of production.
At the same time, it is necessary to put forward the names of good students.

Good comrades who have graduated from middle school should immediately be recommended for the LSWY University and other training institutions. If they are sent to the LSWY University on their graduation, they will complete the university course at the age of 18 or 19 and become LSWY cadres.

Many of those comrades who have worked in factories or on farms for about three years after graduation from middle school and many demobilized soldiers who have been tempered in the army should also be recommended for the training institutions. The factory and the People’s Army are each a kind of university. At production sites and in the army people experience hardship, learn how to work among the masses and are tempered politically and ideologically. Therefore, if a middle school graduate works at a factory or serves in the army for three years or so and studies at the LSWY University, he will be much better prepared than those who enter this university immediately after completing their middle school course. We should select those who are fully armed with the Party’s monolithic ideology and who have led an exemplary LSWY life, and send them to the LSWY University for a one-year course, before appointing them as LSWY cadres. Of course, we cannot replace soldiers regularly now, because our population did not increase during the Fatherland Liberation War. But this problem will be solved in a few years’ time. If a middle school graduate serves in the army for about three years and then studies at the LSWY University for a year, he will be about 21 or 22 and able to engage in LSWY activities for ten years or so.

Classes should also be set up at the LSWY University for training CU instructors and middle-school LSWY chairmen. CU members and middle-school LSWY members are so young and inexperienced that they cannot work satisfactorily by themselves. Therefore, competent personnel trained at the specialized training centres should be appointed as middle-school LSWY chairmen, although students may be appointed chairmen of school primary organizations.
The educational system of the LSWY University must be reformed. The present three-year course seems a bit too long. If one studies three years at the university, one will not be able to engage in LSWY work long enough after graduation. Therefore, the LSWY University’s educational system should consist mainly of a two-year course, in addition to a one-year course.

Another important aspect of the training of LSWY cadres is to increase the proportion of women involved.

At present the number of women cadres is small in all spheres, and this is especially true of the LSWY. There are only a few women attending this very conference. This is also the case with the students of the LSWY University.

Party and LSWY organizations should pay particular attention to training women LSWY cadres, so as to increase their numbers.

To do this, leading officials should, first of all, have a correct attitude towards women.

Some of them are very much inclined to disparage women cadres or discriminate against them. This is a manifestation of the threadbare feudal ideas still remaining in their minds. In our country there are no grounds whatsoever for discriminating against women. The number of women in our population is no smaller than the number of men, nor are they playing an inferior role to men in public life.

We must launch a strong campaign to root out the survivals of the old feudal ideas among cadres such as having a disparaging attitude towards or discrimination against women so that all of them develop a correct attitude towards the fair sex.

In order to increase the proportion of women among LSWY cadres, women should not get married too early in life.

If they get married during their best period of learning and working, their domestic burdens will prevent them from studying regularly or taking an active part in socio-political activities. At present, some women who have studied at universities at state expense get married on their graduation and coop themselves up in their homes, instead of serving the revolutionary cause actively. On reaching the age of 25
some women start to worry because they think they are already old maids. They are mistaken. They may have been justified in thinking so in former days. However, women living today in the age of revolution must be resolved to study harder and work more while they are single, even if they get married a bit later.

Next, LSWY organizations must train many young hard-core communist elements.

The League of Socialist Working Youth is a mass youth organization comprising broad sections of our young people. Therefore, in order to arm all its young people with communist ideas, there must be hard-core communist elements within the organization.

Of course, to equip young people with communist ideas we could organize a separate Young Communist League to educate them. However, this does not correspond to the characteristics of Korean youth. Our young people are by nature fond of a collective life and like to be affiliated with a definite organization. If we organize a separate Young Communist League under these circumstances, the young people who were not admitted to it might form other organizations for themselves. This could eventually cause a split in our youth movement. In particular, when our country is not yet reunified, we must not organize a separate Young Communist League with a limited number of young people. Therefore, we should unite the broad sections of young people in a single organization and arrange for them to lead an organized, unified life, while arming them with communist ideology.

Since liberation our Party has consistently held fast to this principle in leading the youth movement. Immediately after liberation there was not only the Young Communist League but also the Young Men’s Christian Association, the Paegui Youth League and many other youth organizations. Taking advantage of this, blackguards like Jo Man Sik schemed to draw the young people over to their side. If we had not rallied broad sections of young people in a single, united organization as early as possible, we could have lost many young people and our
youth movement could have been split. Therefore, with a view to uniting all our young men and women in a single organization, our Party took the initiative in dissolving the Young Communist League and, at the same time, disbanded all the other youth organizations and founded a united Democratic Youth League to include young workers and peasants and other wide sections of young people. As the socialist transformation of production relations was completed in the northern half of Korea and, consequently, individual tradesmen, manufacturers and peasants became socialist working people and all young people became socialist working youths, our Party transformed the Democratic Youth League into the League of Socialist Working Youth, to which broad sections of working youth were affiliated to lead an organizational life.

All these steps taken by our Party were quite correct. If we had not taken these steps in good time, we could not have rallied broad sections of young people around our Party nor brought about sound progress in the youth movement.

We must develop the League of Socialist Working Youth into a Young Communist League in the future. But we have not yet been able to arm the entire LSWY membership firmly with a communist world outlook. If, at this transitional stage, we are to guarantee the proper functioning of LSWY organizations and educate and reform broad sections of their membership and rally them closely around our Party, we must train many hard-core communist elements, that is the reserve of the Workers’ Party membership.

Who, then, are the hard-core elements? Generally speaking, they are cadres. Today by young hard-core communist elements we mean young people who have a communist world outlook, that is, youth who have a strong class attitude, are fully prepared ideologically and theoretically, and have a revolutionary determination to devote their all to the struggle for the Party and the revolution, for communism, until the end of their days.

Those who hate landlords, capitalists and imperialist aggressors, and who are resolved to overthrow the capitalist system and build a
socialist and communist society should be considered as being substantially equipped with a communist world outlook. In the present circumstances obtaining in the northern half of Korea where the landlord and capitalist classes have been liquidated and the socialist system established, when we speak of people with a communist world outlook we mean those who are ready to defend the socialist system firmly, fight to the end in whatever adversities to safeguard this system even at the cost of their lives, to battle staunchly against imperialism, US imperialism in particular, and Japanese militarism, to establish the same socialist system in the southern half as in the north and, further, to turn the whole world into a communist society. LSWY organizations should single out such young people as hard-core elements and train them well.

Needless to say, it is no easy task to train large numbers of such young hard-core communist elements. But LSWY organizations will be able to bring up as many hard-core elements as they want, provided they work conscientiously. In former days we trained numerous hard-core elements while carrying out difficult underground activities. And there is no reason why we cannot do so now, when the working class is in power and the socialist system has been established.

LSWY organizations should carry out organizational work properly and make sure that the young hard-core communist elements, fully armed with our Party’s monolithic ideology, make up more than 30 per cent of their membership. Only then can they become such sound organizations as to strike fear into the enemy.

If LSWY organizations have more than 30 per cent hard-core elements, this will mean that our Party will be rooted deeply amongst the broad masses of young people and that it will have more than 30 per cent of its reserve among them. This will also have a great effect on the future improvement of the quality of our Party’s composition.

While training many young hard-core communist elements, LSWY organizations should work well in order to guarantee their enrolment in the Party.
Since the LSWY is our Party’s reserve which is responsible for the guidance of the political life of young people, it ought to give them guidance and assistance and guarantee their eligibility for Party membership. Then LSWY organizations will feel that they have done something worthwhile and all their members will lead a more purposeful organizational life. If the Party organization directs the whole work of preparing LSWY members for admission to the Party, LSWY members may only try to curry favour with it; they may not rely entirely on their own organization or take part in organizational activities seriously. Therefore, LSWY organizations should be responsible for the work of recommending for Party membership those young hard-core elements who are exemplary in their life in the LSWY and are firmly equipped with a communist world outlook, and for work to guarantee their eligibility for Party membership.

Furthermore, all young people should be thoroughly armed with our Party’s revolutionary idea, the Juche idea, thus rallying themselves closely around our Party.

When a revolution is started without a Marxist-Leninist party, it is inevitably necessary to learn from foreign revolutionary history, experience and revolutionary theory. In the past our country had no revolutionary party of the working class, nor did it have its own revolutionary theory on how to carry out the Korean revolution and what to do to contribute to world revolution. Accordingly, we had no choice but to learn from a foreign country’s revolutionary history.

However, our situation today is different from what it was at that time. Our country has a strong revolutionary party; our Party has a long revolutionary history. From the days when we trained the nucleus of our force while carrying out our underground activities, our Party has more than 40 years of revolutionary history and brilliant revolutionary traditions. In addition, we have revolutionary theories and policies with regard to revolution and construction. Since we have the guiding theories of our own Party and its revolutionary policies, we must educate our working people and youth thoroughly in our Party’s revolutionary idea, the Juche idea.
Unless young people are firmly equipped with our Party’s revolutionary idea, the Juche idea, they cannot be a reserve on which our Party can depend nor can they implement the Party line and its policies.

LSWY organizations should arm all their members fully with our Party’s revolutionary idea, the Juche idea, and unite them firmly around the Party and organize and mobilize them vigorously in the campaign to implement the Party line and its policies.

Now, it is necessary to intensify LSWY members’ activities in the organization.

We united broad sections of young people in the LSWY with a view to strengthening their organizational life and training all its members to be ardent revolutionaries and true communists.

In order to be a true communist, one must carry on revolutionary activities in the organization. Only through an intensive organized life can people acquire a collectivist spirit, one of the major qualities of a communist, equip themselves firmly with our Party’s Juche idea and guarantee unity of action in the campaign to implement the line and policies laid down by the Party. If they shun the organized life and live as they would at home, keeping themselves aloof from work, they can never be communists.

If one holds nominal membership of an organization without participating in its collective, organized activities, one cannot be called a member; it is impossible to guarantee unity of action with such a man. This is why our Party Rules stipulate that a Party member who absents himself from the Party life for more than six months without a justifiable reason shall be automatically excluded from the Party.

In order to improve their members’ life still more, LSWY organizations must encourage all the members to observe the norms of LSWY life scrupulously. The organizational sections of LSWY committees, in particular, must establish rigid discipline and must be more demanding so that the LSWY members can participate earnestly in organizational activities.
2. ON INTENSIFYING THE IDEOLOGICAL AND CULTURAL EDUCATION OF YOUTH AND STUDENTS

The period when one is a youth is the most important in one’s life. In this period one not only attains physical maturity but also acquires a knowledge of political, economic, cultural and other matters and undergoes a great change in one’s mental development.

Therefore, it is very important to educate young people properly and lead them along the right path. We must give them revolutionary education and guide them along the right path, especially when they start life in the LSWY at the age of 14-17.

During the period from the third to the fifth grade of the middle school, or at the beginning of adolescence, they are more sensitive than at any other time; they are easily influenced by their environment and want to do whatever they wish. Young people and students of this age want to smoke when they see adults smoking; they want to drink when they see them drinking. Their curiosity is so great that they try to do whatever others do. At this time they become independent and daring, and have a growing urge to do everything their own way and by their own efforts.

The early stage of adolescence is also marked by a very strong desire to search for truth and make revolution. We know this well from our own experience. In our middle school days we already realized that the society we lived in was unjust and full of contradictions, and we began to oppose its institutions. At the time we tried to clarify the reason why some people rode in rickshaws whereas others pulled them and why there were people who lived extravagant lives in imposing mansions with twelve gates, whereas others had to roam about the streets as beggars. We sympathized with
the rickshaw-pullers and were resolved to join hands with them in knocking down the fellows who rode in rickshaws. As middle schoolboys we were really indignant at the sight of the landlords and capitalists plundering people of their property and cruelly beating up innocent workers and peasants. At that time we would wonder particularly why the Japanese imperialists had swallowed up Korea and were even going to conquer China and why Koreans had to be maltreated even in an alien land. Gradually, we arrived at a definite conclusion that all the misfortunes and sufferings of the Korean people were caused by none other than the Japanese imperialist aggressors and that, consequently, unless they were crushed and the unjust society overthrown, the gulf between the rich and the poor could not be eliminated nor could everybody live a life of equality. And finally, we set out on the road of revolutionary struggle.

At the early stage of adolescence, as you see, people are haunted by many questions about social phenomena and begin to form a revolutionary world outlook. If young people have a bad teacher or a bad leader then they are apt to take the wrong path. If a bad teacher explains to young people that men were originally divided into the rich and the poor and that that was their fate, they will not try to make revolution but, instead, will merely lament over their ill luck and be inclined to improve their lot by making money.

This is how the world outlook of quite a few young people in south Korea is being formed now. They only know money; they say: “It is fate that makes us rich or poor; in order to be prosperous, we must make money. Money is a panacea.” So the young people are employing every conceivable means to earn money; some of them try to steal money while others attempt to amass fortunes overnight through gambling.

On the other hand, if young people are properly educated by a good leader, things will be different. They will have a revolutionary resolve to fight the exploiting classes, if they are properly taught that “Capitalist society is unjust. Man is not born either rich or poor. Landlords and capitalists have lots of money because they exploit the
workers and peasants. Therefore, we must strike down those who bleed the latter white.”

Thus people may grow to be revolutionaries or degenerate depending on what education and ideological influence they receive in their early youth. Therefore, if the young people are taught properly and are encouraged to do good deeds at school, they will follow the right path. If not, they will contract bad habits and go astray. For example, if it is clearly explained to young people and students that smoking and drinking are bad for their health and that leading a dissolute life undermines society, they will not emulate or commit evil deeds. But, if they are left to decide for themselves whether they smoke, drink or live dissipated lives, they will pick up bad habits and commit evil deeds.

Today our country has no social factor that can engender capitalist ideology. This is true. But obsolete ideas still persist in our people’s minds to a considerable extent, and there are many possibilities of young people being affected by the obsolete ideas of their parents or relatives and acquiring bad habits.

LSWY organizations should, therefore, carry out proper education work amongst young people and students to keep them from being infected with negative ideologies and guide them along the right path.

An important aspect of their education is that they should be encouraged to take a keen interest and play an active part in social and political affairs and prepare themselves fully to do their share for society.

We must not let the students just study at school. Study for study’s sake, study divorced from the reality of society, is of no use. If the students are only made to learn letters by heart, they can only become “locked chests of knowledge”. We must never make our young people and students, the reserve of our revolution, “locked chests of knowledge”. We must always teach them what is vital for the revolutionary struggle and the work of construction.

LSWY organizations should make young people and students realize clearly that they belong to society and to particular
organizations; thus, they will always be interested in what policy our Party proposes, what the situation in our country is, what our revolution demands, how their organizations are being run. No matter what they study, be it technology, literature or music, or military science, the young people and students must get down to it with great ambition and hope to contribute a large share to the Party and the revolution, to our society and the people. Thus, all our youth and students will be well-informed people, proficient in politics, economics, military affairs, literature and art, science and technology.

First of all, therefore, they must read a great deal.

Reading gives us information about nature and society; it is an important vehicle for improving cultural levels. Revolutionary literature, in particular, is a great contributing factor to increasing young people’s zeal for revolution.

This is quite clear from our experience, too. In our middle school days we read Marxist-Leninist literature, as well as Gorky’s *Mother* and many other revolutionary novels, such as *On the Amnok River*, *A Young Vagrant*, *An Authorized Life of Ah-Q*, *Blessing*, and *The Iron Flood*. This convinced us more of the corruptness of the society we lived in then and hardened our resolve to set out on the road of revolutionary struggle.

Nowadays, however, some youngsters and students do not read much. This is partly because we have few good books; but the main reason is that they have not formed the habit of reading zealously. LSWY organizations should train all young people and students to take to reading so that they will read many good books while they are young.

In order to encourage them to read a great deal it is essential to provide them with adequate facilities.

I was told that at present our young people and students do not fully understand such words as “revolution”, “class”, “productive forces” and the “transition period”. This is because the LSWY has failed to organize its work properly and supply study materials to them regularly. From now onwards, LSWY organizations should provide
them with enough varied study materials.

If the LSWY newspaper carries brief explanatory notes on the terminology of social science, it will greatly assist LSWY members in their study. The LSWY newspaper used to carry explanatory notes on this terminology and study materials for some time. Nowadays, however, we seldom find such things in the LSWY newspaper. I think this newspaper ought to carry such study materials again. It is a daily newspaper. If it explains just ten terms in each issue, it can explain a great number. Young people will be able to use the explanatory notes for their study every day; they will copy them in their notebooks or clip them and bind them together and make a fine glossary.

We also have to publish a dictionary of social science for the young people. This does not require a large sum of money or involve any hardship. We are quite capable of publishing this kind of dictionary, once we make up our minds to do so. We must compile a dictionary of social science quickly in order to help our young people in their study.

A large number of books should be published in various forms to suit the characters of young people. We should make large books as well as pocket-size ones. If we make some booklets which contain passages from the *Selected Works* and other documents with regard to the tasks facing young people in different spheres, it will be very convenient for their study.

At the same time, LSWY organizations should establish well-appointed reading rooms or youth libraries at schools, in workers’ districts and city and county seats and make sure to run them well. It is not so difficult to equip small reading rooms or libraries. Provide them with newspapers, magazines, political books, literary works and scientific and technological books. That will be sufficient.

For our young people and students to acquire rich knowledge, extensive, diverse circle activities have to be organized such as public presentations.

At present some youngsters behave badly, they are attracted by unhealthy elements, because LSWY organizations leave them to their own devices, without making extensive arrangements for their
extracurricular activities. If we do not educate and lead our young people along the road to socialism and communism properly, the enemy may draw them into the fold of capitalism. This is also a battleground to decide who conquers whom.

To prevent young people from doing mischief they should be denied any opportunities for this. In other words, we must make sure that they work earnestly when they work, study zealously when they study, and take an active part in various interesting meetings organized for them after school. Then bad influences will not be able to mislead them.

Some parents now do not take into consideration the mental qualities of their children and urge them only to study after school. This will not lead them along the right path. When they finish their homework, they should be allowed to go out and participate in circle activities. We must see that they sing, play instruments, do physical exercises or read novels according to their wishes. This will prevent them from getting into mischief and enable them to learn more.

The extensive participation of young people and students in various circle activities is also very useful in developing their strength.

Young people like to boast about themselves before the public. They are very ambitious to distinguish themselves by doing what others cannot do. This is one of their major qualities and we must develop it properly. There are some officials who suppress this enterprising spirit and ambition, criticizing them for their “vainglory” and “vanity”. They must not do this. If they do, young people will lose both energy and courage. They should be allowed to show off. Only then will they become important officials and great men. If they just co-op themselves up at home, they will not be worth their salt.

LSWY organizations should regularly hold poetry readings, concerts, reading sessions, film shows, contests of oratory and the like for youngsters so that they will recite poems, sing songs, give their impressions of a novel or a film or make speeches prepared by themselves, according to their tastes and talents. It will also be a good idea to arrange seminars frequently, in which young people can read
papers on the scientific and technological subjects they have studied. If a young man has learned the Party congress report by heart and wants to recite it before the audience, arrangements should be made to afford him the opportunity.

Literary works or essays written by young people and students should first be heard at a gathering of students to select those which are excellent, which can then be presented to the public. They may be presented at different places according to their contents and the specific conditions. In Pyongyang, for example, the young people of Pothonggang District may be sent to Taedonggang District or those of Taedonggang District to Pothonggang or Moranbong District for public performances. If public performances of such works are frequently arranged and good works are applauded and thought much of, the young people will be high-spirited and more enthusiastic about such activities in the future.

In order to organize many such gatherings, it is necessary to equip and use youth halls, halls of culture and democratic information halls properly.

When we say a youth hall, you visualize something grand and imposing and want us to build it immediately. This will not do. We cannot afford to build many large halls all at once, and we need not do so. At first the hall can be set up in a modern dwelling house to accommodate a dozen or so people and a large line youth hall built later, as circumstances permit.

Let me tell you about our experience. While we were studying at Jilin, we used the YMCA hall for the revolutionary education of youth and students. At that time we had no assembly hall of our own. So we had to make use of the YMCA hall. In those days the YMCA hall in Jilin had a tennis court, a pingpong table and a couple of rooms simply provided with some newspapers, magazines and Bibles. On Sundays the management of this hall would let young people read newspapers or play tennis or pingpong for a small fee. When a scholar or a noted personality visited the town, they would hold a lecture and collect entrance fees. Needless to say, the hall was run with a view to inducing
young people to read Christian literature and imbuing them with Christianity.

However, we used this hall to instil revolutionary ideas in young people. Many youth and students would flock to the hall every Sunday. Taking advantage of this, we encouraged them to read revolutionary novels, hold seminars and debates on questions of revolution. In the end, we even formed a revolutionary organization among them.

We often applied this method in revolutionizing the peasantry in the farm settlements of east Manchuria.

In those days old villagers would gather at a house of an evening and pass the time away, talking about various things. We took advantage of this to educate them. At these gatherings we first let a good talker tell interesting stories such as *The Story of Three Kingdoms* and *The Tale of Chun Hyang* for some 40 minutes; and during the intermission, we would read a revolutionary book for them or tell them that there was a tenant dispute at such and such a place and that this dispute meant a struggle to reduce the farm rent. We also explained questions of vital interest to the peasants, such as how to fight when the landlords were exploiting them. In this way we imbued them little by little with revolutionary consciousness.

Meanwhile, at a gathering of young people we would first teach them a song, recite poems or read a novel suitable to their particular requirements, before going over to a story about the revolution. In this way we revolutionized one farming village after another and trained many peasants and young people to be revolutionaries.

You should also use this method, making effective use of youth halls or democratic information halls to educate young people well.

At present, in Pyongyang alone, there are very many club houses, cinema houses, and halls of culture, as well as scores of conference halls which belong to ministries and other national bodies. LSWY organizations must make the most of those facilities. If they arrange things carefully and organize various gatherings properly, our young people and students, in addition to what they learn at school, will acquire a wide range of useful knowledge needed for social life.
You can also furnish a rural democratic information hall simply and use it effectively. You should provide a couple of warm floor-heated rooms in which the young people can read newspapers and books and hold meetings. If they gather there every evening and sing songs or read novels or newspapers and debate the contents, they will learn a lot.

LSWY organizations should launch a widespread campaign for young people and students to learn at least one technical skill.

If our country is to develop quickly, all our young people must acquire at least one technical skill. Therefore, our Party has had a slogan to this effect for a long time.

Young people have a strong desire to learn; they are very eager to study science and technology. They are keen to drive a car, build a radio set, and master various technical skills. We should provide the necessary facilities for them to learn how to drive a motorcar and a tractor and study electronics or electrical engineering, according to their wishes. Those who want to practise marksmanship should be provided with a shooting range to satisfy this desire. It is not difficult to make these arrangements because our country has a developed industry.

If all our young people know how to drive a car or a tractor and handle electronic apparatus, then our science and technology will develop rapidly. Moreover, if they learn how to drive a car or a tractor and become good marksmen in their middle school days, our nation’s defence capacity will also increase.

The physical training of young people and students should also be organized extensively.

If they are physically weak, they are useless, however knowledgeable and technically skilled they may be. When they are healthy, they will not fall ill and will be able to contribute actively to national defence, economic construction and cultural development. Therefore, LSWY organizations must always pay particular attention to the physical training of our young people and students who will have to shoulder the future destiny of the country.
In order to toughen their bodies, it is necessary to organize various exercises such as swimming and mountaineering frequently. Mountaineering is a very good exercise to strengthen the bodies and determination of young people. I was told that some of them are now frightened by the sound of an owl hooting in the woods. This is because schools have not organized mountain-climbing frequently. If young people are afraid of the mountains, how can they wage a revolutionary struggle and become revolutionary fighters?

We should organize mountain-climbing for many youngsters to toughen their constitution, train their determination and foster their courage. They should climb the mountains in spring and autumn as well as in summer and winter. It is ideal to go mountaineering in spring and autumn, go skating in winter and swimming in summer. In the mountainous areas like Ryanggang Province, they could well be encouraged to go skiing for the most part of winter. Camping should also be organized often, as well as mountain-climbing and swimming.

Since our country has abundant mountains and rivers, young people should take such exercises as often as possible. Then they will familiarize themselves with our terrain conditions and be proficient in mountain warfare, river-crossing operations and marine warfare in the future when war breaks out.

Let me cite an example. Last year one of our small boats was wrecked at sea. But none of the crew was hurt, and all returned alive. At that time we even mobilized aircraft in our earnest endeavour to search for them, but in vain. These comrades put their ailing mate on a plank of wood and swam for nearly ten days, helping each other, before returning to the homeland. They are all brave comrades, indeed; they are heroes. Because all of them were strong-willed, courageous, healthy and good swimmers, they returned into the embrace of their Party and motherland, in spite of such adversity, braving the winds and the waves. All our young people should further temper their bodies and minds in order to be brave revolutionary soldiers like these comrades.

Nowadays some people think that sportsmen are hooligans. They
are grossly mistaken. It is true that there were a few hooligans among sportsmen in the past. But this is impossible under our system. We must wage a powerful ideological struggle against this mistaken attitude towards physical culture and sports and pay a great deal of attention to the physical training of the young people and students.

LSWY organizations must not just leave physical culture and sports to schools, but should undertake it personally. In this way they will guarantee that all our young people are strong enough to serve in the defence of the country and the building of socialism efficiently.

Next, it is necessary to encourage young people and students to write a great deal.

We have stressed this at plenary meetings of the Party Central Committee and on many other occasions. But it seems to me that LSWY organizations have not encouraged youngsters and students to write a great deal. The latest issues of the LSWY newspaper and other publications carry little which has been written by young people and students.

Our present conditions have a great deal of material with which you can write about for our youngsters and students. If one gives a vivid description of what one has seen, heard and felt while fishing on the deep seas or of the life of a lumberman or a smelter, it will be excellent reading matter. A good account of a walking tour will also be welcomed by young people. If such articles are produced in plenty, youth and students will be influenced by them and firmly resolve to work and live like the heroes.

You may write an account of your foreign trip based on your impressions and have it published in the LSWY paper. You can also describe conditions in a bourgeois society or developments in newly independent nations or write a factual account of how foreigners highly praise our Party’s policies and the successes achieved by our people in their socialist construction. If these are published in a newspaper or a magazine, our young people and students will read them with interest.

You can also write about mountain-climbing and camping. Write
well about a mountain or a peak, about how you felt when you heard
the hooting of an owl there at night and so on. Then young people and
students will be interested in your account and will be encouraged to
go mountaineering or camping themselves.

LSWY organizations should ensure that young people and students
write a great deal in order that many good works will appear which
cater for their interests and reflect their life.

Next, young people and students must be encouraged to launch a
movement to learn foreign languages.

As we always say, we must be prepared to fight the US and
Japanese imperialists some day. All our young people should,
therefore, know at least a few English and Japanese words. If they do
not know a single English or Japanese word, they will find it hard to
deal with enemies captured on the battlefield. Every young man and
woman must know how to say simple English and Japanese phrases
such as “Hands up!” and “Put down your guns and surrender, and we
won’t shoot you!”

When we were fighting the Japanese imperialists, all our
anti-Japanese guerrillas, for the sake of the revolution, made a point of
learning some simple Japanese phrases such as “Hands up!” “Put
down your guns, and we won’t shoot you!” “Don’t shed your blood
for the Japanese Emperor. Go home!” and so on.

LSWY organizations should encourage all young people to learn a
few English and Japanese words of practical use, so as to be ready for a
possible war.

In addition, all our young people should develop a love for work
and take devoted care of state and social property.

As you all know, in a socialist society all the wealth of the nation is
the common property of the people. Therefore, taking care of state and
social property in a socialist society plays a great part in increasing the
nation’s wealth and in consolidating and developing the socialist
system. No matter how many things we might have built through hard
work, it would all be to no avail and we would not be able to increase
the nation’s wealth or build a communist society, if we did not take
devoted care of them and damaged them through mismanagement. However, LSWY organizations have not yet initiated effective social movements and educational activities for youngsters and children to look after state and social property carefully. As a result, in many cases they handle common property in a random way.

Some time ago we visited a village in Kaechon County, South Phyongan Province. There was a building there which had formerly been used by the People’s Army. Because no one had taken care of it, the roof tiles were missing and all the doors were broken. It would not have been in such a bad state if the LSWY organizations and their members there had been at all concerned about it. But the LSWY organizations lacked the attitude of a master towards common property, so they did nothing, although they knew that a valuable building belonging to the nation was becoming dilapidated.

LSWY organizations should launch a widespread campaign for young people and children to do many good deeds so that they develop a love for work and take conscientious care of common property from their childhood.

The campaign to do good deeds is very useful for getting young people and children accustomed to loving labour and taking good care of common property and, particularly, for their communist education and transformation.

They should begin with an extensive movement to plant trees. Trees are scarce in the mountains of North and South Phyongan, North and South Hwanghae and in our other provinces. There are some trees in the vicinity of Pyongyang which is under our constant care. But the mountains are sparsely wooded once you leave the Phyongsong or Sunchon district. Because the mountains have few trees, they are unattractive, and the chirping of mountain birds is rarely heard.

When the mountains are densely wooded they look beautiful and help to prevent natural disasters such as landslides and floods; and they will be inhabited by many animals and birds like roe deer and pheasants. Thickly wooded hills will offer excellent shelter to both the
army and civilians in the event of war.

We have to organize an extensive movement for young people and children to plant trees, so as to cover all our hills and fields with dense foliage. Recently the Scientific Film Studio produced a film entitled *Fast-Growing Trees*. You should see it before you go back to your homes, and make sure that your streets, villages, hills and fields are planted with many fast-growing trees. These trees will meet the population’s need for firewood and offer you plenty of timber for various purposes.

It is also necessary to launch a widespread movement to repair roads. Now our country has an incomparably greater number of motorcars and tractors than in the past. Only by keeping the roads in good repair can we increase the use of cars and tractors and succeed in implementing the Party’s policy of introducing bus services in the country areas. LSWY organizations should initiate a social movement among their members and CU members to repair and take good care of the roads all the time.

They should also organize extensive drives to remove stones from fields, plant willows on river banks and at the edges of fields, keep villages neat and tidy, plant and tend flowers on the roadside and so on.

In addition, LSWY organizations should initiate various social movements such as one to aid the bereaved families of the revolutionaries, the families of those killed by the enemy or who fell in action during the war and the dependents of the People’s Army servicemen.

In this way all our young people will keep towns and villages clean, take devoted care of schools, meeting halls and other communal property and, further, firmly defend and safeguard our power and socialist system established through the revolution.

Furthermore, it is necessary to encourage our youngsters and children to take an active part in revolutionizing their families and towns and villages.

At present many officials talk a great deal about revolutionization, but they have not got down to the work of revolutionizing their towns
and villages in real earnest. Of course, it is no easy task to revolutionize the whole of a ri or a dong and get everyone to breathe in our Party’s ideology, develop a love for work, take conscientious care of communal property and fight uncompromisingly against counter-revolutionaries. But this is quite possible if we set our minds to it.

We revolutionized farming villages in spite of the strict surveillance of Japanese imperialist police. And there is no reason why we cannot revolutionize a workers’ district or a farming village today when the Party is strongly encouraging the young people and children to carry out their social activities and provides them with every necessary facility to do so. At present there are schools in all parts of our country, and every village has CU members and Red Young Guardsmen. If we train just five to ten hard-core elements among them and rouse them to activity, it is quite possible to revolutionize a rural village or a workers’ district.

LSWY workers seem to regard the work of revolutionizing towns and villages as something difficult to understand. They should not do so.

The LSWY will be perfectly able to organize the system whereby one information worker is responsible for five households, which we have tested in Changsong County. This is one of the excellent methods of revolutionizing the countryside. Charge teachers and students with responsibility for five households each and let them regularly meet the children and elders of the houses in their charge and explain and propagate our Party’s policies, cultural and hygienic work, anti-espionage battle and other matters. Then we can turn all the inhabitants into active supporters and champions of our Party policies, prevent people in good time from becoming indolent or trespassing on social property and allow no place for spies, wreckers and saboteurs to set foot.

Through students, the LSWY organizations can also organize the work of revolutionizing their parents. Any parent is deeply concerned about his children’s future and readily complies with their requests.
Therefore, if LSWY organizations educate the children, youngsters and students properly they will be able, through them, to exert revolutionary influence on their parents and revolutionize their homes.

Let me cite an example. After the war we were transforming individual tradesmen and manufacturers along socialist lines. At that time there were many individual entrepreneurs and tradesmen in Pyongyang. They not only exploited others but also often engaged in excessive profiteering or stole state-owned materials and equipment. So we explained to the students in detail the injustice of exploitation through private enterprise and trade and the advisability of joining cooperatives. And we made sure that they spread the Party policy of forming cooperatives amongst their parents. So the students perseveringly urged their parents to join the cooperatives, saying: “Father, I am really ashamed to write down in my personal record that I’m a tradesman’s son. How clear and clean I shall feel, if I can also describe myself as a cooperative member’s son like others! Hurry up and join the cooperative and change your social status.” They nagged at their parents once, twice, thrice, until they gave in. Thus influenced by their children, many people volunteered to join the cooperatives at the time.

Schools should educate their students properly in such a manner. Then, if their fathers absent themselves from work, they will ask their fathers: “Why don’t you go to work today, Father?” and when they return home early, they will ask. “Why have you come home so early today, Father?” These questions will sting the conscience of those who hate to work and have been reluctant to participate in the life of an organization and will help them to correct their shortcomings gradually.

Through the students we can also conduct successfully the work of rallying around our Party that section of people with complex backgrounds. Suppose there is a son of a former member of the “peace maintenance corps”. We should tell him: “When the enemy was here, your father joined the ‘peace maintenance corps’. But our Party being lenient, forgave him; so let’s encourage your father to believe in the
Party and do more work for it.” We must educate the student in this manner, so that he will reason with his father.

From now on, LSWY organizations should, under the leadership of the Party organizations, make conscientious efforts to lead the children, young people and students to take an active part in the revolutionization of the workers’ districts and farming villages. They should also teach them necessary information work methods, provide them with experience and a great deal of educational material.

In order to conduct effective ideological and cultural education among young people by various methods, it is essential to raise the role of LSWY organizations and their leading workers positively.

Today, our young people have no problems in their lives; they are provided with every facility for studying and working as much as they wish. Hunger is inconceivable in our country now. Although they cannot afford to wear fancy clothes, all of our people have clothes for every season. Moreover, there are enough schools where our young people, children and working people can study as much as they wish.

Therefore, if LSWY organizations and the leading workers firmly get down to their work, they can educate and reform all our young people and students to be ardent revolutionaries. Some young people indulge in delinquent behaviour because LSWY organizations and their workers have not worked well. Logically, there should not and cannot be any delinquent young people under our social system.

As I said some time ago, while inspecting the offices of the LSWY Central Committee, our LSWY workers now do not study their work wisely enough nor do they organize it energetically. I was told that some LSWY workers say they have nothing to do. They are quite wrong. They ought to look for something to do; no task will spring up or appear by itself.

LSWY organizations and their workers should study their work deeply and look for things to do, and organize more frequent useful activities suited to the characteristic features of young people and students.

Therefore, it is necessary to raise the qualifications of LSWY
workers, particularly of CU instructors and LSWY committee chairmen at schools without fail. These instructors and chairmen must conduct themselves well; they must be diligent, proficient in work and well-informed. They must be versed in literary works, including revolutionary novels and juvenile stories, and have a wealth of information about social and political problems, as well as about the internal and external situation. Only then can they give the youngsters effective day-to-day guidance in and out of their work and clearly explain the line and policies of the Party.

LSWY organizations should attend scrupulously to the task of improving the qualifications of the CU instructors and school LSWY committee chairmen still further.

3. ON SOME TASKS FOR IMPLEMENTING THE DECISIONS OF THE FIFTH CONGRESS OF THE PARTY

An important task which you are facing today is to carry on a strenuous campaign to implement the decisions of the Fifth Congress of our Party. All LSWY organizations and young people should take the lead in carrying out the three major tasks of the technical revolution outlined by the Party congress; they should also be in the forefront of the fight against the cultural infiltration of imperialism and the tendencies to cling to the past, and should play an active role in the work of revolutionizing the whole of society. LSWY organizations must make sure that, in order to increase the nation’s defence capacities still more, young people eagerly participate in the activities of the Worker-Peasant Red Guards and Red Young Guards and are the vanguard in the work of fortifying the whole country and developing the munitions industry.

Our young people are now confronted with an important yet
honourable task of performing a shock brigade’s role in fulfilling the Six-Year National Economic Plan set forth by the Party congress. All LSWY organizations should ensure that young people take the lead in tackling difficult and tough jobs and struggle vigorously, above all, to carry out the plan for this year, the first year of the Six-Year National Economic Plan, ahead of time. It is particularly essential that many more young people should work in the coal and other extractive industries and railway transport and bring about mass changes, thus further developing our extractive industries and easing the strain on transport.

At the same time, you should give more assistance to the country areas so as to increase agricultural production. A major reserve for more grain production lies in the extensive irrigation of non-paddy fields. Young people must launch a mass movement to complete the irrigation projects for 30,000 hectares of non-paddy fields before spring ploughing, without fail. Since our rural areas are short of manpower and have a small number of young people, you must not transfer young people from rural areas somewhere else or organize meetings, training courses and other work during the busy farming season.

Now, I should like to say a few words about making adequate preparations against war.

At present our country is threatened by the danger of another war breaking out at any moment. As the days go by, the US imperialists and their lackeys are increasing their moves towards aggression and war in our country. We do not want war, but if the enemy commits a provocative act by sending another Pueblo into our territorial waters, we shall strike a deadly counterblow. If he attacks us in the name of “retaliation”, we shall retaliate for the “retaliation”. The repeated retaliations could escalate into all-out war.

As you see, the danger of the resumption of hostilities always exists; therefore, we must not relax for even a moment but remain fully prepared to cope with the war.

The most important thing in war preparations is to win over and
rally the broad masses around the Party and to revolutionize and working-classize all the working people and strengthen the politico-ideological unity of our society. We must work carefully with different sections of the masses and unite all our working people firmly around the Party.

In the first place, it is necessary to work well with those who have returned from Japan. They came back into the embrace of the socialist motherland after living hard lives in an alien land, where they suffered all kinds of racial contempt, mistreatment, oppression and exploitation, because they had no country of their own. While in Japan, in order to return to their dear homeland, they fought courageously, hailing our Party and Republic, in the teeth of the harsh repression by the Japanese reactionaries. Therefore, we should look after them kindly and educate them properly. We must send them to universities or to the army according to their wishes. In this way we shall unite those who have returned closely around our Party.

It is also necessary to work well with those comrades who are from south Korea.

Most of them joined the Volunteers and fought valiantly, weapons in hand, against the American villains during the Fatherland Liberation War; they volunteered for the revolution and joined us. In the northern half of Korea they have worked hard for the building of socialism and the reunification of the country. The comrades from the south are our great asset, a priceless treasure for the south Korean revolution. When the country is reunified or when travel between north and south is made possible even before reunification, they will have to go to south Korea and attend to the work of educating the people and rallying them around our Party. If people of Hamgyong or Phyongan Province think they can act as masters in Kyongsang or Jolla Province, they are mistaken. If we are to rally the people of the south around our Party quickly, people from Jolla Province should go to Jolla Province, and those from Kyongsang Province to Kyongsang Province to work and become masters there.

In the northern half of Korea today there are hundreds of thousands
of people from the south. If they are trained well to be cadres and sent back to their former homes when mutual visits between north and south are started and each one of them educates ten people, they will easily win over several million people. Therefore, we must treasure and take affectionate care of them and train all of them to be cadres.

Among those coming from the south, some hold important Party and government posts, others work as chairmen or vice-chairmen of cooperative farms and still others work at factories and enterprises. We must make them clearly understand that they are revolutionaries who will have to undertake important tasks in south Korea in the future, and must educate them tirelessly to prepare themselves firmly, both politically and ideologically.

We must also work properly with the young people whose family backgrounds are complex.

With regard to people with complex family backgrounds and socio-political records, we must maintain the principle of unity in educating and transforming those who want to go along with us today. And we should not leave their sons and daughters out in the cold.

Some time ago a comrade asked us how to judge a man whose grandfather had owned some land and had been fairly prosperous, but whose father was a worker. Our Party’s policy is quite clear on this sort of question. Judging from the fact that he asked us about such a thing, we can tell that our officials still do not fully understand what class origin means and why it is taken into consideration. In this particular case the man’s grandfather was comparatively prosperous, but his father led a hard life as a worker. Since he had grown up under the influence of his working-class father, there can be nothing doubtful about him.

As we always say, the class origin of a man shows his ideological make-up, that is, what kind of ideologies he has in his mind and to what extent they have an influence on him. We check people’s class origins in order to see to what extent they were influenced by feudal landlords, by capitalism and by the working class. Only when we know their ideological make-up can we take appropriate measures to rid them of
the negative ideological influences. In other words, those who are greatly affected by feudal-Confucian ideas must be given an ideological injection to eliminate them, and those who are influenced by capitalist ideology another to do away with that.

A man’s social status is not immutable; it changes constantly. If his grandfather was a rich peasant but has long been impoverished and his father became a member of the working class, the working-class origin will prevail over the rich-peasant origin in this case.

We must not discriminate unnecessarily against our young people who have grown up and received communist education under our system, because of their class origins. Discrimination against them because of their grandfather or father may prove a great obstacle to the unity and solidarity of our society.

While on the subject of class origin I should like to say a few words about war orphans who have graduated from the primary schools for orphans.

They say that some officials do not admit them into the Party, alleging that their family backgrounds have not been clarified. This is a grave mistake.

These young people who graduated from the primary schools for orphans were brought up under the care of our Party. They had wandered from place to place after losing their parents in the war at the age of three or four.

One night in December 1950, during the Fatherland Liberation War, we stopped to warm ourselves at a roadside house near Sunchon on our way from Kanggye to Pyongyang. We discovered that the master of the house had served in the People’s Army and had been killed in action. His widow was taking care of her children as well as some orphans. She was having a very hard time of it, rearing the orphans by herself. Our hearts bled at the sight of this. It was then that we resolved to take immediate steps to bring up the war orphans under the state’s care, although the country was impoverished. Soon afterwards we made sure that nursery and primary schools for war orphans were established.
So the orphans grew up receiving communist education at our nursery and primary schools. But, now, our officials are particular about the class origins of the young people educated at these primary schools and make an issue of this. This is quite wrong. We check people’s class origins in order to know in what circumstances and under what influence they grew up. If they were orphaned when they did not understand what was going on around them and grew up under the Party’s care, it does not matter whether their fathers were landlords or workers.

As for the class origins of those who were raised in the nursery and primary schools for orphans, their family environment and background are the socialist system of the Republic, and the parent who brought them up is the Workers’ Party of Korea. This is the best and most glorious background and no further clarification is needed.

You need not take the trouble now to clarify the question of fathers they do not even remember. Nor can you find anyone who will provide you with information about their history. Suppose that someone says, “He appears to be the son of a landlord who lived in such and such a place” and you add this unconfirmed information to his record. Then your inappropriate attempt to dig into his family background might ruin an innocent man.

Needless to say, it is good to raise your vigilance against spies and saboteurs who might try to sneak into our ranks, pretending to be war orphans. However, once you have confirmed that they were brought up and educated at the nursery and primary schools for orphans, you need not make any further inquiries; you should educate such people properly and have them enrolled in the Party.

If people who were educated at these schools and are working hard at present are not admitted into the Party on pretext that their family connections have not yet been clarified, they will never be Party members because there will be no way to obtain this information in the future either. The orphans brought up by us will then lose heart in their work, and have no hope whatsoever. This will eventually harm the revolution. Therefore, we must unconditionally train them to be
revolutionaries loyal to our Party and revolution.

LSWY organizations must also work well with the families of those who went over to the south and the sons and daughters of the people who committed errors in the past.

As we have said on many occasions, we must not treat all the families of those who went south as being in the same category; we must judge each case strictly in accordance with its ideological merit. Some of them were evil men who fled after murdering our Party members and patriots. This is true. But the overwhelming majority of them joined the enemy because they were frightened by his threat to drop atom bombs, or were taken away against their will. Therefore, we should deal with their families on the merits of each case. We must trust a young man and must not discriminate against him, if his father comes from the main classes of society and went south without committing any serious crime, and he himself has not only been exemplary in the CU and LSWY at school but also works earnestly at the factory and is ready to dedicate his life to the struggle for the Party and revolution. If we shun and isolate those who want to join us, we shall lose many people and only bring about damage to our revolution.

When we formed the Red Young Guards recently, we enlisted any student who faithfully participates in organizational activities. This, I was told, made their parents happy and the students take a more active part in LSWY life and study with greater enthusiasm.

LSWY organizations should work skilfully with the young people with complex family backgrounds and thus turn all the rising generation into strong supporters and champions of our Party.

Lastly, I should like to touch briefly on the need to improve the work system of the LSWY and the methods employed by its workers.

If the LSWY is to fulfil its honourable and important tasks satisfactorily, it must radically improve its system and methods of work.

One of the major shortcomings in the LSWY’s activities at present is that it is unable to conduct its work in a manner suited to a youth organization and is acting like a junior ruling party. In other words, it is
mechanically copying the Party’s methods of work.

Ever since the early days of our anti-Japanese armed struggle we have stressed that a youth organization must not behave like a junior ruling party. Formerly, the organizations of the Young Communist League in the guerrilla bases had the same organizational setup as the Party’s and did all its work exactly as the Party did. So we criticized this. After liberation, we stressed more than once that the Democratic Youth League must not act like a ruling party. However, this practice has not yet been overcome.

The LSWY is not a youth party; it is a mass organization of young people from all walks of life and a peripheral organization of the Party. Therefore, the LSWY must conduct all its activities in keeping with its specific nature. In preparing a document, for example, it must make it simple and plain, because it deals with the masses.

The LSWY is also a political organization to bring up hard-core elements amongst young people and train the Party’s reserve. Therefore, it should go among the masses and, through various ways and methods, organize work to raise their political and ideological level and their cultural standards.

LSWY organizations must boldly rectify the shortcomings which are apparent in their work and improve their system and methods of work without fail so as to suit the character and the duties of a youth organization. In this way the LSWY will discharge the honourable mission and tasks as the reserve of the Party with credit.
ON THE TASKS OF TRACTOR DRIVERS
IN THE RURAL TECHNICAL REVOLUTION

Speech at a National Meeting of Tractor Drivers

February 12, 1971

We have already spoken about the rural question many times, and the Party’s Fifth Congress set out the clear direction for the development of agriculture. As for the duty of tractor drivers, we set this out in detail at the 1964 National Meeting of Model Tractor Drivers. Today, therefore, I should like to make only a few remarks on some important tasks facing tractor drivers in the rural technical revolution.

One of the main problems in the building of socialism is the correct solution of the rural question. It can be said that the proper solution of this problem is the key to the building of socialism and communism. With regard to the final solution of the rural question, no one has yet had much experience of this or propounded a perfect theory. This compels us to open up a new path for the building of a socialist countryside.

Since individual conditions differ from country to country, there are several ways of solving the rural question. The only correct way to find the final solution of this question for us is the way indicated in the Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country.

As you all know, the theses have laid down that the basic task for the final settlement of the rural question is to accelerate the technical, cultural and ideological revolutions in the rural areas. The Fifth
Congress of the Party, in particular, put forward the task of promoting the rural technical revolution with unabated energy in order to carry out the three major tasks of the technical revolution successfully. We can only reduce the gap between agricultural and industrial labour significantly and free the farmers from onerous toil when this revolution is pursued dynamically.

The main task of the rural technical revolution at the present time is the comprehensive mechanization of agriculture, which is a prerequisite for freeing the farmers from difficult labour and for increasing agricultural production rapidly.

Comprehensive agricultural mechanization is far more difficult and complex than mechanization in other branches. To be specific, this is more difficult and complex in our country than in other countries because of its natural and topographical features. Most of our land being mountainous, our country has very many sloping fields and small plots of land. And the farmland in the plains consists mainly of paddies. For this reason, the comprehensive mechanization of agriculture requires a large number of tractors and other farm machines of different types which are suited to the peculiarities of our terrain and farming methods.

We now have a solid foundation for the comprehensive mechanization of agriculture. Before liberation, our country was a colonial, semi-feudal society, hence its weak industrial base. In the past we have thoroughly implemented the line of economic construction aimed at giving priority to the growth of heavy industry, while at the same time developing light industry and agriculture, and have thus converted our country into a powerful socialist industrial state. If we had not built up a powerful heavy industry with the machine-building industry at its core, we would have been unable to advance the three major tasks of the technical revolution, let alone dream of the comprehensive mechanization of agriculture.

We must make effective use of the existing foundations of heavy industry to manufacture more tractors and various other modern farm machines. If we are to effect comprehensive mechanization of
agriculture we need six or seven tractors for every 100 hectares of cultivated land. In our country 1.3 million hectares of cultivated land can be worked by machines. To ensure this, we need from 80,000 to 90,000 tractors. Therefore, in order to carry out comprehensive farm mechanization we must supply the rural areas with more than 60,000 additional tractors.

If we work well we shall certainly be able to produce this number of tractors in the next few years. In the past when we first started producing tractors, the foundations of our heavy industry were still weak and we lacked experience in the tractor industry and were short of technicians. At that time we produced only a few tractors annually, and they were of low quality at that. In those days our homemade tractors were quite often left standing idle, because they would break down soon after going into service. But we now produce several thousand tractors of different types every year and have laid the foundation for producing over 10,000 annually. Moreover, the tractors we now produce are highly efficient and in no way inferior to those of the developed countries.

In the future, when we provide our farms with the additional 60,000 and more tractors and have all the farm work done by machines, our farmers will no longer have to do laborious work; they will only do ancillary work, following the tractors. Agricultural labour will become easier then, and per-hectare grain yields will increase markedly.

To narrow the differences between agricultural and industrial labour and free our farmers from heavy labour through comprehensive mechanization of agriculture is no longer just a dream; it is becoming a fact.

In order to achieve comprehensive mechanization in agriculture the tractor drivers, fighters for rural mechanization, should increase their role more than anyone else. It depends largely upon the tractor drivers whether or not we raise good crops, and whether the farmers are relieved from heavy labour. They play such an important role that we have called this national meeting of tractor drivers in the first year of the Six-Year Plan. At this meeting you should discuss at length ways
and means of fulfilling the fighting tasks which the rural economy has been assigned by the Fifth Congress of the Party.

An essential task in the comprehensive mechanization of agriculture is to increase the use of tractors.

With this end in view, we must improve tractor operating conditions. If we do not do so, it will be impossible to make effective use of tractors, nor will it be possible to carry out the comprehensive mechanization of agriculture successfully, no matter how many tractors the rural areas may have.

At the last national meeting of model tractor drivers we particularly stressed the need to provide adequate conditions for tractor operations. However, this task has been neglected right up until today.

In order to provide adequate conditions for tractors to work, it is, first and foremost, essential to realign the fields properly. If we do not do so, tractors cannot work in the fields without obstruction.

By sending large numbers of tractors to the country areas, our Party aims at using them efficiently so as to speed up the rural technical revolution and relieve the farmers of backbreaking work. In the rural economy land realignment should be carried out on an extensive scale so that tractors can work in the fields without restraint.

The next task in preparing conditions for the use of tractors is to build good roads.

Unless the roads are good, tractors cannot be used to maximum efficiency, and they will not last as long as they should. A tractor is different from an oxcart. The oxcart can be driven along a rather rough path, but the tractor cannot be used on bad roads. That is why country roads have to be kept in good condition, enabling tractors to travel over them safely and at a reasonable speed.

Roads should be improved by the joint work of farmers and tractor drivers in their slack season. It is advisable to use stone for the roads which have heavy tractor traffic. The building of a good road may entail a certain amount of encroachment on the crop area. Nevertheless, roads must be built. Even if a bit of land is taken away by road building, it is much better to increase grain yields by raising the
utilization of tractors than by other means.

The better use of tractors entails the production of large numbers of different machines which can be mounted on or drawn by tractors.

Some officials, now captivated by the mystique of technology, do not make a real attempt to manufacture various types of trailer farm machines. The Chollima tractor, for example, is a general-purpose machine which can perform different kinds of operations when coupled to drawn equipment. By giving the matter a little more thought, our officials will be able to mechanize operations such as loading and unloading, the spreading of fertilizer and the spraying of agricultural chemicals. But some agricultural workers are now content to use tractors only for ploughing and transport, and do not consider mechanizing other operations, although they could easily do so.

We must firmly oppose the bad habit of trying only to increase the number of tractors without making an effort to raise their utilization rate, and should make a determined attempt to manufacture large numbers of different kinds of trailer farm machines.

While the industries under central authority proceed with the production of tractor-drawn farm machines, each county must develop its own tractor repair centre.

Different kinds of tractor-drawn farm machines must also be designed and manufactured through an active mass movement. The Academy of Agricultural Sciences is now doing research on farm machines of this kind. But it has so far failed to produce even a serviceable harvester. The work of designing and manufacturing tractor-drawn farm machines should not be left to the personnel of the academy alone; it is preferable that tractor drivers and all other agricultural workers be encouraged to get down to this task with confidence. We shall thus be able to produce different kinds of mounted and trailer farm machines, including harvesters, tractor-mounted cranes, fertilizer dispensers, chemical sprayers, and weeders.

Another important factor in increasing the utilization of tractors is to ensure their speedy repair and proper maintenance.
The low rate of utilization of tractors at present is partly due to the inadequate supply of materials and spare parts required for tractor repairs, by the state, but the main reason is that drivers do not repair tractors quickly or keep them in good working order. Tractor drivers must see to the prompt repair and proper maintenance of their machines and take good care of them, and so increase their utilization to the maximum.

We must also increase the training of tractor drivers.

Today we have more than 30,000 tractor drivers in our rural areas and the figure will exceed 100,000 by the end of the Six-Year Plan. It is very gratifying that the number of drivers in rural districts is increasing dramatically. When more than 100,000 tractor drivers are working in the country areas, they will relieve the farmers of hard labour by mechanizing almost all the farm work and will also exert a great influence on the development of their ideological consciousness. Therefore, the rapid growth of the ranks of tractor drivers in the rural areas is an important requirement for the promotion of both the rural technical revolution and the working-classization of the peasantry.

In order to train large numbers of tractor drivers we should first reorganize their training system on correct lines.

In the educational sector all higher agricultural and middle schools must inaugurate a course for teaching their students how to drive a tractor. In this way, all the young people who have received a compulsory nine-year technical education, in addition to the higher agricultural school graduates, will be able to drive a tractor.

At the same time, schools must be set up in the provinces and counties to train their own tractor drivers.

In future, the Agricultural Commission should provide the higher agricultural schools, middle schools and tractor driver training centres with tractors, so that all students can have adequate practice.

In addition to the training of large numbers of new tractor drivers, it is important to get all the tractor drivers to raise their level of technical expertise, and to know more about farming. Tractor drivers should make an effort to improve their technical expertise and study tirelessly
to learn the latest developments in farming.

In the past, all that was required of a driver was the ability to plough fields and carry loads with the tractor. In the future, however, his machine should help weed fields, spray chemicals, spread fertilizers and do many other kinds of farm work. Therefore, tractor drivers should not be content with their present technical level. Driving a tractor is much more difficult than driving a car. The car keeps to the highway, but the tractor has to plough fields, dispense fertilizers, spray chemicals and remove weeds. While doing these tasks, the driver must steer his machine right along the furrows and turn at the edges of the fields carefully, so as not to damage the crops. When a tractor driver ploughs fields, weeds, spreads fertilizers and sprays chemicals with his machine, his work is no less an art than an acrobat’s tight-rope walking. Tractor drivers must study hard and keep improving their technical and skill levels so that they can do all their farm tasks well and skilfully with their machines.

Tractor drivers must also be well informed about the latest developments in farming. If they believe that all they need is to be able to drive a tractor well, they are mistaken. Tractor drivers are fighters for rural mechanization; they are members of the working class assigned to the rural areas. So they should do all farm work well as befits masters. This makes it necessary for them to acquire wide knowledge essential for the development of farming nowadays—soil science, chemistry and biology. In other words, they should know when and how to apply the right fertilizer, how to dissolve the right proportion of chemicals in water and when to spray, how deep to plough in various kinds of soil to boost grain yields, and so on.

According to discussions we had with farmers in Anju County, South Phyongan Province, and many other districts last year, the excessive application of additional fertilizer was the main cause of a lower per-hectare grain yield than had been expected. If tractor drivers had known that too much fertilizer would reduce grain yields and if they had checked it, grain output would not have dropped.

The tractor drivers must learn a lesson from this. Being fully aware
that they are members of the working class directly in charge of agricultural production, the tractor drivers must study hard to learn more about soil science, biology and other branches of science employed in agricultural production.

It is also necessary to strengthen the Party and working-class spirit of tractor drivers as well as their fidelity to the people.

It is most important for the tractor drivers to foster the idea of doing as much farm work as possible with the help of tractors, thus alleviating the hard toil of the farmers. In other words, it is important for them to possess the spirit to work selflessly to carry out the Party’s policy of freeing the farmers from difficult and labour-consuming work.

Our tractor drivers are not odd-job men who work to earn a living, but revolutionary soldiers who fight for the emancipation of farmers from backbreaking work. If they plough carefully when working the fields with their tractors, they will satisfy the needs of the farmers and lighten their labour. Therefore, tractor drivers should plough even small patches of land conscientiously; they should take care not to break down ridges between rice fields and should ensure the levelling of the fields.

The Party has sent young workers and tractors to the rural areas for the purpose of carrying out the rural technical revolution and liberating the farmers from hard, labour-consuming work. At present, however, some tractor drivers have adopted a careless attitude to ploughing the fields, causing the farmers to spend many days redoing the job; and they breakdown ridges between rice fields, so that rural women have to rebuild them. This careless, hit-or-miss manner of work on the part of some tractor drivers is due to the fact that they lack Party and working-class spirit and fidelity to the people. The tractor driver will not work so carelessly if he remembers that he is a revolutionary fighter, whose task it is to free the farmers from hard, burdensome labour; that if he destroys a ridge between rice fields women farmers will have to work hard to repair it; and that if he does the ploughing and the levelling of paddies carelessly, the farmers will be put to a great
deal of trouble to do the work all over again.

All tractor drivers must work hard to raise their Party and working-class spirit and fidelity to the people.

I am now going to single out some immediate tasks for tractor drivers.

First of all, tractor drivers must work hard to fulfil the current year’s tasks given to the rural economy successfully.

Our plan is to complete rice transplanting by May 25 this year. This promises a good chance of higher grain production. The paddies where young rice plants are bedded out by May 25 yield one ton of rice more per hectare than those where transplanting is done later. We came to this conclusion while talking to farmers in Jaeryong, Anak and other counties of South Hwanghae Province.

Our country has a total of 700,000 hectares of paddies. So, if we complete rice transplanting before May 25, we shall have an additional yield of 700,000 tons of rice. This is quite a large amount. If we transplant rice seedlings in only half of the 700,000 hectares before May 25, and in the remaining half later, we shall lose 350,000 tons of rice.

This year we plan to bed out rice seedlings on all paddies save rain-dependent ones before May 25. Needless to say, the northern mountain region is an exception. Since it has a cold climate, rice seedlings should be transplanted in accordance with climatic conditions. When we say we must finish the transplanting before May 25, we have in mind such rice-growing centres as North and South Hwanghae and North and South Phyongan Provinces. Even in these provinces only the areas which have a similar climate to Jaeryong and Anak Counties should complete rice transplanting by May 25. Elsewhere the date could be moved to May 30 and where it is cold and damp, to June 5.

In order to complete rice transplanting before May 25 this year, the tractor drivers should make all the necessary preparations and, first and foremost, keep their machines in good repair. True, an early, successful rice transplantation is chiefly dependent on the farmers who
directly nurse and transplant rice seedlings. But tractor drivers are also largely responsible for it. If they make a timely and good job of ploughing and harrowing, rice transplanting by May 25 is fully possible.

This year we also intend to bring 50,000 hectares of dry fields under irrigation and to grow two crops there. This calls for effective work on the part of the tractor drivers. It is most important, in growing two crops, to do the ploughing and harvesting at the proper time, without missing the right moment. The spring ploughing and sowing must be done at the right time; the first crops are to be harvested as soon as they are ripe; and then the fields must be ploughed again to plant the second crops. This is not an easy task. At this meeting you should hold extensive discussions on such questions as how to finish harvesting the wheat and barley punctually, and how to ensure the ploughing and sowing of the second crops as soon as possible, so as to allow a longer time for their growth.

Tractor drivers must be good workers not only during the ploughing and rice-transplanting season but also at the time of weeding, harvesting and threshing. Some of them work diligently during ploughing and rice transplanting, but after that, they work carelessly. This will not do.

Tractor drivers ought to ensure efficient harvesting and threshing at the right time by expanding the mechanically harvested area and introducing mechanization in threshing. In this way they will prevent pests like rats and birds from harming the grain crops.

Tractor drivers must also strive for economy in the use of heavy oil and petrol.

As you know, our country produces no crude oil as yet. Therefore, we import petrol and heavy oil. This requires enormous sums of foreign currency. Every litre of petrol and heavy oil you use has been purchased for gold.

At present, however, some tractor drivers are not economical with the oil we have bought for gold, but waste it. Some of them do not stop the engines even when their tractors are standing idle, on the pretext
that it is hard to get them started again, thus causing a great waste of oil. Sometimes a great deal of oil is wasted by tractor drivers to carry a single person to a far-away place and back. Some cooperative farms often use tractors for long-distance transport. This not only causes a prodigious waste of oil, but makes it impossible to increase the utilization of tractors and prolong their active life. Long-distance transport should be done either by train or by lorry, and tractors should be used only for short-distance haulage.

At present we have no reserves of oil because tractor drivers have wasted it. From now onwards, they must carry out a dedicated campaign to save oil such as petrol and heavy oil and thus help build up a large oil reserve.

At the meeting you have suggested that many technological books on tractors be printed and that a magazine be published for the tractor drivers. I think your suggestion is valuable. In future we have to print many technological books and publish a magazine for the tractor drivers.

I hope that the tractor drivers will perform their tasks in the rural technical revolution with honour and thus become revolutionary soldiers faithful to the Party, to the working class and all the people.
ON SOME TASKS FOR IMPROVING
THE SUPPLY SERVICES FOR THE PEOPLE
IN JAGANG PROVINCE

Speech at a Consultative Meeting with Officials of Party
and Government Bodies, Economic Establishments
and Working People’s Organizations in Jagang Province
February 28, 1971

At this consultative meeting I should like to talk about the tasks for
improving the supply services for the people in Jagang Province and
some other problems to which attention ought to be paid in building the
economy.

I am visiting this province for the first time after the interval of 20
months since I was last here in July 1969. During my stay here I have
inquired how the tasks which I gave at the July 1969 Plenary Meeting
of the Jagang Provincial Party Committee have been implemented.
Jagang provincial Party organizations, however, have not carried them
out properly.

A most important problem in Jagang Province is to provide the
people with good supply services.

The state has built many important machine factories in this
province and sent here tens of thousands of excellent workers who
were selected from elsewhere. That is why we have always paid
particular attention to providing efficient supply services for the
workers in this province; and the last time we were here, we adopted a
range of measures for their improvement. Nevertheless, I have found
that the work has not been satisfactory.

The shops in Kanggye are not stocked with enough leeks, garlic, radishes and celery cabbages; nor are there sufficient meat, eggs and fish on sale.

The shortage of vegetables, meat and eggs in shops is not because of a failure in agriculture last year. Last year they worked fairly well in the agricultural sector. They produced much more vegetables, grain and meat than during the previous year. It is reported that 12,500 tons of meat was produced last year in Jagang Province; this is not a small amount. Jagang Province has also created the condition to be able to produce large quantities of eggs. It has built several chicken plants and also harvested a large amount of beans which can be used as protein feed.

The small stock of vegetables, meat, eggs and the like on sale is attributable to the fact that the Jagang Provincial People’s Committee has paid little attention to the people’s living standards and failed to organize work efficiently, and that it has not made an enthusiastic effort to carry through the Party’s decisions and instructions on developing the supply service bases.

The provincial people’s committees are masters who are responsible for the living standards of the people in their province. The Jagang Provincial People’s Committee, however, did not fulfil its role as a master who is in charge of the people’s lives. If the officials of this committee had organized things efficiently and with more interest in the people’s living standards, the people would have had regular access to vegetables and meat in shops with the amount which was produced last year.

We can recognize the indifference to supply services on the part of the Jagang Provincial People’s Committee through the matter of the building of a refrigerator plant. When I visited this province the year before last, I gave an assignment to build a refrigerator plant in Kanggye. Jagang Province in which there are many large machine factories should have been able to build this plant easily in four or five months if it had organized work efficiently. But 20 months have passed
since I gave this task, and it cannot finish the building on the excuse that pipes are in short supply and so on. As a result, even though large amounts of fish were supplied, they had to be sold in a few days because there was no refrigerator plant.

Jagang Province did not carry out the task of building a riced corn flour mill, either.

A long time ago the Party set forth the task to provide the people with processed maize, instead of supplying it in its original state. If maize is processed into riced corn flour or ground, it is good to eat and also profitable because we can use the by-products obtained in its processing as a feed for pigs and chickens. But the province did not build a riced corn flour mill and continues to supply unprocessed maize to the people and so wastes a large amount of grain by using unprocessed maize as animal feed.

Because of the importance which protein feed holds in the production of eggs, the state gave the task to build a mixed feed factory in Jonchon County and provided several hundred workers needed to build it. For all that, Jagang Province did not go ahead with the construction even after being allocated very many people. Because the mixed feed factory was not built, protein feed is not being supplied in sufficient quantities which is the cause of the decrease in egg production; the province cannot provide the people with sufficient chicken meat and eggs even though it has chicken plants.

The province also implemented the task of introducing the sprinkler irrigation system into vegetable fields in a very perfunctory way. It is reported that not only in Kanggye but also in Huichon they have introduced irrigation facilities. But none of the facilities is made properly.

All these shortcomings are attributable to the fact that the officials of the provincial people’s committee are indifferent to the people’s living standards and that they do not work hard to carry out the Party’s decisions and instructions on developing the supply service base.

The failure to provide services for the people of Jagang Province is also due to the fact that the Jagang Provincial Party Committee and city
and county Party committees are not efficient in their work.

These Party committees failed to conduct good political work and guidance so as to carry out the Party’s policy. If the provincial people’s committee neglects the implementation of the Party’s policy and does not make any effort to feed and dress the people well, Party organizations must fight strongly against such practices. But they did not launch a principled struggle against wrongful practices.

Inadequate supply services in Jagang Province are also due to the poor assistance given to the province by the Cabinet and ministries.

The inefficient assistance and superficial direction of Jagang Province by the Cabinet and ministries can be seen in the work of the chief of the General Bureau of Poultry. During his visit to the province he saw that egg production was dropping because of the shortage of protein feed. However, he did not take any measures. The recent investigation shows that there is a great deal of reserves which can be used as protein feed because last year Jagang Province achieved a good bean harvest.

If the chief of the General Bureau of Poultry had asked the total amount of beans produced in Jagang Province last year, calculated how much should be left in the country areas, how much should be procured and how much could be used for chicken feed and consulted the officials of the provincial people’s committee or the workers in the procurement agencies and adopted the necessary measures, he would have been able to settle the problem of protein feed without difficulty.

However, he did not take positive measures even though he had seen the decrease in egg production. This means that his attempt to solve the egg production problem to which the Party pays close attention is inadequate, and that he lacks the will to serve the people.

The Ministry of Fisheries also did not give good assistance to Jagang Province. This province is a mountain area which is far from the sea, so it cannot supply fish to its people by itself. Therefore, I assigned the ministry a task to ensure a regular supply of fish to the province. Later I talked about this at the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee and a Cabinet decision was also made. The
Ministry of Fisheries, however, did not supply sufficient fish to the province.

The situation is the same with the General Fruit Bureau. I pointed out to the chief of the General Fruit Bureau time and time again that now that many orchards had been created in our country, every effort should be made in future to supply fruit on an equal basis to the people. But the chief of the General Fruit Bureau and other responsible officials did not organize the work well. As a result, even though a great deal of fruit has been produced throughout the country every year, the people in Jagang Province have not been supplied with peaches, pears, apples and other fruit on a regular basis.

All our hard work for economic construction and the production of machines is done to feed the people better and make them more prosperous. However, officials do not pay attention to the people’s living standards at present, making the excuse that production is under pressure, something else is more important, and so on. This being the case, there is little meat, eggs, fruit and the like on sale; and it is very difficult to get such things when they are urgently needed at home. How, therefore, can we say that our officials are equipped with popular spirit? I take it for granted that senior officials in the Jagang Provincial People’s Committee and other responsible organs must submit to Party discipline and warnings for their disregard of the improvement of the people’s standard of living and for their failure to develop firm supply service bases.

Party organizations and government bodies in the province must rectify the defects revealed in this work as soon as possible and make determined efforts to improve the work.

To this end, stable bases of supply services in the province should be developed.

First of all, the sprinkler irrigation system should be introduced in vegetable fields and the solid base to produce vegetables should be laid.

Sprinkler irrigation facilities should be provided to a total of 450 hectares of non-paddy fields this year–300 hectares in Kanggye and
150 hectares in Huichon and 100 hectares each in Manpho and Jonchon County and 80 hectares in Songgan County next year. If the sprinkler system is introduced in these areas, 200 tons of vegetables per hectare will be harvested and at least 300 kilogrammes will be distributed per person.

You must not manufacture sprinkler irrigation equipment in a superficial way as you did in the past; you have to make modern installations. Vegetable fields must drain quickly and the soil must be deep.

I have not been to the Hwaphyong Mine area. You should assess whether it is possible to introduce the sprinkler irrigation system in this area next year.

If you are to solve the vegetable problem, you must build field irrigation facilities on the lowland above the sea level from next year onwards, so as to be able to plant maize or barley as an early crop and radishes and celery cabbages as a second crop.

It is reported that Mudok Cooperative Farm, Janggang County, planted barley as a first crop and then radishes as a later crop which yielded 40 tons per hectare. This shows that if you choose good non-paddy fields in the lowlands and sow suitable seeds according to the principle of the right crop on the right soil and introduce irrigation, you will be able to produce as much vegetable as you need in addition to grain in Jagang Province.

Some of the cooperative farms in Huichon, Manpho, Wiwon County, Chosan County and Usi County which are not so high should select some five or six hectares each of good land to apply irrigation and plant vegetables as a second crop. If you plant maize as an early crop and reap five or six tons and if you plant radishes and celery cabbages in humus cakes as a second crop and produce some 30 tons of radishes and 50 to 60 tons of celery cabbages per hectare, you will be able to solve the vegetable problem not only in rural villages but also in county towns.

You must develop sounder meat production bases.

Developing communal animal husbandry on cooperative farms and
private stock farming is the basic way to boost meat production in Jagang Province.

It is said that last year more than ten thousand tons of meat were produced by this means in Jagang Province. The province should produce 15,000 tons this year and make an effort to increase the amount in the future.

While developing communal stockbreeding on cooperative farms and private animal raising, large pig farms ought to be built by the state.

Jagang Province should create a production capacity of 8,000 tons in all on these pig farms—4,000 tons this year and another 4,000 next year. This year it should build, to begin with, a 2,000-ton-capacity pig farm in Wiwon and a 1,000-ton-capacity farm in Huichon. In the future a 2,000-ton-capacity pig farm should be built in Manpho and also in Songgan County. It is not necessary to build one in Jonchon County because it has duck and chicken plants.

The province must not build over-large pig farms and it should make wide use of local materials in building them. It is profitable to build houses of wood, which is abundant in this province, and to roof them with wooden tiles. By doing this you can hasten the construction of pig farms. Now the building of the Jonchon Assorted Feed Plant is going ahead very slowly. This is because the officials in this sector would not try to use as many local materials as possible, asking for materials to be supplied by the state.

A campaign should be carried out on a large scale to raise rabbits.

As I always say, the people in mountainous regions must exploit the mountain well. There are many mountains and grasslands in Jagang Province, so it is good to breed rabbits here. Rabbits will provide tasty and nutritious meat, fur and skin with less cereal feed.

It is very cold in Jagang Province, which means that people need a lot of fur and skin in their lives. If you raise many rabbits, you can make fur coats, fur caps and fur shoes for the children and scarves for the women; and you can also weave jerseys and cloth.

Jagang Province must start a movement for each farm household to
raise five or six rabbits. If this is done, the province will be able to breed 300,000 or so in a year. If it builds a state rabbit farm in the future and raises about 200,000 rabbits, the province will be able to rear 500,000 in all every year. With this number of rabbits you will be able to produce 500,000 pieces of fur and a great deal of meat. Suppose that a rabbit weighs two kilogrammes on an average, nearly 1,000 tons of meat will be obtained from 500,000 rabbits.

Jagang Province must start a campaign to breed 500,000 in a year as a first stage on a trial basis and later, when you have gained experience, you should increase the number. At the second stage you may raise 1,000,000 or 2,000,000 a year. It would be nice if you could raise many rabbits and send rabbit fur and meat to the People’s Army or to the people in the lowlands as special products of Jagang Province.

Raising rabbits by means of a mass campaign presents the problem of how to obtain the young. Of course, you can encourage each farm household to breed the young for itself. But if you rely on this you will not get enough of them.

The best way is to choose a cooperative farm which is good at raising rabbits in the province and make it specialize in breeding young rabbits for distribution. I am told that there are such cooperative farms, which have the experience of rabbit breeding, in Chosan and Usi Counties. You should give them state funds and entrust the work to them.

In addition, you must see to it that each cooperative farm organizes a workteam or sub-workteam with those who are good at raising rabbits and makes them breed the young themselves and divide them amongst farm households. Good breeding rabbits should be brought from the state farm and be propagated.

In keeping with this large-scale movement to raise rabbits you should adopt measures to purchase rabbits and process the fur and meat.

Sixty to ninety days after birth a rabbit does not put on so much weight, even if it is well fed. Therefore, rabbits must be bought and slaughtered as soon as they are 60 to 90 days old. If you start a rabbit-breeding movement and take no steps to purchase and process the rabbits promptly, it will become a problem to dispose of them and
this will cause a decline in the enthusiasm on the part of the people. You must, therefore, adopt measures to procure and process rabbits from now onwards.

In dealing with this work, you must examine beforehand when and where rabbits can be purchased and in what quantities. You should visit the cooperative farms by lorry on the fixed day to buy live rabbits. Then you should bring them to the county town for butchering and processing. Otherwise, refrigerator cars should be given to counties for procurement use. They should go around cooperative farms to buy the meat and fur of the rabbits which are slaughtered on the spot.

In order for these rabbits to be disposed of promptly you ought to set up rabbit-skin processing workshops and meat processing workshops in the local industry factories which already exist in counties.

If you are to raise many rabbits, you should make progress towards giving mixed feed and mechanizing the operation. Now that we have introduced mechanization in pig production there is no reason why we should not do so in rabbit breeding. Rabbits are more intelligent than pigs. It will be easier to achieve mechanization in raising them. A rabbit is a prolific animal, so if you apply mixed feed you can increase production rapidly.

Raising rabbits in a mechanized way and on a large scale should be done gradually on a trial basis. For the present they should be reared in a mass movement.

Today many countries are producing a great deal of meat, fur and skins by breeding rabbits. A survey of recent information shows that a certain country in Europe is producing 300,000 tons of rabbit meat a year and another country 180,000 tons. It is reported, however, that in these countries most of the meat is produced from small-scale private farming.

I have been stressing the importance of this matter since immediately after liberation. But our officials did not persist in this work. They used to give it up after trying a little. This time you must not do so.
Egg and chicken production has to be increased.
To this end, you must keep production on a normal basis in the existing plants and increase their production capacity.

Kanggye must make great efforts to achieve normal production of eggs in the Hungju Chicken Plant and ensure that it produces at least 60,000 to 80,000 eggs every day.

At present the eggs which have been produced are not on sale in the shops, but they are distributed by supply system. You should not do this in future. If you continue to supply them, few will be left for sale in the shops.

The Hungju Chicken Plant should be developed to be a chicken production base with an annual capacity of 200 to 300 tons. If it will produce that amount, 400 to 500 chickens can be sold every day. There are not so many people in Kanggye, so with that amount of chicken the people will be able to have access to it at any time they need it.

In Pyongyang, now, 5,000 or so chickens are available every day. So chicken is always on sale in the shops, and people are very pleased.

Since Kanggye is a provincial capital, it must, in the first place, create a 200 to 300-ton capacity of meat production in the Hungju Chicken Plant within this year, so as to ensure that the shops sell 400 to 500 chickens every day. In the future you must ensure that people have daily access to chicken in Huichon, Manpho and other major cities and workers’ districts where a large number of people live.

To be successful in stockbreeding you must increase the production of cereals.

As I always say, stockbreeding and grain production are closely linked. We can only develop animal husbandry when we produce a great deal of grain, and vice versa.

In the future Jagang Province will be able to produce 8,000 tons of pork in state stock farms alone by building several of them. If this is done, there must be a great deal of cereal feed. In addition, if we are to put production on a steady basis in chicken plants and increase egg and chicken production, we need grain also. Therefore, you must work hard to increase grain production.
In order to increase grain production you must develop livestock breeding successfully. Efficient stockbreeding promotes grain production. This has already been proved by the experience of Changsong County in North Phyongan Province. It is also shown by the Mudok Cooperative Farm, Janggang County in Jagang Province.

At present there are some 150 farm houses in all in the Mudok Cooperative Farm in Janggang County; there are 140 cattle, and 470 pigs are kept by individual farmers and 50 are kept communally. This means that each farm household raises an average of one cow and more than three pigs. Many rabbits are also raised on this farm and it is said that they will provide all the children on the farm with rabbit fur coats in one year or two.

In the past farming was not good and the farmers’ living standards on this farm were not high. But thanks to the success in stockbreeding, last year the farm produced 1.5 tons of cereals per hectare on the sloping fields and three tons per hectare on the flat fields; and it distributed 2.8 tons of grain and 780 won in cash per household on an average.

The Mudok Cooperative Farm works efficiently. If all officials strenuously carry out the Party’s policy on boosting grain production by doing livestock farming well as is done on the Mudok Cooperative Farm, there is no reason why Jagang Province should not be prosperous.

We have now decided to build a pig farm in Wiwon which was first planned for Kanggye. This step is being taken to increase maize production. It is true that if we build it in Wiwon, the transportation of feed and meat will take longer. However, Wiwon County has many fields where you will be able to increase maize production if you apply more manure. If you build a 2,000-ton-capacity pig farm in Wiwon County, and use the manure produced by it on the fields, you will be able to produce at least 10,000 additional tons of maize. With this amount of maize you will be able to supply all the grain needed by the 2,000-ton-capacity pig farm. This means, in the long run, that you will obtain the necessary amount of grain feed by using the manure produced by that pig farm.
I am told that Jagang Province reaped 163,500 tons of grain last year and also planned to produce 226,000 tons this year. But I think that it should try to produce 230,000 tons this year.

Of the 230,000 tons of grain, you should produce 20,000 tons of runner beans and 20,000 tons of beans. Some years ago I assigned Jagang Province the task of producing 20,000 tons of runner beans. At an estimate of three tons of runner beans per hectare, the province should produce 20,000 tons even by extending cultivated lands a little. It is said that you planned to produce 23,500 tons of beans this year, but if it will be difficult, 20,000 tons will do.

Jagang Province can only solve the feed problem and develop livestock breeding when it produces 230,000 tons of grain including 20,000 tons of runner beans and 20,000 tons of beans.

Jagang Province must provide the people with fish on a regular basis.

At present this province has no independent fish supply base for its own use. When very many fish are caught, as happened last year, the people in the province can be supplied with some fish; otherwise they cannot.

If we are to supply them with fish regularly, we should give them a separate fish supply base for their own use on the east coast. So on this occasion we have nominated the Thoejo Fishing Station as a station which serves Jagang Province and have ensured that all the fish caught by it are sent to the province, comprising at least 20,000 to 30,000 tons a year.

The Jagang Provincial People’s Committee and the Kanggye City People’s Committee must adopt measures to receive the fish caught by the fishing station and supply it to the people promptly. The 1,000-ton-capacity refrigerated plant in Kanggye and the 500-ton-plant in Huichon, which are now being built, must be completed as soon as possible and others must be built in Manpho, Songgan and Jonchon. Only then can they store the fish transported by train and supply them to the people on a regular basis.

If Jagang Province is to provide the people with large quantities of
fish, it must not sit and wait to be supplied, but must give effective assistance to the fishing station. There are many machine factories in Jagang Province, so they should supply some materials which are required for ship repairing, cut spare parts and send technicians to repair marine engines and the like. By raising the operating rate of the fishing craft in this way, it is possible to catch a great number of fish. In winter when very many pollack are caught, the province ought to mobilize manpower to gut the fish or help with some other urgent work. It is only when work is done like this that the fishing station will be able to catch large quantities of fish and provide a regular supply to the province.

Measures must be taken to provide fruit to the people of Jagang Province.

At present they till plots on the mountain to create orchards in this province in order to meet their own need for fruit. This must not be done. Jagang Province is a cold area, so fruit trees will not thrive even if you reclaim orchards. It would be better to plant mulberries which thrive well to raise silkworms or plant grass fodder for rabbits so as to get meat than plant fruit trees which will not grow well, even with great effort. The province should produce large quantities of meat and send it to the lowland areas and bring in fruit from there.

In order to ensure the regular supply of fruit to the province, it ought to have its own fruit supply base. I think it will be good to fix the Unryul Fruit Farm as a fruit supply base for the province.

There is a suggestion that Sukchon County should be chosen as a fruit supply base because the Unryul Fruit Farm presents transport problems. But you should not accept this. A 20,000-ton-capacity fruit processing factory is now under construction there. When it is completed, there will not be so much fruit left which can be given to other places.

Even though the Unryul Fruit Farm is settled as the fruit base of Jagang Province, there will be no transport problem. Unryul County is situated near Nampho, with the Taedong River between them. If cased fruit is shipped to Nampho and then conveyed by train to Jagang
Province, there will not be much difference in transporting fruit from Unryul or from Sukchon.

The Unryul Fruit Farm must be chosen as the fruit supply base of Jagang Province and it must supply 10,000 tons of fruit in all every year: 5,000 tons of apples, 1,000 tons of pears, and 4,000 tons of peaches and plums and other fruits. With 10,000 tons of it available, the people in Jagang Province will be able to have regular access to fruit.

The fruit should be packed in cases for transport, otherwise much of it will be damaged on the way. Jagang Province has large numbers of trees, so it is not difficult to make fruit boxes. Just saw the wood into boards, cut it into box-sized lengths and send them to the fruit farm to make boxes; that will suffice.

You have to take measures to supply processed maize to the people. Now that we are providing factory and office workers not only with rice but also with maize, maize processing factories ought to be built in cities and counties. But, because nothing has been done about this, the people receive unprocessed maize.

The provision of unprocessed maize leads to a great deal of loss. If we process maize, we shall be able to press oil from the maize germs and make high-quality feed for domestic animals with the oil cakes. At present, however, unprocessed maize is being used as a ration and animal’s feed, so we are wasting a large amount of maize germs.

If we eat unprocessed maize, we cannot digest it well and absorb the nutriments properly. We must process it into riced corn flour for the sake of our diet. Then it is good to eat and we can absorb the nutritive elements more easily. Therefore we must endeavour to supply processed maize.

Maize processing factories must be built first in the areas where workers live in large numbers, such as Kanggye and Huichon, so as to provide the people with processed maize.

Efforts should be made to improve winter shoes and clothing of the people in this province.

It is very cold here. In the area of Kanggye alone it is at least 5 or 6 degrees colder than in Pyongyang in winter. Jagang Province must,
therefore, provide the people with warm shoes and clothes so that they can overcome the particular climate of this cold district. But the people in Kanggye are not going about in warmer shoes and clothing than the Pyongyang people are.

Officials in Party and government bodies in this province have not yet worked hard to produce large quantities of winter shoes and scarves which are suitable in this area. This being the case, there are no shoe factories worth mentioning, and no tanneries which are mechanized. If officials had tried their best, they would have been able to develop a shoe factory in the correct way since there are many machine factories in this province.

The shoe factory which is to move from Pyongyang must be built here and modernized as soon as possible. Some of the equipment from the shoe factory in Pyongyang may have become old-fashioned in the course of use. Pyongyang has brought in new modern equipment. You should go and see them and modernize all the processes from tanning to shoemaking, by making new single-purpose machines and remodelling some equipment at the machine factories in the province. In this way you will produce a great number of various kinds of shoes which are suitable for the climate of this area, including winter shoes for women and children.

A good clothing factory must be built. If livestock breeding is developed on a large scale in the future, a great deal of fur will be produced. If the clothing factory to be built produces various kinds of clothing which meet the taste of the people in Jagang Province and are suitable for the climate of this region by making use of the fur, you will be able to dress the people warmly and they will look smarter.

Party and government officials in Jagang Province must work hard to develop supply service bases and improve the people’s living standards and see that the working class and all the other people in the province do not suffer any difficulties in their lives.

To proceed. I wish to make some remarks about construction work.

A most important thing in construction is to do it in a concentrated way.
This year, Jagang Province must concentrate its efforts on the construction of Huichon, and in this project you should begin with housing construction. At present the population is continuing to increase, so there is a large shortage of houses. This is why we have now made the decision to build 3,000 houses and cultural facilities and amenities such as nurseries, kindergartens, hospitals, laundries, bathhouses, barbers and shops and provided for them in the state plan. The province must give effective help to the construction of Huichon.

Other cities, county towns and workers’ districts must also be developed. But this work should be started when the construction of Huichon is completed and builders mobilized in this project return with the experience gained in the construction of Huichon.

There are also a great many things to be built in Kanggye. The city ought to start a shock campaign for the early completion of construction of the September Textile Mill which is to be finished before next April 15 so as to be able to produce yarn. New buildings which can house 1,200 weaving machines must be built also.

The September Textile Mill is a large factory which has 150,000 spindles; an excellent factory equipped with up-to-date precision machinery capable of weaving quality fabrics. So you should now start to take a number of measures to ensure the operation of this mill. It has not yet been decided how to deal with the dyeing process. To my mind it is better to install this process. If this is done, the September Textile Mill will be almost as large as the Pyongyang Textile Mill. Then Jagang Province will become a large, powerful supply base which is also equipped with light industry. You can import dyeing equipment by earning foreign currency or make it yourselves.

A 40,000-ton-capacity paper mill should also be built in Kanggye. The equipment for this mill is to be imported from another country. You must finish the design of this mill at an early date and press ahead with the project so as to complete the building in two years at the latest.

It is desirable that new railway construction should be started in Kanggye district from next year, once the Ministry of Railways has completed all the designs this year. The railway services will provide
favourable conditions for exploiting the industrial districts in Jagang Province.

There are many other construction schemes to be undertaken in the Kanggye area. I shall not deal any further with construction in Kanggye district because it was discussed in detail at the section meetings.

It is necessary to build a steel plant in Jagang Province. Without its own steel production base it is impossible for the province to supply enough steel to machine factories and it cannot meet the demand for various kinds of steel. You should include the construction of a 60,000-ton-capacity steel plant in the state plan and undertake the project determinedly.

As far as construction in Jagang Province is concerned, it is important to advance towards building many underground factories.

This is preferable because Jagang Province has many mountains and a small area of plains. If you continue to build factories above ground, there will be no land suitable for vegetable cultivation in the future.

Underground construction is also good because it costs less in management. A factory above ground needs a great deal of coal for heating in winter which the underground one does not. That is why North European countries in the cold regions also build many factories underground.

These factories are also easier to build. Cut tunnels and install ventilation to provide good air conditioning and proper humidity and lighting; this is all that is needed. If you choose a construction site on the firm base rocks and speed up tunnelling by improving construction methods, the cost of construction may be less than on the ground. For this reason it is advisable to develop underground industrial construction on a large scale.

There are many suitable places in this province for underground factories. In Kanggye alone you can find many places suitable for this project. The paper mill and machine factories to be built in the future should be built underground as far as possible and only secondary
buildings should be erected above ground.

If you are to carry out the construction of underground factories on a large scale, you must not disperse the workers who have a lot of experience in this work but look after them well. Using them as the core, you should develop new forces of underground construction. I think it preferable to divide the existing work forces into two and increase the ranks of each to become independent forces. In order to build many underground factories in the future you should set up an institute for underground construction which will deal with the problems which arise in this sector, such as how to speed up the work.

The next important matter in construction work is to make wide use of local materials.

Jagang Province is rich in timber resources; so it must use it widely in construction. At present we are in the midst of construction which is being undertaken everywhere. This situation creates a great strain on cement and steel supplies. In this regard, those provinces such as Jagang Province, where timber is plentiful, ought to make much more use of it. Only then is it possible to speed up construction. Timber is available not only for houses, but also for factory buildings. When we look at the houses and factories erected during Japanese imperialist rule, we find few ferroconcrete buildings; most of them are wooden ones.

When I visited a certain country once, I saw the guest house for heads of state which was built of wood and it was very good. If you paint wooden houses well, they are attractive and durable.

The officials of Jagang Province, however, think that it is impossible to build houses without cement and steel reinforcement. Worse still, they even want to build ferro-concrete houses in districts like Hwaphyong County beside the Rangnim Mountains. They are mistaken.

Jagang Province must not blindly follow the construction methods used in Pyongyang and other lowland areas. People there have to build houses in a Songnim style with cement, bricks and tiles because wood is not available. What is the sense of building houses like this in such a place as Jagang Province which is rich in timber? It must create a
construction style and methods which meet its actual conditions and build original houses in a Kanggye style.

Since there is no cement and no clay or coal to bake tiles in the province, plentiful wood should be used for tiles instead of cement or clay. If you make good wooden tiles and roof houses with them, they are attractive and durable.

When I was in Junggang in my childhood, I saw a school the roof of which was covered with small wooden tiles. It was very nice to look at. There are many countries throughout the world in which they roof houses with wooden tiles. Many of these houses can be found in Finland and in the far east of the Soviet Union. Nevertheless, Jagang Province, in spite of having abundant wood, does not use it for roofing. Even when they do use it the tiles are too thick and badly laid, so that they look ugly. In future, we shall send the officials concerned abroad so that they can see the houses built of wood.

The stairs in the two or three-storeyed houses can be made of wood without using cement and steel rods. In some of the buildings which were erected before liberation we can see many wooden staircases; they are still strong even though they were made 50 to 60 years ago.

At present many officials consider that modern houses should be built with bricks and cement and glazed and roofed with cement tiles. However, they can build two or three-storeyed modern houses without difficulty even with wood and other materials which are available locally, without resorting to using cement and steel rods. If you erect houses with weathered granite and stone which are available in local areas, paper the windows and roof them with wooden tiles attractively, you will have fine modern houses. Local materials are also available for chicken plants, pig farms, dwelling houses, schools, hospitals, and so on.

If you are to undertake large-scale construction, you will have to make a decisive change-over to the use of local materials. Since the province has to undertake a large-scale construction, its officials will be unable to carry out construction properly if they sit and ask the state to supply cement, steel and other materials.
I have long emphasized the need to make wide use of locally available materials. However, Jagang Province did not even develop a quarry as it should have done, even though there is a great deal of granite and other kinds of stone. During my recent visit to Huichon I found that there is no building materials base to speak of which would make it possible to undertake construction through its own strength. We had, therefore, no alternative but to supply an additional amount of bricks, cement and steel for housing construction in Huichon. The Party organizations of Jagang Province must adopt measures to use much more local materials and resolutely carry out the Party’s policy on conducting construction with them.

I shall continue by speaking about the problem of industrial production.

Jagang Province is a very important industrial part of the country. The machine industry is a key industry in this province. The timber and mining industries do not account for a great deal. Because of the important position which the machine industry of Jagang Province holds, the Party Central Committee has been paying particular attention to the production problems of factories and enterprises in Jagang Province.

What pleased me most during my present visit to Jagang Province is that machine factories are doing their work very efficiently. There was no marked progress in supply services in the province last year, but the machine industry has accomplished a great deal. They have achieved normal production on a high level, manufactured many new machines and kept their factories clean. Some machine factories, in particular, have developed their own material bases, by curing themselves of the habit of relying on other people and displaying a high degree of the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance. I am highly satisfied that workers and technicians of the machine factories in the province have shown their loyalty to the Party and the revolution and the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and so achieved tremendous successes last year.

The machine factories in Jagang Province are confronted with
difficult and important tasks. According to the tasks given at the sectional meetings the machine factories must work hard to put production on a normal basis and produce a large quantity of new machines.

One of the most important tasks facing the province is to ensure that the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory produces 10,000 units of machine tools by April 15 next year.

The workers of the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory are determined to achieve the annual plan before August 15 and produce 10,000 units of machine tools by April 15 of the following year. It is very gratifying and something to be proud of before the world that the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory has raised a beacon fire of a campaign to produce 10,000 units of machine tools.

The beacon fire raised by the workers of the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory is of great importance in the implementation of the technical revolution. Following the beacon fire all machine factories throughout the country must make great innovations in the production of machine tools.

Machine tools are urgently needed to develop the national economy at present. We are going to build one tractor and motor vehicle repair plant in every county. At the estimate of 20 units of machine tools each we need 4,000 on a nationwide scale. In addition, at least one general machine factory to serve local industries ought to be built for each central county. Suppose there are 30 central counties and each general machine factory needs 50 machine tools, we must have 1,500. Today there are many local industry factories, approximately 1,000, including chicken plants, in our country. If we are to provide each of these factories with five machine tools for its repair centre, we need another 5,000. Besides these, there are many new factories to be built and many machine factories which should be extended. For this purpose we need a great number of machine tools.

If we launch an energetic campaign to produce 10,000 machine tools and manufacture 10,000 in the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory and another 10,000 in the Kusong Machine-Tool Factory and still
another 10,000 in other machine-tool factories including the Chongjin and Mangyongdae Machine-Tool Factories, and 30,000 in all throughout the country, we shall be able to solve all problems—rural mechanization and the problems of developing local industry and the fishing industry.

In brief, the campaign to produce 10,000 machine tools initiated by the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory is a most important link in the whole chain which makes it possible to solve difficult problems in the development of the national economy and to carry through the Six-Year National Economic Plan ahead of schedule. In this regard, the Jagang Provincial Party Committee and the Huichon City Party Committee must concentrate on the production of 10,000 machine tools and give positive support and assistance to the factory.

Improvements must be made in tyre production.

Because of the prevailing shortage of tyres, many lorries and tractors are standing idle and a large number of assembled units remain in the factory.

In order to meet the demand for tyres needed in various branches of the national economy, at least 500,000 to 600,000 tyres must be produced each year. However, the present production capacity of the Chollima Tyre Factory is no more than 300,000.

When I visited the Chollima Tyre Factory and had discussions with the workers and technicians recently, I was told that, even within the existing factory space, they would be able to produce 500,000 without difficulty if they would be provided with a few more vulcanizing machines and have an increase in some equipment. If the Chollima Tyre Factory produces that amount of tyres with the present buildings, we shall be able to solve the tyre problem without building a new factory during the Six-Year Plan. The Chollima Tyre Factory must work hard to increase production.

If they are to increase tyre production, they must press ahead with the technical innovation movement. They still use a great deal of manual labour in tyre production; they ought to make technical innovations in order to eliminate manual and backbreaking labour.
The Chollima Tyre Factory must make an effort to develop a material base and produce piano wire and similar items for its own use. At present it is suffering from a shortage of cotton threads. They will be available after the construction of the September Textile Mill is completed. We are going to adopt a measure by which strong rayon yarn is produced in Chongjin.

It is said that the inadequate supply of high calorific coal is hindering tyre production. Measures must be taken so that boilers can be fed with any kind of coal to ensure production. Now the Chollima Tyre Factory has suggested that the boilers be reconstructed to use all kinds of fuel. However, it might be difficult to do so immediately. For the present, it seems preferable to reconstruct one of the boilers to make it suitable for Jonchon coal, so as to be able to operate the boilers and guarantee production if the supply of high calorific coal fails.

In addition to increasing tyre production, efforts should also be made to improve quality and a tyre recycling factory should be built as soon as possible so that it can process about 50,000 tyres of various types in a year.

An experiment must be completed into using 50 per cent of synthetic rubber in the production of tyre as soon as possible. At present, tyres are made with a mixture of 70 per cent of natural rubber and 30 per cent of synthetic. You must use 50 per cent of synthetic rubber at all costs.

My recent visit to the Chollima Tyre Factory shows that it has boosted production and that it has earned public reputation. It is very gratifying that the Chollima Tyre Factory is improving its work. In future the Manpho City Party Committee and the Chollima Tyre Factory Party Committee should be even more efficient in their work and introduce innovations in tyre production.

Lastly, I shall talk about Party work and people’s government work. The report to the Fifth Congress of the Party sets out this work in detail. Therefore, officials of the Party and government bodies must study the report closely and carry out their work by relying on it.

Party organizations and government organs must conduct an
effective campaign to revolutionize and working-classize the people and to eradicate the differences between urban and rural areas.

In order to eliminate these differences we must develop the counties. It is only when we develop counties to become models in every aspect that we can eliminate rural backwardness quickly and develop both cities and rural areas on an equal basis.

There are many mountain villages in Jagang Province, so there must be more difficulty in doing this work than in other provinces. But this province has also conditions which will help to develop counties into models for the development of country areas.

There are no particular problems in building the cities and counties along the railways, such as Huichon, Jonchon, Songgan, Kanggye, Sijung and Manpho, as rural bases. Urban culture will also spread to county towns and country areas along the Amnok River such as Usi, Chosan and Wiwon when regular river transport becomes available. If new railways are built in Hwaphyong County, for example, all rural villages along the line will be developed and become enlightened.

If new inland railways are laid and water transport is developed further in Jagang Province in the future, very favourable conditions will be provided for the ideological and cultural development of the country areas and this will contribute greatly to eradicating the difference between the towns and the country areas.

It is true that the ideological and cultural standards of our rural areas at present fall behind those of the cities, but the general standard of ideology and culture in the country areas is very high. Electricity and the cable radio network are available to each house even as far as the village beside Rangnim Mountain, which is called the first village from the sky, and each household has access to newspapers and magazines. Yesterday I watched the performances of amateur art groups of factories and rural areas in Jagang Province; they have high ideological content and their artistic skill is good. We can rightly pride ourselves on the fact that the ideological and cultural revolutions are being carried out successfully in our country and that the ideological and cultural standard is high.
Our country is advancing ahead of others in the ideological and cultural revolutions, but this is not the position with regard to the technical revolution.

The technical revolution is not only a revolution to develop technology and the economy. Its major objective is to emancipate the working people from difficult work and to get rid of differences in working conditions.

This is why the Fifth Congress of the Party decided that it was the important components of the three major tasks of the technical revolution to reduce the differences between heavy and light labour, and between agricultural and industrial work. All officials must work hard to emancipate the peasants from difficult and backbreaking labour in hearty response to the three major requirements of the technical revolution set forth at the Party Congress. Only then will it be possible to remove the difference between town and country rapidly.

In order to succeed in carrying out the tasks in the fields of politics, the economy and culture put forward by the Fifth Congress of the Party, all Party members and other working people must fully understand the correctness of the Party’s lines and policies and work with high creativity and revolutionary enthusiasm. All Party organizations and government bodies must bring the revolutionary enthusiasm and creative initiative of the working people into full play by boldly opposing bureaucratism which dampens the creativeness of the masses.

It is also important to strengthen the fight against all varieties of incorrect practices, including passivism, which hinder the implementation of the Party’s lines and policies.

One of the major defects revealed in the work of the Party organizations of Jagang Province at present is the reluctance to fight against unfairness. This is true in the provincial people’s committee, provincial Party committee and factory Party committees; they are not determined enough in this light and they are spending at ease. Unwillingness to fight against the neglect of the Party’s policy is not an attitude befitting a master in the revolution. Party organizations and
government bodies must wage a powerful struggle against bureaucratism and passivism which oppress the wisdom and creativity of the masses and all other unjust practices which obstruct the implementation of Party line and policy, so as to carry out the tasks put forward by the Party Congress.

During this visit to this province I have given you many tasks and also adopted many measures. The future success in Jagang Province depends on how persistently you buckle down and press ahead with work.

I hope that you will carry out the tasks given during the current personal guidance without fail and so bring about a great advance in the work of Jagang Province.
On behalf of the Party Central Committee, I should first like to offer congratulations to all the motivation workers and the information workers for five families who are attending this conference, and who have so far performed a great service in their work and accomplished brilliant feats of labour.

I should also like to offer, on behalf of the Party Central Committee, thanks to the motivation workers of the Ryongyang Mine, the Kusong Textile Mill and the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory who took the floor today.

These three comrades, as truly befitting members of the Workers’ Party, have worked valiantly to implement all the tasks given by the Party and set an example of typical good motivation workers. The motivation workers from the Kusong Textile Mill and the Ryongyang Mine, in particular, have worked untiringly, even though they are women, to carry out the tasks assigned by the Party. They have performed their duty as motivation workers excellently, showing the stubborn fighting spirit of trying ten times if they failed once, a hundred times if ten times were not enough, and a thousand times if they tailed a hundred times. This fighting
spirit is a perfect revolutionary spirit. It is an excellent and very valuable spirit. These comrades are good fighters and good speakers. Anyone who has not done a good job cannot make a good speech.

I hope that the motivation workers present at the meeting, and all the other motivation workers throughout the country and all our members of the Workers’ Party will follow the living examples of these comrades so as to become competent motivation workers who are good at their work and know how to stimulate all their fellow working people and rouse them to action by setting an example in all spheres of work.

Taking advantage of this opportunity, I should like to speak briefly about some questions relating to information and motivation work.

As you all know, we are in the first year of our attack on the targets set under the Six-Year National Economic Plan.

Strenuous efforts are being made in many sectors of the national economy from the beginning of this year. In particular, in hearty response to the appeal of the Party Central Committee to wage a 100-day campaign, all the people have gone into the campaign as one man and are achieving extraordinary successes which are amazing the world, on all fronts of socialist construction.

In this vigorous struggle which is taking place in different sectors of the national economy, the motivation workers, in support of the Party’s policy, have done their bits by rousing the masses to activity through their efficient information and motivation work and have made their contributions to the great successes.

But we cannot allow ourselves to mark time, content with the success we have already achieved, because we are entrusted with the serious and honourable task of carrying out the Six-Year National Economic Plan. We must make ceaseless innovations and continued advance.

The main task of the Six-Year National Economic Plan put forward at the Fifth Congress of our Party is, in short, to accomplish the three major tasks of the technical revolution in economic construction and to accelerate the revolutionization and working-classification of the whole of society in the ideological revolution. We must also work hard to
increase our defence power and reunify the country.

In order to win victory in the difficult work of carrying out the Six-Year National Economic Plan, it is necessary for the motivation workers and information workers for five families to conduct information and motivation work well, but the ideological struggle should be further strengthened in all sectors.

A revolution cannot succeed without fighting against the outdated. Likewise, if you are to carry out the Six-Year National Economic Plan, you must carry out a forceful campaign against all kinds of obsolete ideas including feudal-Confucian ideas, capitalist ideas, selfishness, revisionism and dogmatism in all fields.

Our experience shows that if we carry out an ideological struggle properly, give full play to the wisdom of the masses and give effective assistance to the people who try to advance, and mobilize them correctly, we can carry out any difficult revolutionary task successfully. This can be proved by a recent event.

As you all know, the workers of the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory resolved to produce 10,000 machine tools by April 15 next year and called on the whole country to respond to their appeal.

Machine tools are indispensable for carrying out the three major tasks of the technical revolution, the central task of the Six-Year National Economic Plan put forward by our Party. The technical revolution is not carried out by words, but by material force, that is, by machinery.

In order to build tractor and lorry repair plants and their spare parts plants and many other factories in all parts of the country in the future, we must produce a large number of various kinds of machine tools.

If we have machine tools, we can make as many other machines of different kinds as we need for the technical revolution.

Therefore, the Party Central Committee pays particular attention to the production of machine tools and wants to get a large number of them produced.

But at the time when the Six-Year National Economic Plan and this year’s plan were drawn up, the index of the production of machine tools was set in a very unenterprising fashion.
When they drafted these plans, some planning workers who were affected by passivism and conservatism said that the total number of machine tools produced annually in all our machine factories was no more than 9,000. They said that it would be impossible to produce more than that.

The technicians and specialists of the State Planning Commission and the State Commission of Science and Technology also organized what they called “anatomical groups” and many others and sent them to inspect the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory. On their return, they said that the factory could produce 4,000 to 5,000 machine tools at the most in a year.

I think that they estimated no more than that, mainly because they retained obsolete ideas such as flunkeyism and dogmatism. Instead of thinking of doing things through their own efforts, these people thought about a certain foreign factory and its equipment and capacity before they made the estimate, and then judged that ours would not be able to exceed the foreign output. This shows that their way of thinking itself is flunkeyistic. And those people who were infected with dogmatism only looked up to foreign ways and could not even think of raising the torch of innovation like the one raised by the workers of Huichon.

The meetings of the Cabinet and the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee sharply criticized the passive work attitude of the planners and technicians who were infected with flunkeyism, dogmatism and conservatism. After being criticized several times in this manner, they planned the production of a little over 10,000 machine tools for this year.

What are the ensuing developments? Soon after receiving their quota from the State Planning Commission, the workers of the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory expressed their determination to complete their quota of the production of machine tools by August 15 this year and produce 10,000 by April 15 next year.

On being informed that the workers of Huichon had crushed conservatism in all spheres and had taken such a bold initiative in response to the Party’s call, we personally visited them and heard their report. They automated the processing of lathe beds, the most difficult process in the
manufacture of machine tools, so as to process them on a production line. They got rid of the old method by which all machines of the factory had to work on each of the machine parts to be produced, and reorganized the process so as to introduce specialized production of each machine part. In other words, they automated and specialized the production processes. They also made up for the shortage of production space of the casting shop by inventing a good system. The manufacture of machine tools requires casting. Molten iron cast into moulds takes up the factory’s floor space for a long time until it cools down. So the casting capacity is limited by the space available. To overcome this limitation, they have laid a railway track which runs through the middle of the casting shop and outside and then around the shop, so that the castings in their moulds can be pulled out of the shop building and run round it so that they can be cooled down and the sand used in casting can then be shaken off.

Because their report was very interesting and rational we summoned the chairmen of the State Planning Commission and of the Materials Supply Commission and other officials concerned to the briefing and told them to help the workers. The Political Committee of the Party Central Committee also discussed the matter and decided to give active support and assistance to this bold initiative.

The workers of Huichon made three requests: first, that they should be supplied with materials promptly, second, that they should be allocated a little more manpower necessary for the manufacture of more new items, and third, that the capacity of their forge should be increased a little. We intend to comply with all their requests. They say that if these requests are met, their resolve to produce 10,000 machine tools will be implemented without fail.

This is a new torch in carrying out the Six-Year National Economic Plan and an innovation and initiative which are as great as that in the Kangson Steel Plant in 1957.

The torch of technical innovation raised by the workers of Huichon has not come about smoothly without any opposition. They have been able to raise the torch because they have fought strongly against the flunkeyists who could not understand how we could do something which
other countries with developed industry could not do, against the empiricists and conservatives who asked how the workmen could do something which they themselves could not do, no matter how long they lived, and against the revisionists and dissipated and degenerate elements.

The people who are under the spell of conservatism, flunkeyism and dogmatism can never think creatively. They can neither think of doing casting work by laying a railway inside and outside when the productive space of a casting shop is limited, nor can they conceive the creative method of cutting lathe beds on a production line by automating their processing or of specializing the process of making each of the machine parts.

Only the workers of Huichon, who are armed firmly with the Juche idea, the monolithic ideology of our Party, and filled with a high degree of revolutionary resolve to be self-reliant in implementing the revolutionary tasks given by the Party, can think of increasing the production of machine tools quickly with the existing equipment and the existing space. They alone can kindle the fire of great innovations by working hard to make the greatest use of all possibilities.

The torch of innovations raised by the workers of Huichon is now burning fiercely all over the country.

In reply, the workers of the Kusong Machine-Tool Factory have determined to produce 10,000 machine tools by April 15 next year, asking why they cannot do it when the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory can. The workers of the Mangyongdae, Hamhung and Chongjin Machine-Tool Factories have also responded to their call.

If these last three factories produce 10,000 machine tools in all by April 15 next year, the total will be 30,000. This means that the level of machine-tool production which has been estimated for the final year of the Six-Year National Economic Plan will be reached by next year.

As you see, in order to bring about continued innovations in the struggle to fulfil the Six-Year National Economic Plan, we must fight resolutely against flunkeyism, dogmatism, conservatism, empiricism and all other outdated ideas. To fight against outdated ideas is a law of social development.
There is still an absurd practice of thinking and looking up to only foreign things among some officials, who do not believe in their own strength because of the flunkeyist idea which still lingers in their minds. Although they do not speak their minds in public, these people regard technology as something which is difficult to understand, lack boldness and always work in a passive way.

We must start a powerful ideological struggle against this tendency. To all intents and purposes, the ideological struggle should be conducted through ideological education. The use of an administrative method in the ideological struggle will neither solve the question nor achieve success.

That is why motivation workers are not given administrative authority; nor do they need it.

Motivation workers must always be an example to the masses and persuade and teach them over and over again, so that all of them will work hard for the Party and the revolution.

I think that the work experience of the motivation workers of the Ryongyang Mine and the Kusong Textile Mill, who took the floor today, will serve as a good example of motivation workers. These comrades worked perseveringly in order to educate the masses to the last, giving people ideological education ten times if once was ineffective, and a hundred times if ten times were not enough. There is a proverb that ten strokes can fell any tree. And there is another saying that sincerity moves heaven. This saying, of course, sounds somewhat supernatural. But you can see that its meaning is good: if one works with all one’s heart and keeps up one’s enthusiasm, one can be sure of success in any difficult task.

In the work of education, too, you can be sure of success if you teach people and persuade them patiently over and over again.

Therefore, motivation workers and information workers for five families must intensify the ideological struggle by means of persuasion, education and criticism, so that the working people make continued innovations in all fields.

The next important task of motivation and information workers is to
continue to explain the tasks put forward by the Fifth Party Congress to the working people in simple language, and thus encourage them to display their wisdom and enthusiasm to the full.

Rallying the masses closely behind the Party and giving full play to their wisdom and enthusiasm are fundamental matters on which success in the revolution and construction depends.

Whenever we have a difficult problem, we consult the working class. The situation was very difficult when I visited the Kangson Steel Plant in 1957. At that time, upholding the Party’s call to increase steel production, the workers of the Kangson Steel Plant eased the difficult steel situation in our country by producing 120,000 tons with a blooming mill with a rated capacity of 60,000 tons. And during the arduous Fatherland Liberation War I once visited Ragwon and attended the Party-cell general meeting of ten Party members at the casting shop of the Ragwon Machine Factory. I asked them what they were going to do when the factory had been destroyed. A woman replied: “Premier, don’t worry. If we win the war, reconstruction will be quite easy.... When the war is over, we will reconstruct it again and be prosperous, so don’t worry too much.” Her words moved me with the great might of the working class. When I came home at 2 o’clock from the meeting I could not sleep at all that night. I could not sleep either in the car on my way back, or at home.

Nothing is impossible for the working class with such strong will power. After the war, the Ragwon Machine Factory was reconstructed on a large scale, and in this work the ten Party members played the central part. Since then, this factory has done a great deal of excellent work. It makes cranes if the Party tells it to do so; it manufactures water pumps if the Party wants them; it produces excavators if the Party gives it the task; it makes anything if the Party needs it. When the Party put forward the line of carrying on the construction of the economy and defences simultaneously, we told the Ragwon Machine Factory to become a model in implementing the new line. In fact, some people doubted that they could do it, and shook their heads.

But the workers replied that they would do it without fail because
the Party required it, and they carried out the task splendidly by overcoming all obstacles.

This shows that if we give full play to the wisdom and zeal of the masses who use tools to make goods, they can bring about great innovations.

Of course, individual heroism is necessary. But the people who are living in a socialist society, communists in particular, regard mass heroism as the main thing rather than individual heroism. That is because mass heroism is superior to individual heroism beyond all comparison and is very powerful.

The motivation worker of the Ryongyang Mine has not only made innovations in her own work but, by setting an example, encouraged her whole platoon to work heroically and educated the whole platoon to be motivation workers. Likewise, all the motivation workers must stir up the masses to mass innovations and heroism.

It is true that mass leadership requires a hard core. The motivation workers must play the part of the hard core.

To this end, motivation workers must, first of all, clearly understand the content of the report to the Fifth Congress of our Party. They should not learn it by rote but study every word, every line and every sentence thoroughly, so as to grasp the essence. Only then can they explain and propagate the report among the people and take the lead in the struggle to put it into practice.

In addition, we must intensify education of the working people in the revolutionary traditions.

Mass education, as in all other undertakings, requires a model. If there is a model, people can follow it and work zealously with confidence in their own abilities.

Motivation workers should closely combine education in the revolutionary traditions with the inculcation of Party policy in the minds of the working people so as to equip them firmly with the Party’s idea and encourage them to display wisdom and zeal.

Next, motivation workers must conduct motivation work at the right time.
According to your reports and information, one of the major shortcomings is that, at present, motivation work is not done at the right moment. This work must always be done on the appropriate subjects and at the right time.

The word motivation means stimulating people to action. If people are discouraged and dispirited, motivation work must be undertaken promptly to suit the occasion by dealing with clear and real facts so as to inspire them with courage and prepare them for an attack on the target.

As I said before, our experience of army life shows that motivation work can only be effective when it deals with appropriate subjects at the right time.

For example, if you are to attack an enemy this evening, the political instructor should conduct motivation work to suit the nature of the battle and at the opportune moment. He can tell the story of Comrade Kim Jin, an indomitable hero, who dashed bravely at an enemy embrasure in spite of the rain of enemy fire and blocked its opening with his breast at the cost of his life and achieved a breakthrough for his unit. Then, the political instructor should call on the men to follow the hero’s example by fighting bravely to destroy the enemy and win the battle that evening. Motivation work should be conducted on such a striking subject and at the opportune moment. If, instead, he tells what his home village is like, or which place is like what, the subject of motivation will be quite out of place and will have little effect. Motivation in any work can only be successful when it deals with a striking topic which is appropriate to the time and occasion.

Because I have spoken a great deal about motivation work on many other occasions, including the national training course for the motivation workers of city and county Party committees and at the Fifth Party Congress, I have spoken briefly today.

In conclusion, I wish you motivation workers and information workers for five families to bring about new developments in your mass political work to implement the magnificent programme of socialist construction adopted by the Fifth Party Congress.
ON SOME PROBLEMS ARISING
IN IMPLEMENTING THE UNIFORM
PRICE POLICY

Talk to Officials in the Price Assessment Sector
March 26, 1971

At present, our officials are inefficient in the correct implementation of the Party’s policy on the uniformity of prices. In particular, they are showing deviations in fixing the prices of foodstuffs.

An analysis of the reasons for the clumsiness in setting food prices reveals that it is because our officials in this sector lack a precise understanding of our Party’s price policy and the principle of fixing prices in a socialist society. So I had intended to give them a lecture on the assessment of prices, but I have not been able to find the time to do so.

In a socialist society the prices of goods must be unified.

Ensuring the uniformity of prices means that the unity of price control work must be carried out under the unified direction of the state price assessment body. In other words, this implies that this body must not only fix prices directly, but also regulate the levels of prices, standard prices, uniformly, as well as the methods and procedures of fixing prices, thereby placing the price work under complete state control.

In a socialist society, in which the means of production are socialized, every economic operation proceeds according to plan and
the state gives unified guidance to production, construction and the improvement of the people’s living standards. The state can only make proper use of a price lever for the growth of production and the improvement of the people’s living conditions and guarantee equilibrium between prices when it directs and controls the price work uniformly. Unless prices are unified the requirements of the economic law of socialism cannot be met thoroughly and the superiority of the socialist system cannot be brought into full play.

On the basis of these requirements of a socialist society, we established the state price assessment organizations to obtain uniformity of prices and made certain that they introduce a uniform price system.

By unifying prices, however, we do not mean that the state price assessment body should undertake the work of fixing the prices of all products or unconditionally apply one and the same price to all goods.

This does not arise in a socialist society, a transitional society. In this society there are the state sector of the economy which represents all-people property, as well as the cooperative sector and sideline production by individuals. These three forms of the economy differ markedly from one another in forms of property, and in means and methods of production. That is why, even when they make the same kind of products, the labour used in their production differs according to each economic sector. Since this is the case, if the prices of all goods are fixed uniformly on the basis of socially necessary labour, the cooperative sector of the economy and individuals engaged in sideline production, whose labour productivity is relatively lower than that in the state sector, will suffer losses and, accordingly, they will have no interest in producing goods. This will give rise to a shortage of some goods and eventually cause great inconvenience to the people, because the state is still incapable of producing all the essential goods and providing them with these articles in quantity at low prices.

In implementing the price policy, you should apply uniform prices to goods where this is possible, but should not do so if it presents difficulties.
Because of their misunderstanding of the essence and requirements of our Party’s policy on uniformity of prices as well as the character of a socialist society, a transitional society, officials in this sector try to fix the prices of all products for themselves and apply uniform prices to goods without due consideration, merely because they are of the same kind, and then enforce these prices.

These practices are particularly evident in fixing the prices of foodstuffs.

Last August when I was told that green celery cabbages were scarcely to be found in shops in Pyongyang, I inquired into the matter, to discover the reason that the price had been fixed too low and dictated in an arbitrary manner. Officials in this sector assessed two jon per kilogramme as the price of green celery cabbages, on the grounds that they were no better than the autumn celery cabbages which had a solid heart; but this amount hardly paid for the work of thinning it out. So cooperative farms were reluctant to pick green celery cabbages to send to the shops. Salted planktonic shrimps, shellfish, shrimps, and so on, and different kinds of food produced by farmers are not in plentiful supply, chiefly because their prices are too low to stimulate the producers’ interest. Prices greatly affect the enthusiasm of commodity producers in this way.

Nowadays foodstuffs are not varied and some of them are often in short supply, largely because of the inefficient price work on the part of the officials concerned in the final analysis.

They are not meticulous and are often careless in carrying out the Party’s price policy. The work of price assessment is not a simply technical and commercial matter of calculating the manpower used in the course of producing goods or the production costs before deciding on their prices; it is a very important task of reflecting Party policy. For this reason, you must conduct it with prudence, not in a careless manner.

In implementing the policy on uniformity of prices, you should start from the law of socialist economic development and give proper consideration to the specific features of transitional socialist society.
If you are to enforce the Party’s price policy correctly, you should set prices after making detailed enquiries about economic forms, means and methods of production, relations between supply and demand, and the effect of the seasons on production. Prices relate to various factors. Therefore, if they are assessed mechanically in accordance with a single formula, price fixing will not be successful.

In our country children’s clothing is assessed at low uniform prices so that all children will be equally well dressed, and books on Party policy are sold cheaply with the purpose of helping the working people to study it industriously. These facts show that the state makes deliberate use of a price lever by divorcing value from price.

The prices of goods should be fixed competently after taking account of the purchasing power of the public, the producers’ interests and various other factors. Foodstuffs, for instance, should be cheap when mass-produced and slightly more expensive when produced in limited quantities, according to the seasons, and the price of foods which can be stored for a long time should be fixed higher so that they are in constant supply.

Uniform prices should be applied, in principle, to the products manufactured by the state sector of the economy which uses modern methods. State enterprises have streamlined production processes and there is no particular difference between them in production conditions. Therefore, it is a matter of principle for the state price assessment body to fix the prices of products from the state sector uniformly on the basis of socially necessary labour used. It is only then that you will be able to establish equilibrium between prices and avoid confusion in price assessment. Since the workers at state enterprises, unlike the members of producers’ cooperatives or cooperative farmers, get paid by the state, they themselves do not suffer even if losses are caused by the application of uniform prices.

However, uniform prices cannot be assigned thoughtlessly to the products of the cooperative economic sector or individual sideline work. Even the same kinds of goods differ in the amount of labour employed when they are produced by sophisticated methods in the
state sector and manually in the cooperative sector. If the price of a product made by the cooperative sector is the same as the price of an identical item produced cheaply in the state sector, by using modern methods, the cooperative sector will suffer a loss, and this will affect its members directly through their shares of distribution. This sector will decide not to produce unprofitable goods, which will have the result of slowing down their increased production.

That is why you should not apply uniform prices carelessly to products from the cooperative sector or from individual sideline work. In principle, you should fix different prices according to the economic forms.

As regards the products of the cooperative sector, the principle is that the state price assessment body exercises its control over the prices and collects statistics on them after it has decided on the price levels.

In particular, you must refrain from assessing food prices uniformly and enforcing them. It is impossible to fix these prices by adding a profit element to the costs by a simple calculation. Foodstuffs are apt to go bad, and, moreover, their production conditions differ from place to place and are much affected by the seasons. For these reasons, their prices should change from season to season and from place to place and they should alter between the morning and the evening.

Where fish are concerned, you should assess their prices uniformly when they are caught by state fishing stations, but assign standard prices to those caught by fishermen’s cooperatives so that the producers can regulate them.

Uniform prices should be applied to the fish caught by state fishing stations which can use large vessels to catch great quantities on the deep seas, because they are capable of storing and processing them on a large scale and can dispose of them wholesale according to state allocation.

However, fishermen’s cooperatives are limited in their fishing operations by the seasons, due to their poor technical equipment, and even when they make large hauls of fish in their season, they are unable to store them for a long time so that they can sell them on a
regular basis. In these conditions, you should assess their prices low when they catch large quantities so that they can be disposed of promptly, and allow them to sell fish at slightly higher prices when they catch small amounts, so that they can balance their economy. Uniform prices will also be applied to the fish caught by these cooperatives some day when they are provided with sufficient storage to prevent large hauls of fish from going bad.

Suppose uniform prices are set for the fish caught by fishermen’s cooperatives in the present situation in which they do not have sufficient storage. Then, when they make a good catch, they will be unable to sell it before the fish rot, and they will be less interested in fishing because it does not pay when there are periods of poor catches. As far as fishermen’s cooperatives are concerned, therefore, you ought only to assign standard prices to their fish so that they will be able to regulate these prices in line with the success or failure of their operations; you should not apply the uniform price system.

It is unnecessary to fix the prices for pickled shrimps, planktonic shrimps, and so on, in advance. These should be excluded from the range of uniform prices. They should be left entirely to the assessment of producers—whether they receive 10 or 20 won a kilogramme as they wish. If they do not sell well because they are expensive, their prices will automatically fall.

People eat fish for their nutritive value, but salted planktonic shrimps, for instance, are a delicacy which people eat sparingly. Therefore, you cannot fix their price in comparison with the prices of other fish. In the past officials in the sector concerned set the price incorrectly, with the result that sufficient quantities of salted planktonic shrimps do not appear on the market following the application of the uniform price, although they could often be found before. You must not assess the prices of processed foods incorrectly. This prevents adequate supplies of them appearing at the markets, although it is possible to provide them in quantity. Goods which are indispensable to a market must be there, even though their prices are somewhat high.
The prices of pickled shrimps, planktonic shrimps and the like should be fixed as requested by the sellers. If this is done, farm households by the riverside or on the coast will try to pickle as many jars of shrimps and planktonic shrimps as possible for sale, and the market will not run out of different salted foodstuffs.

Prices of the fish caught by the cooperative sector of the economy should be allowed to rise or fall once their standard prices have been set by the provincial people’s committee. The Price Assessment Commission must not make the local authorities fix the prices of foodstuffs only after asking central authorities what they should be, in an attempt to maintain its control over prices. Fish, for example, might rot away completely during the time the local authorities wait to receive a reply from the higher level.

It is also advisable not to assign uniform prices to vegetables produced by cooperative farms. They should be permitted to thin out greens in particular, for instance, to sell at a price of 15 or 20 jon a kilogramme as they please. Pyongyang can regulate the prices of these vegetables every few days according to the demand. Even this will be no problem if you have effective control over the purchasing workers so that they do not indulge in fraudulent practices.

The prices of condiments such as leek, garlic and red pepper should be fixed a little high, and that of winter leek should be raised still further because it is difficult to keep. Then farmers will preserve this plant well of their own accord without being persuaded to do so, and will not run out of supplies, even in winter.

I consider it desirable to improve the prices of processed fruit to some extent. In this way cooperative farms will be encouraged to collect all fallen fruit to make jam and dried fruit for market.

The price of chestnuts must not be made uniform. If farmers are to sell them after keeping them in stock, they have to pick the burs in autumn and bury them until they dig them out again so as to bur them. This is very hard work. In spite of this, their price has been assessed too low to pay for the trouble the farmers took in keeping them, with the result that they are seldom put on sale. If the farmers were allowed to
sell them at the figure they named, there would be large quantities on
the peasant market, but this is not the case at the moment.

Picking an abundance of wild fruit will make it possible to produce
a variety of processed foods for the people, but due to the careless
assessment of their prices the farmers are reluctant to do so at present.
The purchasing prices for wild fruit must be fixed correctly.

As far as the prices of eggs are concerned, a uniform price must be
applied to those produced by the state chicken plants and through joint
poultry raising by the cooperative sector of the economy, but the prices
of those obtained by farmers at home should be left to them to fix as
they wish. I am told that at present eggs from Pyongyang are taken in
great numbers to country areas. This practice will only disappear when
farmers are allowed to fix freely the prices of the eggs they produce,
and this will encourage them to raise chickens.

Unimportant goods which the state sector is unable to manufacture
but which farmers make in small quantities for the peasant market
should be left alone even if they are a little expensive. This means that
we must allow farmers at the peasant market to ask any prices they
name for their goods, since the state is not in a position to ensure the
mass production of all consumer goods which the people need. This
will not lead to an arbitrary rise in prices on the peasant market.
Because of the law of value, the high prices which farmers ask cannot
immediately be fixed as prices.

One of the important problems we should study in the assessment
of food prices is how we can distribute large quantities of foodstuffs,
such as apples and vegetables from Pyongyang and peaches from
North Hwanghae Province through commercial and distributive
channels to areas such as Ryanggang and Jagang Provinces, which are
a long way from Pyongyang. At present commercial workers are
reluctant to transport foodstuffs to far-off places for sale because they
tend to go rotten and because of the amount of goods needing to be
transported. We should study ways of encouraging them to take an
interest in carrying foodstuffs inland for market.

Industrial goods find their way into inland areas, whereas
foodstuffs do not do so. Tokchon, South Phyongan Province, for example, where there is a large motor works and where very many workers live, is not adequately supplied with supplementary foods. Shops in Pyongyang have a large stock of vegetables, apples, fish and various other kinds of foodstuffs but those in Tokchon have few of them. The situation is worse in Jagang and Ryanggang Provinces. There must be some obstacles to foods reaching these areas. Officials of the Price Assessment Commission and of the Ministry of Finance should display their initiative to solve problems of this kind.

In order to bring about a good supply of foodstuffs in Jagang and Ryanggang Provinces, something needs to be done—either by raising the percentage of loss considerably or granting premiums, for instance, to commercial and distributive workers.

The prices of foodstuffs can be assessed according to localities. They can be sold cheaply in the places where they are mass-produced, but at somewhat higher prices in the areas which produce them in small quantities or which have to transport them from other areas. On the other hand, the workers living in mountainous regions could be given an allowance of out-of-the-way places or the like so as to enable them to buy foodstuffs even when they are a little dear. We should by all means ensure that the working people in mountain areas are also provided with plenty of food.

Special compensation must be allowed for in the prices of industrial goods produced by cooperatives with primitive production facilities so that they will not suffer losses. You cannot apply uniform wholesale prices to the products which are manufactured in a primitive way.

You must take the quality of manufactured goods into account when assessing their prices. If the quality of goods is improved their prices should be raised as well.

A price department should be reinforced quickly in each provincial people’s committee. Three officials are too small a staff for the department. We had better allow it to have a regular staff of about 12 people in a large province and approximately 8 in a small one so as to accelerate its formation in each province.
Because of complexity in the content of its work, the food and daily-necessities price department of the Price Assessment Commission should be divided into the food price department and the daily-necessities price department, and a price control department must be organized within this commission. At some time in the future we shall have to carry out a separate examination of the structure of the price assessment sector.

You must have a proper understanding of our Party’s price policy and bring about an improvement in price assessment work.
LET US CONSOLIDATE AND DEVELOP THE GREAT RESULTS OF THE PUKCHONG MEETING

Speech at the South Hamgyong Provincial Meeting to Mark the 10th Anniversary of the Pukchong Enlarged Meeting of the Presidium of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea
April 6, 1971

Comrades,

Today we are very pleased to be with you commemorating the 10th anniversary of the historic Pukchong Enlarged Meeting of the Presidium of the Party Central Committee.

Allow me first to express, on behalf of the Party Central Committee, my warm thanks to the agricultural working people in Pukchong County for the patriotic devotion they have displayed by implementing the decision of the Pukchong Meeting through their ardent support of it and for the brilliant success they have achieved in planting orchards during the past ten years.

I am also very glad that the Party organizations in South Hamgyong Province have successfully mobilized Party members and other working people in the campaign to implement the decision of the Pukchong Meeting and have thus succeeded in carrying out the Party’s task of creating 30,000 hectares of orchards in their province. I should like to offer my warm congratulations and thanks to all the Party members and the agricultural working people in this province for
having performed brilliant work feats in the creation of orchards.

It is ten years since the Pukchong Enlarged Meeting of the 
Presidium of the Party Central Committee was held. Our endeavours to 
implement its decision during this period were very worthwhile and we 
have indeed done great work. These years have witnessed a really 
amazing change in the development of our fruit farming.

We can see a convincing example here in Pukchong County.

Before liberation there were scarcely 500 hectares of orchards in 
this county. But now it has 2,300 hectares or four to five times as many 
as before liberation. We can only say that the expansion of the orchard 
area from 500 hectares to more than 2,000 in one county is a 
tremendous success. Today Pukchong County has become one of the 
largest fruit-production centres in our country. It has set an excellent 
example in the development of fruit farming.

It is true that Pukchong County was celebrated for apple production 
even before liberation. But its orchard area and fruit output at that time 
were incomparably smaller than at present. Worse still, the apples 
produced here were available to Japanese imperialists and landlords 
and capitalists who were rich, but not to the workers, peasants and 
other poor people. So these people were not at all interested in them, 
although landlords and capitalists wrote a story about the famous 
Pukchong apples and talked about them a great deal.

But the situation is quite different now. Today all the hills in the 
Pukchong area have been covered with fruit trees, and these are all the 
valuable property of the people, including workers and peasants, and 
serve as a solid basis for providing the people with a prosperous life.

If Pukchong County cultivates the existing orchards properly so 
that they will all bear fruit in the future and if it reaps 10 tons of fruit 
from one hectare at a conservative estimate, it will be producing 
23,000 tons. Since the per-hectare yield of apples is now 20 to 40 tons 
from highly productive orchards, I believe it will not be at all difficult 
to produce 10 tons from each hectare on the average. Pukchong County 
is resolved to produce 30,000 tons of fruit in the last year of the 
Six-Year Plan. We are convinced that the agricultural working people
in this county will fulfil this resolution with credit.

Before liberation there were only a few thousand hectares of orchards even in the whole of South Hamgyong Province, but there are 30,000 hectares now. They will be able to produce 300,000 tons even at the rate of 10 tons per hectare. This is by no means a small amount. If you supply 100 grammes per head of the provincial population a day, you will have at least 200,000 tons in reserve for one year. This is a very good thing. In the past our people suffered the loss of teeth when they were not very old because they were not supplied with an adequate amount of fruit and vegetables. But today this has become an old story. Our people’s living standards can improve further.

The decision of the Pukchong Meeting on opening a new epoch in the development of fruit growing, has touched the heartstrings of all the people and brought about a great change, not only in South Hamgyong Province, but in all other parts of the northern half of Korea. In active support of the Party’s decision since the historic meeting, all the working people throughout the country turned out to create orchards in a mass campaign involving the whole of society. As a result, the area of our orchards has increased to nearly 200,000 hectares, and the whole land has become an orchard where all kinds of fruit thrive—a land of greater bliss.

In the past, Pukchong County and other parts of South Hamgyong Province were renowned for fruit production in our country. But other districts are now winning a higher reputation than South Hamgyong Province. For example, South Hwanghae Province is more famous for fruit production than South Hamgyong Province. Now it has one county with a large general fruit farm of nearly 8,000 hectares. So we call this county Kwail (fruit Tr.) County. This county is literally a large orchard. Such a large orchard must be a rarity in the world.

Kwail County will produce 100,000 tons of fruit a year in the near future. Projects for building large fruit storehouses and processing plants and many other installations are now extensively under way in this county. A new, modern, fruit town will spring up in Kwail County in the future.
All these changes which have taken place in our country during the past decade patently prove the great strength of the decision of the Pukchong Enlarged Meeting of the Presidium of the Party Central Committee.

The Pukchong Meeting, which was held in April 1961, was a truly important meeting which opened a new era in the development of our fruit farming and as such it will be remembered for ever in the history of our Party and people. I think it is natural that today our Party members and working people celebrate the tenth anniversary of the Pukchong Meeting on a nationwide scale.

Using this opportunity, I should like to speak about some tasks in the further development of our fruit farming.

The large number of orchards which we have created in the past, in support of the decision of the Pukchong Meeting, is a great treasure for our people and a solid asset for their happy life for generations to come.

However, we cannot rest content with this success, or simply salute it. Our important task is to continue to direct the efforts of the whole country and all the people in the development of fruit farming so as to consolidate the success attained by implementing the decision of the Pukchong Meeting, and further expand it.

We must, first of all, take care of the orchards which we have created, and tend them with care.

In orchard conservation it is very important to terrace sloping orchards and provide them with stone walls so as to prevent earth from being washed away by the rain.

Since our country has a small area of plains and a large area of mountains, we have had to establish orchards mainly on slopes. Hills on the west coast, in North and South Phyongan Provinces and South Hwanghae Province, for instance, are gently sloping, and the orchards in this part of the country are not too steep. But the mountains in South Hamgyong Province and other areas on the east coast are very steep and most of the orchards here are on steep slopes. If you do not take thorough measures to conserve orchards in these conditions, good
surface soil may be washed away by the rain in summer and the land may become arid so that fruit trees will become dry and, worse still, the orchards which have cost you a great deal of labour will be damaged by erosion every year.

All districts must, therefore, concentrate on orchard conservation and on looking after them carefully, building terraces where terraces are needed, providing stone walling where this is necessary, and planting grass belts where these are required, so as to prevent erosion.

In addition, water tanks will have to be erected in the orchards. Sloping land is mostly arid, so that fruit trees are vulnerable to drought. Therefore, water tanks and pumps must be provided for the irrigation of sloping orchard areas in the dry season.

It is also important to install spraying tanks in the orchards to prevent damage by blight and insects. When blight or insects are found on fruit trees, they must be destroyed immediately by means of chemical sprays. Otherwise, they quickly spread all over and cause serious damage to orchards. That is why orchards must be provided with spraying tanks so as to prevent blight and insect damage.

If these measures are taken properly, the orchards on slopes will not be in the least inferior to those in the plains; they will be rather better in many respects. Because air circulation and sunshine are good in sloping orchards, their fruit ripens earlier and is sweeter than that from lowland orchards.

Ryongjon-ri and Tangu-ri in Pukchong County have set a good example in the development and management of orchards.

I visited Ryongjon-ri very early this morning and found that the people there had done a great deal of work and developed their orchards neatly since our visit there in 1963. They have terraced all their sloping orchards, built stone walling for them so as to prevent wash-aways and erosion in case of heavy rain in summer, and have also built good motor roads up to the hilltops. Moreover, they have installed water tanks and pumps and spraying tanks which are capable of watering or spraying fruit trees whenever necessary. The people in Tangu-ri have also done the same. We must publicize their experiences
so that all the rest of the country can follow their example in the conservation and cultivation of orchards.

If you are to cultivate the existing orchards well and increase fruit production, you must fertilize them liberally with organic manure.

Some time ago we had a consultative meeting with the officials in charge of fruit farming and made personal inspections of fruit farms in Pyongyang, Hwangju and some other districts for the purpose of working out measures to develop fruit farming. In the course of this, we found that quite a number of fruit trees were suffering from a deficiency in nutrients because they had only been given chemical fertilizer, and not much organic manure. Fruit trees do not differ from man in that they need nutrients. Just as a well-nourished man is healthy and capable of working properly, well-nourished fruit trees can thrive, free from diseases, and yield plenty of delicious fruit. In order to cultivate fruit trees well, we must produce a large amount of good organic manure.

I was told that, if we build a pig farm, we can obtain 12 tons of good-quality manure in producing every ton of pork. If we use this amount of manure for the cultivation of fruit trees, we shall be able to increase fruit production considerably. Workers of the fruit growing sector say that the application of 20 tons of good-quality manure per hectare of orchards will increase the present per-hectare yield by 50 per cent.

Large-scale modern pig farms are now being constructed in Pyongyang, Sariwon, Kwail County, Kangso County and other districts where there are large numbers of orchards, in order to obtain great quantities of good-quality organic manure. In Pyongyang, particularly, a few modern pig farms each of 10,000-ton capacity are now under construction, where one man can tend approximately 3,000 pigs.

Pukchong County, which was the first to raise the torch of developing fruit culture, must also make efforts to construct pig farms so as to obtain a large amount of good-quality organic manure.

The situation in Pukchong County and other districts on the east
coast may, of course, be a little different from that in the areas on the west coast. The Pyongyang Fruit Farm and the Songhwa Fruit Farm are vast stretches of contiguous orchards each of some 1,000 hectares. So, if a large pig farm is located near any of these orchards, there will be no difficulty in transporting the manure. As a matter of fact, the larger the pig farm, the easier it is to manage it, the lower the meat production cost is, and the more profitable. But orchards are scattered over wide areas in Pukchong County, for instance, so the location of one large pig farm in a single place will not be rational. It would be possible to build a large pig farm in Pukchong County town, but this would create problems in transporting the manure. It seems advisable, therefore, that in a county like Pukchong, three or four pig farms each with the capacity to produce approximately 2,000 tons of pork, should be constructed in different places. After careful calculation, you must build several pig farms in places from where it is convenient to transport the manure to the orchards. It seems a good idea to locate all pig farms in this manner in South Hamgyong Province.

At present, there are approximately 30,000 hectares of orchards in all in South Hamgyong Province. If you build pig farms and manure fruit trees liberally, you will be able to produce 20 tons of fruit per-hectare; that is, 600,000 tons annually throughout the province. This is a tremendous amount. If 100,000 tons out of this total is supplied to the provincial people at a high estimate, and the remaining 500,000 tons is exported, we shall be able to import one million tons of wheat. Then, we shall be able to supply rice and wheat to the people and use all our maize production as animal feed. Increasing fruit production, therefore, is also a good way of building up reserves for the solution of the food problem.

If we increase fruit production, we can also import a large amount of sugar. One ton of apples is said to be exchanged for 1.5 tons of sugar. So if we sell some 100,000 tons of apples, we shall be able to buy enough sugar for our people.

The demand for our apples is very high on world markets. Therefore, if we increase fruit production, we shall not only be able to
eat different kinds of delicious fruits at all times, but also earn a large sum of foreign currency for the importation of all the goods which we need.

In the future, we must construct many pig farms in fruit production areas and take all other positive steps to increase fruit production.

Another important task in developing fruit culture is to carry on the technical revolution strenuously.

If we are to spray chemicals over as many as 200,000 hectares of orchards and fertilize them seasonably and tend fruit trees well, we must mechanize fruit growing, introduce chemical means widely in this work, and modernize it as is the case with other sectors. If, instead, we depend only on manual labour or on our backs in hauling loads, it will be impossible to cultivate so many sloping orchards properly or increase fruit production. In accordance with the policy on the technical revolution which was put forward by the Fifth Party Congress, we must give a strong impetus to the technical revolution in fruit culture as well.

If you are to mechanize fruit farming to the fullest extent, you must first lay out your orchards properly and build roads well, so that tractors and various other modern farm machines can have easy access to any of the orchards and work there freely.

If tractors can enter orchards, the work of spraying chemicals will pose no problem. A tractor equipped with a moderately-high-pressure sprayer can move through the orchard, spraying chemicals easily and increasing the work efficiency several times over.

In order to mechanize fruit farming with success, it is also necessary to produce and supply a large number of tractors.

Senior officials of Pukchong County say that two tractors are required for every 40 hectares, but these are not enough. At least three tractors should be supplied for every 40 hectares. As I said at a plenary meeting of the South Hwanghae Provincial Party Committee last year, we are going to supply at least six to seven tractors per 100 hectares of cultivated land in the future for the purpose of modernizing agriculture in our country. Judging by this standard, two
tractors for every 40 hectares of orchards are too few.

On my visit to the Songhwa Fruit Farm in the past when only a few tractors were available in our country, I had, of course, to instruct that one tractor should be supplied to the farm per 40 hectares of orchards. But this norm has now become outdated. We must adopt a new norm. Even three tractors per 40 hectares may not be enough to mechanize all fruit farming operations. So the number will have to be increased in the future.

By the way, there are not sufficient tractors in South Hamgyong Province as a whole at present. On my way to North Hamgyong Province last year to direct work there, I surveyed the fields in South Hamgyong Province and found that not many tractors were working there. So I instructed that more tractors should be supplied to this province, but it seems that not many have been provided since then. On my tour of direction for the Hamhung district recently, I made an inspection of the Hamju Plain. This time, too, I could see only a small number of tractors working in the wide plain. So small a number of tractors is available to the rural communities that the rural technical revolution is not going smoothly, and people in places like this district cannot yet even speak of the system of ploughing fields three times.

The fact that South Hamgyong Province has so few tractors at a time when thousands of tractors are produced each year in our country, is explained by the attitude of the senior officials of the Agricultural Commission and other institutions in the agricultural sector who allocate a small number of tractors to this province because the province is not capable of producing a large amount of grain. In the supply of farm machines, senior officials in the agricultural sector give priority to South Phyongan and South Hwanghae Provinces which produce large amounts of cereals, and then allocate some of them to other provinces only when there is a surplus. So it is only natural that provinces like South Hamgyong Province, where the production of cereals is low, receive a small share of tractor supplies.

We cannot, of course, criticize the fact that tractors are supplied to the lowland districts with high grain production capacity on a
preferential basis. In South Phyongan or South Hwanghae Province even a single cooperative farm produces as many as 10,000 tons of grain a year, and double cropping is undertaken. For this reason, they need more farm machines than other provinces do. It is also a fact that South Hwanghae and South Phyongan Provinces have received more tractors because we have inspected them frequently and helped them to solve their problems promptly.

But large numbers of tractors are needed not only by such lowland provinces but also by other provinces. South Hamgyong Province has as many as 30,000 hectares of orchards, and if the province is to mechanize operations properly on these orchards alone, it will have to have a great many more tractors.

How, then, can we solve this problem?

In view of the small number of tractors in relation to the existing large area of orchards in South Hamgyong Province, it seems a good idea for this province to have a new tractor assembly plant so as to produce tractors for its own use. This will enable this province to use a fairly large number of tractors and catch up with other provinces in mechanization. If it should, instead, go on simply depending on another province for tractors as it does at present, it will not only be unable to mechanize fruit culture successfully, but may fall behind in mechanizing agriculture as a whole.

I have already instructed that the construction of a tractor assembly plant in South Hamgyong Province should be included in the plan. This province must build it in Hamhung soon. A preliminary estimate shows that a building with a floor space of approximately 5,000 square metres equipped with some 150 machines will probably meet the purpose. The state must supply the machines for the plant, and the province must build the factory through its own efforts.

The plant to be built in the province should receive engines from the tractor factory and manufacture the other parts by itself and assemble them. It will be a good idea to assemble approximately 500 Jonjin tractors at first. Since it has a wide area of orchards, South Hamgyong Province needs to produce a large number of Jonjin tractors in
particular. These small tractors are useful for orchards. After starting production in this way, the plant must develop production gradually to the point where it can assemble 2,000 to 3,000 tractors annually. Since there are many large factories in South Hamgyong Province, I think you can perform this task without difficulty by getting assistance from them and by organizing work efficiently.

In five to six years or in ten years, the assembly plant will reach a high level of mechanization, and then, it may be able to manufacture complete tractors. When this happens, our country will have another tractor factory.

A tractor assembly plant alone will not be able to deal with the task of the complete mechanization of fruit culture for a province like South Hamgyong Province which has so many orchards. If it is to tend all the 30,000 hectares of orchards properly, South Hamgyong Province needs at least two to three factories capable of mass-producing farm machines.

The province must, therefore, produce a large number of tractors by building a new assembly plant and, at the same time, add to the equipment of the fruit farming machine factory in Pukchong by supplying it with more machines so as to mass-produce various kinds of farm machines for fruit culture. In this way, the orchards to which tractors can have no access will be supplied with small manually-operated machines capable of spraying and doing various other kinds of work. Here I have already seen you comrades working with such machines which you have made. This is very gratifying.

If we make painstaking efforts in this manner for the mechanization of fruit farming and manufacture different kinds of machines, we shall be able to transport manure to the orchards, spray chemicals, weed and do various other kinds of work, all with the help of machines.

We cannot yet pick fruit with machines, although we do other kinds of work by various mechanical means. Fruit harvesters will also have to be manufactured. There is no reason why we should not make them simply because other countries cannot do so. Officials must use their intelligence and study how to mechanize all fruit farming operations.
including reaping. The fruit farming sector should thus carry out an all-round technical revolution so as to increase fruit production and dispose of the harvested fruit promptly.

Next, fruit processing must be undertaken as a mass campaign.

If we are to prevent any waste of fruit when its production is quickly increasing, we have to improve its processing.

The first thing to do is to process fallen fruit well. If you gather and slice all the fallen fruit and dry it, it will make a good processed item. If you powder dried fruit and supply it to the children of nurseries and kindergartens by packing it into small plastic envelopes, it will be greatly liked. It will be good for both children and adults. The General Fruit Bureau must give a lecture on the method of drying fruit, so that at every orchard the fallen fruit can be dried carefully without spoiling its colour.

Bruised fruit must also be processed well. The fruit which is injured in picking and is likely to spoil quickly must be separated for bottling, tinning or processing into jam and various other items before it is too late. The fruit skin must also not be thrown away, but washed and processed at least into juice, so that all the fruit you produce can be supplied to the people without the slightest waste.

In order to process fruit well, Pukchong and every other county with orchards must have fruit processing facilities. In addition, state-run fruit farms and cooperative farms will have to install simple processing facilities so that they can dry fruit or make jam from it by themselves.

Today I have inspected the food factory here and saw different kinds of processed food items. But their quality is still low. In future, you must pay more attention to improving their quality.

If we process fruit widely in a campaign which involves all the people, we shall be able to prevent the waste of the fruit we produce, improve the people’s standard of living, and the fruit farms will increase their profit. We can also earn a large sum of foreign currency by selling well-processed fruit to foreign countries.

We must develop fruit storage as well as processing, in step with
the increase in production. At present, we are not efficient in storing fruit; so we have to export it only in autumn and supply it to our people mostly in autumn. That is why, in spite of the large scale of our fruit production, we are unable to supply fresh fruit to the people in all seasons, and the size of our fruit exports is small. We must radically improve fruit storing so that we can even supply it to the people and export it the following spring.

We shall have to build a great many fruit stores. Some of them should be built underground and some of them on the surface. It is desirable that Pukchong County should first construct them well so as to set an example.

We must also build a good fruit-packing-material production centre.

Without packing materials, fruit processing facilities and fruit stores will not prove effective, no matter how good they are. Corrugated board factories and glass bottle factories must be built in many parts of the country, and their products should be supplied to farms in sufficient quantities.

Every county must establish poplar plantations and produce the timber needed for the manufacture of fruit boxes to meet its own needs. Fast-growing Pyongyang poplars should be planted by the riversides and between pine trees in the mountains. Because there are few broad-leaved trees in pine groves at present, the soil has become acidified and pine trees do not grow well. If poplars are planted in pine groves, their decaying fallen leaves will prevent soil acidification and help the pine trees to thrive.

Fruit-packing-material production centres must be built soundly in different places in order to ensure that all the farms can process and dispose of the fruit they produce.

Furthermore, we must plant more fruit trees of different kinds. We must continue to increase the area of orchards as well as taking good care of the existing ones.

We must plant apple trees in the main to increase the area of orchards, but we must also plant a good deal of cherries and apricots.
and other fruit trees which grow quickly and require little labour and few chemicals for their cultivation. We must thus plant a variety of fruit trees so that fruits are available in all seasons. It will be a good idea to plant fruit trees like cherries and apricots along the roadsides, at the foot of mountains and around schools and other public buildings. These fruit trees planted along roadsides will not only give us a large amount of fruit, but also add to the beauty of the landscape of the streets and villages with their seasonal blooms and ripe fruits. We must produce a great number of these fruit saplings and plant them in all places where they can be planted, through a widespread mass campaign.

If we conserve and manage the existing orchards well in this way so as to increase their productivity to the maximum and work hard to increase the area of orchards by every possible means, fruit culture in our country will be more promising, and our people’s standard of living will rise a great deal.

I firmly believe that you comrades will make strenuous efforts to effect a great change in our people’s standard of living in the next few years by continuing to implement the decision of the Pukchong Enlarged Meeting of the Presidium of the Party Central Committee.
1. ON DEVELOPING FRUIT CULTURE

As was pointed out in the report and speeches, a powerful mass campaign has been developed to create orchards since the Pukchong Enlarged Meeting of the Presidium of the Party Central Committee. As a result, the area of orchards in our country has increased to nearly 200,000 hectares, or 300,000 hectares if chestnut groves are included.

It is a great success that we have created 200,000 hectares of orchards. This success has been achieved because our Party’s policy was correct and because all our Party members and other working people have supported this policy ardently and have worked devotedly to implement it.

At this plenary meeting, we have discussed, as an important question, how to consolidate the success in fruit culture and develop it further in the period ahead.

To this end, we must, first of all, manage the existing orchards well.

As I said at the recent meeting held in South Hamgyong Province to mark the tenth anniversary of the Pukchong Meeting, most of the orchards we have reclaimed are on steep hillsides. This is the case with
most of the orchards in North and South Hamgyong Provinces and also with quite a number of those which have been reclaimed in North and South Phyongan Provinces. The step taken to develop orchards on steep hillsides was absolutely correct in view of the fact that there is only a small area of cultivated land in our country. An important task before us today is to manage these orchards well.

We must ensure that no landslides occur in the sloping orchards. The steeply sloping ones must be terraced and reinforced with stone walling and grass belts, so as to prevent landslides and wash-aways.

An important task in orchard management is to use organic manure liberally.

This is the way to prevent plant diseases and increase the yield of fruit. At present, fruit workteams raise several pigs each to obtain organic manure to be used in their orchards. This is, of course, a good thing. But this alone is not enough to produce an adequate amount of organic manure for the orchards.

If they are to use organic manure liberally, fruit farms must also undertake livestock farming at the same time. To this end, they will have to construct pig farms and solve the problem of feed. It is not very difficult to construct pig farms. The problem is how to obtain an adequate amount of feed for them. Unless this problem is solved, pig farms will be useless, no matter how many are built. They must, therefore, take measures to obtain feed while they are constructing the pig farms.

In order to solve the pig feed problem, we must increase grain production. The reserve for increased grain production lies in the cultivation of maize. The present per-hectare yield of maize is low. So we must increase it by using a large amount of fertilizer. Since there is a large area of maize fields on the Hwangju high ground, the Hwangju Fruit Farm should build a large pig farm and use the manure from it for both the orchards and the maize fields.

We can also obtain pig feed by exporting fruit in exchange for wheat.

One ton of apples is worth two tons of wheat at the present foreign
market price. So, if we sell 100,000 tons of apples, we can buy 200,000 tons of wheat. Supply that amount of wheat to the people and use as many tons of maize for pig feed instead, then you will be able to run a large number of pig farms. The Kwail County Combined Fruit Farm, for instance, will be able to run a 10,000-ton capacity pig farm if it exports only 20,000 tons of apples.

If we are to do this, the Ministry of Foreign Trade must make arrangements to export a large amount of fruit. Fruit should be exported to capitalist countries as well as socialist countries. It must be processed well and packed well so that it can compete successfully on the capitalist market.

It is important to make effective use of the existing sources of manure in addition to increasing the production of manure by developing livestock farming.

The Pyongyang Fruit Farm, for instance, does not make good use of the many sources of manure which exist in Pyongyang because it does not transport manure promptly. The fruit growing sector must not only produce a large amount of manure but also organize work well so as to use the existing sources of manure to the maximum.

If it is to consolidate the success which has already been achieved, the fruit growing sector must undertake the technical revolution.

The rural technical revolution consists of irrigation, mechanization, electrification and a widespread use of chemical means in agriculture. These four tasks defined by the *Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country* apply fully to the fruit growing sector.

The technical revolution in this sector is the way to increase fruit production from the 200,000 hectares of orchards which have been reclaimed. Without carrying out the technical revolution, the existing orchards will not prove their worth, nor will it be possible to improve the people’s standard of living.

It is not an easy matter to take good care of the 200,000 hectares of orchards. Of these orchards, only a few dozens of thousands of hectares possess gentle slopes. Most of our orchards, except those in Ryongyon, Kwail, Jangyon and Sukchon Counties and some other
districts, are located on steep hillsides. If we are to manage them properly, we must, therefore, carry out the technical revolution.

We must not think that we can now eat fruit without further effort because we have reclaimed a large number of orchards. We still have a great deal of work to do. We shall have to supply the fruit growing sector with a greater number of tractors, and with water pumps, electric motors, cement, pipes, electric wire and other items necessary for the construction of pumping facilities.

For the technical revolution in fruit culture, this sector must first build roads well, the roads which will provide smooth access to orchards for tractors and other means of transport.

The facilities for the spraying of chemicals will also have to be constructed properly.

Orchards must be equipped with pumps and underground pipes so as to lift water the way we have done for the irrigation of non-paddy fields. Tanks will also have to be installed in which chemical solutions can be stored and sprayed down from terrace to terrace. If they do not build these facilities, they will have to carry water uphill by means of oxcarts, and this is very arduous work.

On my visit to the Chonggye Cooperative Farm, Pongsan County, North Hwanghae Province a few years ago, I saw the farmers spraying chemicals by carrying the water with oxcarts, and that was a piece of exhausting work. So I saw to it that the farm was supplied with pipes and water pumps for the introduction of an irrigation system into the orchards.

All the orchards must introduce an irrigation system. This is the way they can spray chemicals in season and protect fruit trees.

To proceed, we must take efficient measures for fruit storage and processing.

Efficient fruit storage and processing are very important in view of the expected rapid growth in fruit production during the Six-Year Plan. This plenary meeting envisages an annual production of 800,000 to 1,000,000 tons of fruit during the Six-Year Plan, and this is a conservative estimate. If the fruit growing sector consolidates its
success by introducing mechanization and irrigation, it will be able to produce 1.5 million tons, instead of one million tons. Even if we estimate the fruit output at one million tons, we shall have to take effective measures for storing and processing it if we are to dispose of it before it is too late.

At present, there are many instances of fruit rotting because of the shortage of storage and processing facilities. As far as apricots, plums, peaches and similar fruits are concerned, we do not even really know how much of them are rotting. A large amount of fruit is spoiled because it is loaded into motor vehicles without being packed in boxes and is then carelessly unloaded after transportation. It seems to me that the amount of fruit which is actually eaten is scarcely 50 per cent of the total output at present.

If we do not take revolutionary measures to ensure the storage, processing and transportation of fruit, we may lose the valuable wealth which has cost us a tremendous amount of labour. From now onwards, we must undertake large-scale construction of the facilities needed to store and process fruit in keeping with the increased production.

We must construct a large number of fruit stores. We must build some of them underground and some of them on the surface.

We must also construct fruit processing factories. There is a great deal of fruit which has to be processed. The fruit which has fallen in the wind, been injured by insects or bruised can be eaten if it is processed. This fruit can be sliced and dried, processed into juice, preserved in sugar, bottled or tinned.

It will be very good if dried fruit is powdered and packed in plastic envelopes for supply to the children at nurseries and kindergartens. Powdered fruit is not even bad for grownups, to say nothing of children.

If we are to build a large number of fruit processing factories, we must manufacture fruit processing equipment in our country. For some reason, our officials consider it something beyond their capability to make it, but there is nothing special in the processing machines of foreign make. Certainly, foreign ones may be a little better than those
of our own manufacture. But we must not consider importing them, but make them by our own efforts without any hesitation.

At present, fruit processing equipment is being manufactured in Hwangju and Pukchong, and the machines made in our country are not bad. It may be somewhat difficult to make them ourselves, but doing this is better than importing them.

We can make dryers, apple peeling machines and slicers, bottle cappers, and fruit steamers. I do not think that there is any fruit processing facility which we cannot make. There is nothing difficult about making this equipment.

In the future, we are going to import three fruit processing plants of 50,000-ton capacity, 20,000-ton capacity and 2,000-ton capacity as samples, but there will be nothing out of the ordinary about them.

We must launch a mass campaign to manufacture fruit processing facilities. The chief secretaries of provincial Party committees, the chairmen of provincial people’s committees, and the chief secretaries of county Party committees must ensure domestic production of these facilities by mobilizing technicians and giving full scope to their talents through efficient organizational and political work.

Cooperative farms should be provided with dryers, for instance, for the drying of sliced fallen fruit, as well as with power presses for the production of fruit juice. Fruit should thus be processed by both the state-run fruit farms and cooperative farms.

If we are to construct fruit storage and processing facilities on a large scale, the state will have to make investments in this project in a planned manner. The state must supply timber and cement and provide the means of transport needed for the planned construction of these facilities. Big buildings are not required for fruit processing. For a cooperative farm, a building the size of a modern rural dwelling, located near the fruit store, will meet the purpose. Since electric power is available in all parts of our country, a fruit processing plant can be built anywhere.

Provinces will each have to be provided with one machine factory or two, capable of making fruit processing equipment and machines
needed for the mechanization and irrigation of orchards. Even if we are to supply 50 to 60 machine tools to each province, all that is needed for those under the jurisdiction of the General Fruit Bureau will not exceed 500 to 600.

Recently, we paid a visit to the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory and saw that it was working hard to increase the production of machine tools. If this factory and the Kusong Machine-Tool Factory produce 10,000 machine tools each by April 15 next year, and if the Mangyongdae and Chongjin Machine-Tool Factories and others produce a few thousands each by that time, so as to make up a total of 30,000, we shall be able to equip one to two machine factories for each province.

South Phyongan Province will have to construct one of these factories in its northern sector and another in its western sector, North Hwanghae Province one in Sariwon, and South Hwanghae Province one in Haeju and another in the Sinchon district. In this way, provinces will have to construct the factories which will manufacture machines and equipment needed for fruit processing and for the technical revolution in the fruit growing sector.

The General Fruit Bureau must ensure that the production of these machines and equipment is specialized by each factory. If the bureau finds it difficult to do so, then it will not be a bad idea to specialize production by each province, that is, by specifying the kinds of machines to be manufactured by South Phyongan Province, North Phyongan Province, South Hwanghae Province, and so on. It is desirable that this matter should be discussed by the Cabinet and by the provinces.

We must develop fruit-packing-material production centres.

Fruit boxes are needed so that fruit can be transported and stored. Fruit packed in boxes is easy to transport and does not rot too quickly while in storage.

In order to produce boxes, cooperative farms must plant trees over a wide area. Poplars, plane trees, dawn redwoods and other trees which grow rapidly should be planted on a large scale. Dawn redwood is
suitable for cultivation in places like South Hwanghae Province.

You need not be particular about the land for planting trees. You can plant poplars, plane trees, dawn redwoods and the like on the available low pine hills. Broad-leaved trees thrive even if they are planted in pine groves, without removing the pines. If they are mixed with pines, their fallen leaves turn into compost and prevent the soil from becoming acidic. This is a good thing. A campaign to plant quick-growing trees should be developed widely in all parts of the country.

We must build corrugated board factories.

Corrugated board boxes are light and good for carrying and storing fruit and its products, and their rate of utilization is also high. You must not consider it something complicated to build corrugated board factories. If the chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees are enthusiastic, they can all construct them in their provinces. It is advisable for South Phyongan Province to construct one in Onchon or Jungsan and another in Sukchon. In these places, a large amount of rice straw is available as a raw material for the mass-production of corrugated cardboard.

We must also produce a large number of glass bottles which are needed for packing processed fruit. The processing of seafood and vegetables also requires these bottles. We catch hundreds of thousands of tons of pollack a month in their season, but they are all consumed at once because they are supplied raw. To solve this problem, therefore, the previous meeting of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee resolved to build fish storage facilities. But the construction of these facilities does not mean that this problem is completely solved. We shall have to process fish if we are to store them for a long time before distributing them.

If we process vegetables, people can eat different kinds even during winter. When there is a surplus of cucumbers in the summer season, you can process them and then supply them during winter, which people will like. Since vegetable production is seasonal, they are not always available.

Vegetables, fruit and seafood are the major items capable of
processing by our food industry. If we process these three items, we shall be able to raise the people’s standard of living much higher than it is now. The processing of these items requires a large number of bottles. If we are to solve this problem, we must construct glass bottle factories.

Provinces have now started building these factories; and, when finished, they will need sodium carbonate. The provinces must not only depend on the Pongung Chemical Factory for sodium carbonate; each of them must construct a factory with an annual capacity to produce 5,000 tons from ammonium carbonate which is produced at the Aoji Chemical Factory.

Each province must produce 100 million glass bottles every year. When I was directing the executive committee meeting of the South Hamgyong Provincial Party Committee recently, I gave the province the task of building a factory capable of producing at least 100 million bottles a year.

Since this task cannot be performed in a day or two, the preparations for building them must be made this year and the project should be finished by 1973. It is better to build small factories at first and then extend them gradually, than to construct large ones from the outset.

It is also desirable to build sheet glass factories. When we were building the Nampho Glass Factory, the anti-Party, counter-revolutionary factionalists opposed the idea, demanding to know what use such a large glass factory would be. So I criticized them, telling them that, if they knew nothing, they should be quiet.

Glass is now being produced continuously by the Nampho Glass Factory which these factionalists said was too large, but it is not meeting the demand satisfactorily. Provinces must, therefore, construct sheet glass factories, if they can, in addition to glass bottle factories.

At present, paper mills are not supplied with an adequate amount of caustic soda, so we shall have to construct caustic soda factories, too. There is a shortage of packing paper, and this problem will have to be solved by producing plastic sacks at enterprises under the Ministry of Chemical Industry in the future.
If we solve these problems, we shall be able to organize fruit processing on a wide scale and develop our fruit processing industry onto a higher level.

Furthermore, we must continue to increase the area of orchards. We shall have to proceed towards reclaiming orchards by planting fruit trees which do not require a great use of chemicals. The existing 200,000 hectares are mostly apple orchards, the cultivation of which requires large amounts of chemicals. Copper sulphate, for instance, which is used as an agricultural chemical is expensive. So we shall have to plant fruit trees which need a minimum of chemicals.

The best thing to do is to plant persimmons and walnuts widely in the southern region, and Hoeryong white apricots and Pyongyang apricots in the northern region. If you plant apricots widely, you can see their beautiful flowers and eat the delicious fruit by processing it. Apricots are good to eat when dried and when tinned. Their kernels are rich in oil. A few years ago, I read a foreign newspaper which said that in a region of that country the problem of oil was being solved by establishing apricot plantations for the purpose of oil production. If we plant apricots, we shall even be able to export their kernels.

We must also plant jujube trees in large numbers. Jujubes are good whether they are eaten with rice or used as an ingredient in cakes.

In future, the fruit growing sector must plant different kinds of fruit trees in reasonable proportions, trees which require few chemicals.

There must be no deforestation of mountains simply because we have to increase the area of orchards. Comrades from South Phyongan Province are suggesting that they will reclaim more orchards, but they must not denude the mountains. If they do this any more the landscape of their province will be damaged.

No damage has been done to the hills on the outskirts of Pyongyang because they are under my constant control, but many of the mountains outside Pyongyang have become bare of trees. South Phyongan Province surrounds Pyongyang, so orchards should be reclaimed only from low hills and stony land, but not from mountains which are wooded with pine trees. South Hwanghae Province still has a wide area
suitable for orchards, so they should reclaim them from gently sloping hillsides.

In future, we must not destroy forests for the purpose of reclaiming orchards; it is preferable to plant fruit trees on unused land—by the roadside, and around schools and farm villages.

On my visit to a socialist country many years ago, I saw many cherry trees planted on both sides of the roads. I was told that the fruit harvested from these trees was sold to pay the cost of road maintenance and the wages of the people who took care of the roads.

If you plant fruit trees beside the roads, around villages and at the edges of crop fields, they will add to the beauty of the landscape, give you fruit and benefit you in many other ways. Steep hillsides should not be turned into orchards as far as possible.

Chestnut trees must be well looked after.

At present, we have as many as 100,000 hectares of chestnut groves. The work of looking after them will be as rewarding as using the same amount of labour on producing cereals. Twenty thousand tons of chestnuts can be produced from the 100,000 hectares, even at an estimate of 200 kilogrammes per hectare. But the present production of chestnuts is not high because the chestnut groves are not well managed.

In order to tend chestnut trees well, it is necessary for the chief secretaries of provincial Party committees to organize work in detail to suit the particular conditions. It is reported that in South Phyongan Province infirm people were given lectures on how to tend chestnut trees, but this work has not improved since then. Our officials have now got into the bad habit of giving up any project halfway, instead of trying hard to finish it.

Provincial Party committees and cooperative farms must adopt measures to take good care of chestnut trees. If they are short of hands in the chestnut harvest season, cooperative farms will have to be given some labour support.

Research on the management of orchards must be improved.

Research on this subject is not proceeding properly. Research on the
mechanization of fruit culture, on the extensive use of chemicals in this work, and on efficient fruit storage must be improved. For the present, the Universities of Agriculture and Light Industry must train large numbers of horticultural specialists and fruit processing engineers.

The Cabinet, provincial people’s committees and ministries must also work hard to develop fruit growing. The Ministries of Chemical Industry and Machine Industry, in particular, must plan the mass-production of agricultural chemicals and machines needed for fruit culture and must implement the plan to the letter.

2. ON DEVELOPING FOREIGN TRADE

Comrades,

We have seriously discussed how to develop foreign trade, even holding sectional meetings, for the last few days. In the process we have explored many reserves and decided on almost doubling the amount of exports which had been estimated for the final year of the Six-Year Plan. To attain this level will be a great venture. It is true that, statistically, many countries export more than we do, in terms of monetary value. But the value of our exports differs from that of other countries. Since our country, unlike other countries, is developing industry by depending on our own raw materials, the value of our exports is many times as great as that of other countries. If we reach the new level of export value which we have re-estimated for the final year of the Six-Year Plan on this occasion, our country will become more prosperous, and our people’s standard of living will rise much higher.

The point is how we can make the best use of the reserves which we have tapped at the sectional meetings and at today’s meeting. If we fail to reach the numerical level we have resolved to attain, it will be utterly meaningless.
According to what we have said on this occasion, we have a great deal of reserves for increasing the amount of exports, for making our country wealthier and stronger, and for providing our people with a better life. These reserves exist not only in the Ministry of Mining Industry and the Ministry of Local Industry but also in those of the textile industry, the electricity and coal industries, the chemical industry and all other ministries.

If the Ministry of Mining Industry puts revolving furnaces into operation, it can increase the production of zinc by collecting all the metal from the dross, and this will be more lucrative than developing a new mine. If central heating is introduced by using heat from the Pyongyang Thermal Power Plant, approximately 300,000 tons of coal can be saved; and if we collect and reuse the coal which is not burnt fully, we shall be able to save some 200,000 tons. This means saving 500,000 tons of coal in all. At an estimate of four pounds per ton of coal, we shall earn approximately two million pounds.

We can also obtain large amounts of by-products from coking coal. At present, a foreign country extracts a hundred items of by-products from this source, but we are obtaining only a dozen items of by-products from the millions of tons which we burn every year.

Since we are a small country, we have to manage our economic life more tightly and assiduously, saving more and tapping more reserves than other countries. Because of waste, however, we are no better off, although we could be.

The amount of exports we have considered at this meeting is well within our capability to attain. It all depends on how we organize work and how we put our decision into practice.

What, then, is to be done to reach the amount of exports estimated for the Six-Year Plan?

First of all, we must concentrate our efforts on the machine industry, and on the production of machine tools, motor vehicles and tractors in particular.

If the problems of machine tools, motor vehicles and tractors are solved, production can be increased in the metallurgical, coal-mining,
light and chemical industries, and in the agricultural, fishing and all other sectors of the national economy.

When I was inspecting Sinpho some time ago, I was told that, if it is supplied with more fishing boats and fish processing equipment, the fishing industry will be able to increase its catch. The building of fishing boats and the manufacture of fish processing equipment require a large number of machine tools. It is reported that the Sinpho Shipyard has enough production space and has many skilled workers whose technical and skill levels are high. They said that, if they were supplied with some more machine tools, they would be able to repair ships rapidly and also build ten more 450 and 470-ton trawlers.

The June 24 Shipyard, too, said that, given more machine tools and work hands, it would build at least ten more 600 and 1,000-ton boats capable of fishing on the high seas. Therefore, if we supply more machine tools to the shipyards, they will build more fishing boats which can fish on the high seas to increase the catch.

Local industry factories and other mills and enterprises must also be provided with machine tools so that they can manufacture the spare parts and other facilities which they need. If all these factories and enterprises only depend on the Ministry of Machine Industry No. 1 for spare parts and other facilities, they will not be able to produce on a steady basis nor will they be able to press their work ahead vigorously.

On receiving machine tools, the factories and other enterprises must use them to make more machine tools and produce the spare parts and other equipment they need. In addition, the ministries and provinces must build up centres for the production of these items by making capital of the existing machine factories and single-purpose machine plants.

If we are to supply machine tools to factories and other enterprises, we must increase their production.

We must ensure that the Huichon and Kusong Machine-Tool Factories produce 10,000 machine tools each and that the other machine-tool factories produce 10,000 in all a total of 30,000—by April 15 next year. This is the most important link. Of the 30,000 machine tools...
tools to be produced, 5,000 will be exported, and the rest can be used to equip our machine factories properly.

The production of motor vehicles and tractors is no less important than that of machine tools. No matter how much goods we may produce, they will not fulfil their purpose unless they can be transported when needed. Also, a great many tractors are required by the rural communities to ease their acute manpower situation and increase grain production. At present, there is a serious shortage of rural manpower. Recently, a great number of discharged soldiers have been assigned to the industrial sector, and this is tantamount to having recruited industrial labour from the rural communities through the army. Yesterday, I examined the cases of two cooperative farms and found that scores of men have gone to the army from each of these cooperative farms, but only a few have returned home.

The Party Central Committee departments in charge of economic affairs, the Cabinet, and the provincial Party committees must see that materials are supplied to several major factories such as the Huichon and Kusong Machine-Tool Factories, the motor works and the tractor factory on a preferential basis so as to increase the production of machine tools, motor vehicles and tractors. By organizing work in detail in this manner, we shall be able to ensure that the export plan is implemented instead of our just paying lip service to it.

Next, we must strengthen the sources of raw materials for the industrial sector.

If we are to carry out the projects under the Six-Year Plan to our satisfaction, we shall have to take the plunge and expand the centres for the production of raw materials. If we build up these centres, we shall be able to produce greater amounts of goods. As we overlooked the need to strengthen raw material production centres in the past, even the supply of limestone which abounds in our country, fell short of the demand. This hampered production for a time in the factories and enterprises under both the Ministry of Building-Materials Industry and the Ministry of Metal Industry.

The Ministry of Metal Industry must equip adequately the Musan,
Tokhyon, Jaeryong, Unryul, Hasong and other iron-ore mines so as to increase their production.

In order to increase the production of magnesia clinker, it is necessary to develop the Ryongyang Mine and even make use of ore dust.

The Ministry of Building-Materials Industry will also have to develop its raw material production centres properly. Because of the shortage of Jaju lorries and excavators this ministry is unable to increase the production of cement as much as it could otherwise do. Now that the problems of coal and electric power have been solved, the production of limestone can be increased, if machines are available, so as to boost cement production to the extent we require. It is very important, therefore, to produce the Jaju lorries and excavators, as planned, for the development of raw material production centres. The manufacture of these machines is not going properly because of a difficulty in the production of their engines. We have to tackle the problem of engine production.

It is particularly important to strengthen the sources of raw materials for local industry. The local industrial sector will have to take measures to produce caustic soda and sodium carbonate by its own efforts. This is necessary for the mass-production of paper, glass bottles and similar items.

The production of sodium carbonate is well within the capabilities of local industry factories. The point is that they must study how to do it, with firm confidence in their capabilities. Then, they will find the ways and means. Each of the provinces must construct a factory with an annual production capacity of 5,000 or 20,000 tons of sodium carbonate.

If the chemical industry is to produce 50,000 tons of vinalon and as much vinyl chloride, it needs carbide, and the production of carbide in turn requires limestone and anthracite. Many industrial sectors are correlated in this manner. This year, all sectors of the national economy must concentrate on the development of raw material production centres.
To proceed, we must combat self-centredness which is manifest amongst institutions, parochialism, empiricism and subjectivism.

“One for all and all for one” is the communist slogan under which our Party advances. As matters stand now, however, there are instances of not living up to this slogan. Institutions are working in a self-centred manner, tying one another down and hindering production, causing no small loss to themselves.

According to the proceedings of the sectional meetings on this occasion, ironware works, for instance, are even unable to use scrap iron as they please. A scrap iron collection commission is said to have been organized and to have issued regulations which prohibit the scrap iron discarded by large factories from being used by other factories. So the ironware works cannot produce goods because the raw material is not available to them. The commission only thought of carrying out the plan of collecting scrap iron, but not of allowing the ironware works to select what they need from among the heaps of scrap iron before they are taken away.

There are now many instances of officials practising institutional self-centredness and issuing unnecessary regulations to subordinate units only to bind themselves hand and foot.

Self-centredness on the part of institutions also hampers the implementation of the Party’s policy on getting heavy industry to help light industry and the centrally-run industry to assist local industry.

The Ministry of Textile Industry used to supply sufficient amounts of yarn to the locally-run textile mills when they belonged to the ministry, but does not do so since they were turned over to the Ministry of Local Industry. This shows that the Ministry of Textile Industry is working contrary to the Party’s policy of getting the industries under central authorities to help local industries.

Our officials must judge everything by the standard of Party policy. If the Ministry of Textile Industry had judged the matter in accordance with the Party’s policy, it would not have monopolized yarn. The local industry factories, no matter where they belong, all serve our people and are a part of our socialist economic system. In everything they do,
our officials must start on the principle of the communist way of life, “One for all and all for one”.

We must combat empiricism and parochialism.

The empiricists persist in their own experience alone. With a view to solving the problem of vegetables for Pyongyang, we asked the farmers in Rihyon-ri and Sosamjong-ri whether vegetables would thrive on the high ground in these districts. They answered that radishes would grow fairly well, but not celery cabbages. I thought the matter over and over again, but it seemed to me that the only way to solve the problem of vegetables for Pyongyang was to cultivate them on that high ground. So I gave instructions that vegetables should be grown there on an experimental basis. Fertilizer was used liberally there and the experiment was successful. From the next year onwards, vegetables were grown on a large scale on the high ground.

When vegetables were planted on high ground in Rihyon-ri and Sosamjong-ri for the first time, the local farmers were reluctant to do so, saying that vegetables would not thrive in red clay. But we saw to it that sprinkler irrigation was introduced for the cultivation of vegetables on the high ground. In the rainy season, drainage was good, so that the vegetables did not rot; and in the dry season, the drought was overcome by pumping water from the Taedong River and irrigating the vegetable fields. As a result, they produced 150 tons of celery cabbages per hectare and 80 tons of radishes that year. The farmers were all delighted at the harvest of rich vegetable crops. We owe the success in the development of vegetable cultivation for Pyongyang to the ideological struggle. As I always say, both an ideological struggle and education by means of object lessons are needed to eradicate outdated empiricism from the minds of farmers.

At present, there are some officials who persist in relying on their own experience alone. A certain official of the Ministry of Metal Industry considers himself the best informed and most experienced man and neglects to study and adopt the latest achievements of science and technology.

Those who have outdated ideas stand in the way of our progress by
practising empiricism and conservatism. It is a law that obstacles appear and stand in the way of revolutionary advance. It would be impossible to advance the revolution without overcoming these obstacles.

Parochialism is still greatly in evidence in South Hamgyong Province. On my recent visit to Pukchong County, South Hamgyong Province, I found that 100 tons of aquatic leeks were being harvested per hectare, but Hamhung was not making use of this valuable experience because of its parochialist tendency.

We must eliminate subjectivism. Subjectivism hampers the correct implementation of Party policy and raises large obstacles in the way of production.

Let me take a few examples.

Young celery cabbages are thinned out considerably in August, but there are not many of them on sale in the shops. So I asked farmers why they did not thin them out for the market. They said that it was because young cabbages were too cheap. Who will want to thin them out to sell for two jon a kilogramme, a price which hardly covers the cost of labour?

Suppose full-grown cabbages are priced at 10 jon a kilogramme, then young ones should be 15 to 18 jon for the same amount. But they have been priced lower than full-grown ones out of the subjective view that the young ones should be cheaper because they are not as palatable as the full-grown ones. As far as the taste is concerned, young cabbages are, in fact, no less palatable. But young instructors who are fresh from school and know nothing, assess their prices at their desks, prompted by their subjective judgement, and then forward the price list to higher authorities. The chairman of the Price Assessment Commission signs it without even examining the paper, thinking that two jon for a kilogramme of young cabbages seems reasonable since the price of full-grown ones is ten jon a kilogramme. Price assessors do not calculate how much labour it costs to thin out young cabbages equal to the weight of full-grown ones. Because of this inefficiency in price assessment, vegetables are not available to the people, although they could be available.
Because of unreasonable prices, farmers are reluctant to make bush-clover baskets; they tend to make brooms with bush clover which do not cost them so much labour as basket making but bring them as high an income.

The prices of commodities must not be assessed carelessly at desks, but must be discussed among the farmers. The people know everything. Indeed they are an encyclopedia. No matter how many books you may read, you will be unable to find an article which says how a kilogramme of young cabbages should be priced or how the price of a bush-clover basket or a bush-clover broom should be assessed.

You will not be able to assess the prices of goods correctly by referring to books alone. Books can only give you general theories and principles. Once you have learned these, therefore, you must approach the people. In this way you can solve any problem in their interests. If you respect their interests, they will naturally produce large quantities of good-quality articles.

If we are to carry out the Six-Year Plan successfully and to earn more foreign currency, we must wage a powerful ideological struggle against institutional self-centredness, empiricism, parochialism, subjectivism and all other survivals of outdated ideas. Without ideological struggle, nothing will go successfully of its own accord.

You must not try to solve every problem by administrative methods. Of course, administrative measures and organizational steps are necessary, but these must be accompanied by an ideological struggle.

If the Minister of Textile Industry supplies yarn to the textile mills under his own control, and not to those of local industry, other people must oppose him. If the chief of a management bureau acts in a self-centred manner, the minister and the Party secretary must take action against him. Any acts which contradict Party policy must be discussed and corrected at Party meetings. At present, some officials do not oppose acts which are contrary to Party policy and the people’s interests even when they see them. This is not a good attitude.
Next, we must improve the quality of export goods.

As matters stand now, foreign trade is not going smoothly because of the low quality of our goods.

In order to improve the quality of commodities, we must acquire the habit of living tidily and assiduously and get rid of the ideological viewpoint of being content with the present living standards.

One summer day many years ago when I was inspecting Changsong, I visited the house of a worker who, he said, had once been a carpenter. His rooms were cleanly papered, and his yard was kept tidy and had even been planted with flowers.

On my way back from the visit, I called at the house of the chairman of a Party cell. The house looked awful. It was a good tiled house, but the man had neither papered the heating floor nor kept his kitchen in order. I chatted to him for a while, for I could not allow myself to rebuke him as soon as I entered the house. I asked him how he had fared in former days, and he answered that he had lived in hardship as a poor peasant.

I again asked him why his house was so unsightly. He replied: “This is good enough, Premier. What more can I wish?” So I persuaded him to keep his house neat before I left.

Our people who lived in poverty in the past are now a little better off. Being content with their present living conditions, they do not manage their lives diligently. Of course, I do not mean that we should live in luxury as the capitalists do, but why not live in clean and tidy houses when we can do so?

In the past O Ki Sop did not even keep his office in order. One day immediately after liberation, I happened to enter his room and found him unshaved and his desk covered with dust and littered with crumbs of the bread he had been eating. I asked him why he lived like that, and he answered that this was the proletarian way of life. I told him sharply that he ought not to be rash enough to disgrace the working class, the most advanced class in the world. Good suiting is produced by the working class, motor cars are manufactured by the working class, and houses are built by the working class. It is the most cultured class.
Some of our people are said to be finding fault with those who keep themselves neat. They tease people who go about in clean, well pressed clothes as dandies, but they do not criticize those who are slovenly in their appearance.

Of course, I do not think they tease people out of malice; they must be advising them to live frugally. A frugal life is good, but one must not speak ill of people who keep themselves clean. We must live frugally and in hygienic conditions.

Even in the difficult situation during the anti-Japanese armed struggle, we let the men shave regularly and build latrines and use them whenever we were camping.

Nowadays, however, not being in the habit of doing things neatly, some people lead a careless life. They do not take good care of factories, schools, or even the fine modern houses which have been built for them. Since their living conditions are unwholesome and their way of life is unsystematic, they cannot make things properly.

On my local tour of inspection, I paid a visit to a shop and saw knitted clothes hanging there, which were not of good quality. On my way back to Pyongyang, I called at the Kangso Knitwear Mill and enquired the reason for this. The mill ought to have pressed their products well and packed them in boxes before the goods were delivered. But the mill, because it lacks its finishing workshop, bound them with straw ropes and kept them in a storeroom, and then they were dispatched. That was why the knitted goods looked misshapen. So I told the manager of the mill to correct the situation.

Children’s clothes are not pretty, nor do they fit the wearers. This year, the schoolchildren in Pyongyang have been provided with overcoats. These were also not attractive because they were too large. So I criticized the head of the Second Industry Department of the Party Central Committee and the chief secretary of the Pyongyang City Party Committee and had the overcoats re-tailored to fit the wearers. At present, none of the clothes, shoes or underwear is made properly. We produce 400 million metres of fabrics annually. But they are neither good-looking nor durable because they are not woven well.
We have to improve the packing of goods. Good packing is a factor in raising the quality of goods.

Our export goods are not sold at the prices they deserve because their packing is not good. Honey, for instance, is exported in drums. I was told that foreigners who bought it re-pack it in good glass bottles with attractive labels and sell it again at a higher price.

Not only the packaging of export goods, but also that of goods for the home market is not good. Pollack and apples and similar items are loaded into goods wagons without being packed for transport, so that they are unattractive; and the shops, too, sell them without packing.

If we are to improve packaging, we shall have to build many mills to produce packing materials, so as to mass-produce kraft, corrugated cardboard, plastic sacks, boxes and other kinds of packing materials.

We must establish modern production practices and a cultured way of life.

If we are to improve the quality of products, we must keep factories in good order. It will be impossible to produce high-quality goods if we do not establish modern production practices. At present, however, when we visit machine factories we can see machines which are not repainted even though their original paint has worn thin. Radiators in buildings and water pumps, if painted, will be free from rust, durable and attractive, but they are not painted. All this is because our officials have not yet rid themselves of the bad habit of living irregularly and maintaining things carelessly.

Establishing modern production practices is also a part of the cultural revolution. We must initiate a sweeping campaign to establish modern production practices, so that factory buildings and their machines and other equipment are kept in good condition and that high-quality goods are manufactured.

We must also establish a cultured way of life. At present, Pyongyang people are not wearing clean clothes, and this practice must also be combatted.

We ought to fight uncompromisingly against the idea and practice of producing and living unsystematically. Without an ideological
struggle, it would be impossible to improve the quality of commodities and their packing, nor would it be possible to establish modern production practices and a cultured way of life.

We must maintain our credit in foreign trade.

The exchange of commodities between nations will continue until communism prevails throughout the world, and a good reputation is important in the exchange of commodities.

Only when we deserve credit shall we be able to export our products when we want to, and import goods when we need them. If we are to earn a good reputation, we shall have to improve the quality of the goods, pack them well and also implement the prescribed specifications of goods and observe delivery schedules.

Some of the goods which we now produce do not sell well on foreign markets, and this is because their quality is bad, their packing is bad, their specifications are not met, and the delivery time is not kept. It is important, therefore, to rectify these shortcomings so as not to lose our credit. Our export apples, if packed well, can remain a good seller.

All Party bodies and working people’s organizations must work hard to bring about a great change in the production of export goods and develop our foreign trade.

3. ON IMPROVING THE PUBLIC HEALTH SERVICE

This plenary meeting has considered the question of improving the public health service because this work is not satisfactory. It would be even better if we could discuss this matter seriously by holding a sectional meeting for two to three days, but we cannot do so because the transplanting season is near at hand and also because we cannot allow ourselves to keep the local cadres here in the capital too long. So we have only discussed the major problems. I consider it advisable to discuss the public health service again at some time in the future.
Health work in our country has made relatively large strides from what it was in the past.

In former days, many people suffered from malaria in summer. But not only are there no malaria cases now, but the disease itself has been wiped out in our country. The extermination of flies has also been a big success. These are the results of the powerful mass campaign for the cultural revolution, and the health workers have contributed their share to this effort.

In general, however, we cannot consider that the public health service is satisfactory.

This is mainly due to the fact that Party organizations and government bodies have not given efficient leadership to this work which is most important to human life. In short, the public health service has been outside Party leadership.

Our country was a colony of Japanese imperialism for a long time in the past, and, in consequence, it had no foundation for health work. It had neither pharmaceutical factories nor medical appliances plants, nor many doctors. Even though there were doctors, they were a very small number who ran private hospitals. Our public health work, as you can see, started from scratch.

Worse still, Party organizations and government bodies have not provided sufficient material facilities for the public health service sector nor have they given it efficient political leadership in recent years. This is why quite a few shortcomings can be found in this sector.

No effective ideological struggle is going on in this field, and so doctors still retain vestiges of various outdated ideas. Many of the health workers are affected with outdated ideas which are capitalistic and feudalistic.

The health service sector does not manage hospitals as it should. We have now evolved the industrial management regulations, and the sciences of industrial and agricultural administration, but none of hospital administration.

Doctors have not been taught properly how to manage hospitals, nor have they been provided with the basis on which to improve their
scientific and technological qualifications, when they are not undergoing an effective ideological struggle to eliminate outdated ideas from their minds. This is why the level of their qualifications is low. Worse still, the pharmaceutical and medical appliances industries are underdeveloped, and Party organizations and government bodies are not concerned about public health work. Therefore, work in this field is not done properly.

In the case of the Party Central Committee, for instance, its Science and Education Department is not directing public health work efficiently. Engrossed in practising bureaucratism and in abusing Party authority, the public health service section of the Science and Education Department does not even know what is happening in the public health service sector.

Instructors of provincial Party committees, who are in charge of public health work, are unable to submit convincing information of the problems arising amongst health workers. They simply carry about the personal files of these workers.

Although the public health section is in the Science and Education Department of the Party Central Committee, the staff members of this section are still inexperienced and not sufficiently prepared to speak authoritatively to the medical world. No staff member of the provincial Party committees and the Third Secretariat of the Cabinet is an authority in the field of health service.

The same situation obtains in the Ministry of Public Health.

Recently, undesirable elements have been ousted from this ministry and the ranks of its personnel have been reorganized. On the whole, however, effective ideological education and struggle have not been conducted for the health workers. The public health service sector still retains the old method of work and the old framework intact and has not yet established a system by which to improve its work.

To be frank, the health service sector is trailing behind other sectors, although it is the most important of all. It is true that some of the hospitals are doing many good things. But in some of them there were instances of carelessness which have resulted in the death of
patients who otherwise could have been saved.

We must work hard to correct the shortcomings in health work as soon as possible and develop this work.

The Party Central Committee, the Cabinet, all Party organizations and people’s committees, and all social organizations must, first of all, pay serious attention to public health work and improve their guidance of this work.

In order to improve this work and intensify its guidance, we have to build up the ranks of senior officials in this sector. Since cadres decide everything, we must strengthen their ranks with competent and sound people. This is the way to implement the Party’s policy correctly. Incompetent people, even if they are promoted to cadres, cannot have a voice and are apt to be fooled by other people. Therefore, hard-core elements who are capable of directing health work should be selected for assignment to Party and government bodies. The public health section of the Party Central Committee and the Third Secretariat of the Cabinet, in particular, must be staffed with medical authorities, and the Ministry of Public Health must also be strengthened with competent workers who will endeavour to implement the Party’s public health policy, after dismissing incompetent people who only pay lip service to this work. Merely adopting a decision at a Party meeting, without building up the ranks of cadres, will not be able to improve public health work, nor will it be able to ensure effective Party leadership to this work.

In addition, a correct system must be established to manage hospitals properly.

In the days immediately after liberation, officials did not know how to manage factories and other enterprises. So we set up an industrial cadres department in Kim Chaek University of Technology and made arrangements for industrial cadres to be trained for approximately two years there before they were assigned to the management of factories and enterprises. At present, a similar system exists in the Ministry of Public Health, but it is superficial. It is necessary, therefore, to take measures to correct this situation.

We must intensify the ideological struggle amongst doctors.
Doctors are affected with quite a lot of conservatism and bourgeois and feudal-Confucian ideas. They do not study and, more often than not, talk boastfully, adopting an air of having wide knowledge, when they are actually ignorant. Some of them make wrong diagnoses which result in the death of patients who can be saved. They do not even feel a pang of conscience for killing people.

Party organizations in the field of the public health service must increase their role and intensify the ideological struggle amongst doctors. On my visit to Hamhung, I gave instructions that the ideological struggle should be intensified amongst intellectuals. I learned that the Hospital of the Hamhung University of Medicine had done it well. In the course of the ideological struggle, I was told, a man confessed that he had been telling a lie about his family origin. His confession that he had deceived the Party organization is a very good thing in that he has removed the burden from his mind.

We must not be particular about the personal records of the people who approach the ideological struggle in good faith. Most of the old-line intellectuals are the sons and daughters of those who were prosperous in the past. In those days only the children of rich people had access to education, but poor people’s children were denied this opportunity. If old-line intellectuals are sincere with the ideological struggle and say that they will follow us as far as the communist society, we ought to take them along, welcome them and trust them.

Provincial, city and county Party committees must develop a powerful ideological struggle amongst doctors, educate them and revolutionize them well.

Furthermore, we have to raise the level of medical science and technology in our country quickly to world standards.

The major shortcoming of our medical sector is that it is backward in science and technology.

If we are to develop our medical science and technology rapidly, we must, first of all, strengthen the Academy of Medical Science, the Pyongyang University of Medicine and other centres of medical science.

At present, the Pyongyang University of Medicine is inferior to its
counterpart in Hamhung in terms of equipment and in every other respect. If our medical science and technology is to reach world levels, it requires that the Academy of Medical Science and the university of medicine in the capital should be developed to be large comprehensive and authoritative institutions of medical science equipped with the latest facilities.

I have been thinking of equipping the Pyongyang University of Medicine well during the past four or five years, but this idea has not been translated into practice until now. This year we must make good preparations and next year we shall get down to the project to establish an authoritative centre of medical science in Pyongyang. Without this centre it will be impossible to train competent doctors. Just as a good pedigree farm is the source of good strains, so a well-equipped medical centre is the source of well-trained doctors. If they do not know the world trend of medical science and have no opportunity to handle modern medical equipment, the students of medicine will not be able to become competent doctors.

An outdated way of doing things cannot develop medical science. The care of people’s health, the protection of human lives, is very important in increasing the people’s well-being. We must, therefore, see that the medical science centre is well equipped and that experienced, competent medical scientists in combination with promising young people are appointed to it for both research work and the training of students.

In addition to modernizing the medical science centre, we must import a large number of books on medical techniques to establish a large medical library. Foreign books on this subject must be translated by scientists and translators so that all the doctors can read them.

The Pyongyang University of Medicine which is to be built must have a well-equipped hospital of its own where the students can put their book learning into practice.

It is desirable that the Pyongyang City Party Committee should organize a construction enterprise which will undertake the project as soon as the designing is completed. The Academy of Medical Science,
the Pyongyang University of Medicine and its hospital, and a medical institute must all be built at the same time.

We ought to build powerful medical science centres and train doctors ourselves rather than think only of sending students abroad. Even if we send students abroad, we have to send them after they have learned all that they can in our country so that they can concentrate on the study of specific subjects. Otherwise, they will not be successful.

A university of medicine should be established in every province.

The people who have been educated in the Pyongyang University of Medicine are not willing to go to work in Ryanggang Province, Jagang Province or similar provinces. It is advisable for provinces to train their own doctors and nurses. If the provinces are to have their own medical universities to train doctors, they must develop their people’s hospitals. This is the correct way to provide the medical students with facilities for practice.

If medical students do not have practical training in their university days, they will be useless after graduation. Barbers, doctors, cooks and all other occupations which require skill must undergo a great deal of practical training. A cook who has learnt only theories without receiving practical training will be unable to prepare a delicious meal, no matter how many books he might have read. The same is true of doctors. A physician who lacks practical training cannot perform a surgical operation properly because his hand trembles, however many books he might have read, nor can he treat his patients, or take a pulse.

The chief secretaries of provincial Party committees and the chairmen of provincial people’s committees should earn foreign currency to import the latest instruments and other equipment to modernize the provincial people’s hospitals. Since there are hospitals which were built with foreign aid in Chongjin, Sariwon, and Sinuiju in the postwar years, North Hamgyong Province, North Hwanghae Province and North Phyongan Province should develop them into provincial people’s hospitals by obtaining instruments and facilities to make up for what they lack. South Hamgyong Province has already constructed the modern Hospital of the Hamhung University of
Medicine, so it has only to add to it a little.

As for Pyongyang, the state will have to import the latest equipment, without regard to expense, for the hospital to be constructed for both the Academy of Medical Science and the Pyongyang University of Medicine.

For the rapid development of medical science and technology in our country, doctors must improve technical qualifications.

For the purpose of helping doctors to raise their scientific and technical levels, the Ministry of Public Health and the Science and Education Department of the Party Central Committee must regularly organize seminars on medical science, for instance. At the moment, seminars on social science are held frequently, but few are organized on medical science. That is why doctors’ technical and professional qualifications do not improve. In future medical seminars, doctors’ consultative meetings, and collective diagnoses should be widely organized. This will not only facilitate the improvement of their qualifications but prevent arbitrary judgement by individual doctors.

A correct implementation of the system of academic degrees and titles is necessary for raising the scientific and technical levels of doctors. There are still social classes in our society. So we cannot ignore the relations of people’s ranks. If their level of awareness is high, the system of academic degrees and titles will be unnecessary. But their level is still low. That is why the system should be allowed to operate and stimulate them to greater enthusiasm for study.

If the system of academic degrees and titles is abolished, scientists may not study. So it is necessary to keep it and award them the degrees of master of science and doctor and the titles of assistant professor, professor and so on. This system will not interfere with the building of communism. Of course, on the one hand it rather encourages people to selfishness, but on the other it has a positive effect on increasing the scientists’ enthusiasm and on developing science and technology. In addition, it would also be a problem if there were no people honoured with degrees and titles such as doctors and professors in our country as long as capitalism still exists in the world. In view of these and other factors, it is impossible to abolish the
title system for the present. We must implement this system correctly and organize seminars regularly so as to develop medical science quickly and improve doctors’ qualifications.

For the development of medical science, it is necessary to make the best use of our own experience and assimilate a great deal of the experience of developed foreign countries. But this must on no account lead to a tendency to worship big powers or look down upon our own things.

Next, we must provide sufficient conditions for effective free medical care as a system.

To this end, we have to mass-produce medical instruments and drugs.

It is not very difficult to manufacture medical instruments. On my recent visit to the Hyangsan branch of the Unsan Tool Factory in Hyangsan County, I saw the medical equipment manufactured there, and I found it fairly good. So I told them that, since they are set on the undertaking, they should try to make good facilities such as dental equipment units or those for the treatment of ear, nose and throat diseases. According to their report yesterday, they had tried to make them by last April 15 but had not finished them by that time. It does not matter how long it takes them to make them, as long as they are successful. As the saying goes, well begun is half done; one can make anything if one takes the plunge and works hard.

Some time ago I asked the officials concerned whether they can make an electrocardiograph, and they replied that they could make anything if they had a model. Now that we can make such instruments, we ought to make all the medical appliances needed for the development of county hospitals by our own efforts.

At present, we cannot afford to import all the medical instruments for the hundreds of county hospitals and factory hospitals because the numbers and varieties of these items are enormous. If we think of importing them for county hospitals, instead of making them ourselves, we shall be unable to solve the problem of these instruments.

Since we produce modern weapons and signal communication
equipment, we must not consider it beyond us to make medical instruments nor must we turn to other people for these things. If we were to import these instruments, instead of making them ourselves, it would cost us tens of millions of pounds at the rate of 100,000 pounds for the equipment of one hospital. We must rely on ourselves. We must initiate a campaign for each of the machine factories to produce one kind of medical appliance.

I was told that 79 items of instruments are needed to equip a county hospital. If 79 of our factories undertake the production of one item each, all these items can be manufactured. Since provincial people’s hospitals consist of all departments, and since each province has a population amounting to millions, these hospitals will have to be well equipped with imported facilities. City and county hospitals, however, should be equipped with locally produced appliances.

The details related to the manufacture of medical instruments will be settled through consultation at a meeting of the Machine Industry Commission. The commission should undertake the production of major items which are required by the Ministry of Public Health, and the minor ones such as scissors and tweezers should be manufactured by local industry factories.

This year we must make preparations and manufacture instruments on an experimental basis, and for about two years from next year we shall concentrate on the production of these items and equip all the county hospitals with modern facilities.

We must produce large quantities of drugs.

In developing the pharmaceutical industry, we have to advance towards using domestic raw materials and mass-producing substituting drugs and herbal medicine. The best way is towards producing herbal medicine.

Just as we developed local industry by means of a mass campaign in the past, so we must produce medicine everywhere. The General Bureau of Pharmaceutical and Medical-Appliances Industries should produce only those items of medicine which are important and difficult to make, and the other items should be produced locally. Ryongsinhwan and
medicines for a cold, for instance, are well within local production capabilities.

We must produce medicine for public health domestically as far as possible, and those items which are beyond domestic production or are needed in small quantities should be imported in exchange for those which we can produce in large quantities. We must produce adequate supplies of drugs so that hospitals do not run short of them. In this way we can demonstrate the advantages of the system of free medical care to the full.

The chief secretaries of provincial, city and county Party committees must organize a mass campaign to produce large amounts of drugs which are within the capabilities of their own districts. The experience in 1958 and last year’s experience of constructing local industries by means of a mass campaign on the eve of the Fifth Party Congress show that nothing is impossible if we do it by relying on the masses and by mobilizing their efforts. The local industries which were built at that time are playing a big part in improving the people’s standard of living. If we organize a mass campaign, we shall be able to produce medical instruments and drugs without difficulty.

The specific tasks for the production of medical appliances and drugs should be discussed and necessary steps taken at a meeting of the chief secretaries of provincial, city and county Party committees and the chairmen of their people’s committees. The central authorities concerned must also convene a consultative meeting and organize appropriate assignments. In our country which is small, provinces can cooperate in the production of necessary medical appliances and drugs if each of them is given an assignment to manufacture specific items. The chief secretaries and chairmen and also the ministers concerned must direct this work and help it in a responsible manner.

We must construct county hospital buildings. Under present circumstances, county hospitals have not enough space to accommodate good equipment even when it is supplied to them. County hospitals, clinics, nurseries and kindergartens should be constructed by means of a campaign.
The standard of county hospital buildings should not be set too high. Any county can build two to three-storeyed buildings of Songnim style for this purpose. From the outset, however, the Ministry of Public Health sets too high a standard by claiming that these hospitals need boilers, running water, and so on. As a result, the project is not undertaken because of the shortage of the facilities and materials to meet these standards.

As I always say, you must not try to do everything at once. You must construct the buildings first, and if running water is not available because of the shortage of water pipes, you can fetch water to wash your hands. And then you can build up the equipment as materials become available. In this way you will be able to construct hospitals quickly through a mass campaign.

A strict treatment discipline should be established in hospitals. Because of the lack of discipline some people are said to be staying in hospital for two or three months and even one year or two, although they are not seriously ill. I have also heard that some people are taken care of in hospital for some five months on end, and then leave it only to come back again after working for about ten days.

It is true that there may be patients who have to be treated in hospital for approximately six months or a year. But we cannot afford to give everyone so long a period of hospital treatment. It is impossible to give all the chronic patients medical care in hospital. If we do so, the state will be unable to maintain itself. The Ministry of Public Health has to draw up inpatient treatment regulations, and those whose prescribed periods of inpatient treatment have expired should be treated as outpatients or else doctors should visit them at their homes.

The undisciplined practice on the part of hospitals is also manifest in defining their patients as social pensioners without justifiable reasons. Once I went to inspect the Thaesong Reservoir and there I found a great many anglers. I enquired what sort of people they were. They were all social pensioners. Also on my visit to Ryanggang Province in early spring some years ago, I saw a man fishing in the cold water. He was a social pensioner. It seems to me that doctors now
issue the certificate of work disability carelessly.

It is all very well that doctors treat people with noble human love, but they must not compromise with those who are dishonest or live at the expense of society. They must not compromise because they are fighting to build socialism and communism.

Hospitals must combat the tendency to issue the certificate of work disability carelessly or to keep patients in hospital for many months simply because they are chronic cases. Hospital work must be put under Party and administrative control so as to tighten discipline.

To proceed, we must fight effectively against epidemics.

At present, epidemic prevention measures are ineffective. Hepatitis and tuberculosis and other infectious cases must be isolated, and strict measures taken to prevent them from spreading. This is important.

All the provinces, cities and counties must establish isolation wards for the treatment of epidemic cases. I was told that pine groves are good for TB cases. Since there are pine groves everywhere in our country, these patients can be treated well if wards are built in pine groves where there are good springs and if doctors are appointed to work there.

It is reported that a cooperative farm in Pakchon County is good at treating infectious cases. This farm has built a house in a mountain valley, and even sent several goats there so that TB patients can drink milk in addition to taking medicine, and so they recover quickly. The chief secretaries of county Party committees and the chairmen of county people’s committees must take strict measures to treat epidemic cases in their counties.

Sanitary and hygienic work must be developed by a mass campaign.

Bathhouses must be run properly. At present, rural communities are not operating them well.

On my visit to a cooperative farm a few days ago, I saw a large bathhouse there, but I found that it had never been used throughout the winter. Taking a bath is a primary requirement of human life, but this problem is neglected because of the erroneous ideological viewpoint of
the officials. This is why the bathrooms in the dwelling houses in Chollima Street were built carelessly, although the houses themselves are good. This is due to the wrong idea of the senior officials who think that it makes no difference whether they themselves take a bath or not. If a man does not take a bath, lice breed on him and spread diseases. Moreover, we can say, whether or not lice and flies exist in a country is a yardstick by which the civilization of that country is measured.

The Hwanghae Iron Works, too, has not built its bathhouse properly, although it does everything else well. As matters now stand, the Party committee secretaries and managers of factories, the chairmen of the management boards of cooperative farms, and county Party officials are not concerned about the problem of providing the people with baths.

Even in the difficult circumstances during the Fatherland Liberation War, I ensured that the People’s Army soldiers took a bath regularly by heating the water in drums. Hygienic work must begin with this kind of simple thing.

We must also develop a campaign to wipe out flies and mosquitoes and to keep houses and villages clean.

We must build waterworks for all the rural communities. Non-paddy field irrigation is important, but providing the rural communities with running water is more important. There is an old saying that a disease comes in through the mouth and disaster comes out from the mouth. Germs enter the human body through the mouth in many cases. That is why we must provide the rural communities with running water at all costs.

The introduction of water services for the country people is good not only because women will not have to take the trouble of fetching water but it can also prevent diseases. This project will also facilitate hygienic work in the country areas. If water is scarce, people eat vegetables without washing them properly; if plenty of water is available, they wash them well before they eat them. So they will not contract diseases. Since Koreans like cold water, we must provide them with purified running water.
The construction of rural waterworks may require large amounts of materials. So we must organize a campaign to collect scrap iron and make use of all possibilities for the construction of rural waterworks.

Hot springs and spas should be used properly.

Our country is blessed with hot springs and spas. If you make good use of them, you will be able to cure various kinds of disease without spending money. Koreans are in the habit of eating salty food which is the cause of so many cases of stomach troubles. Mineral water is good for the treatment of gastric diseases. But this good mineral water is not used effectively at the moment.

Hot springs, mineral water, and mud and sand baths should be widely used to treat diseases. We have often stressed the need to use hot springs and spas for this purpose since the days immediately after liberation, and have already made a survey of them.

If we are to make wide use of hot springs and spas to cure diseases, we shall have to build many sanatoria there, and the holiday homes at these places will have to be changed over to sanatoria. These places should also be provided with hotel accommodation so that the patients to whom sanatorium tickets are not available can treat themselves, staying in hotels.

We must improve the supply service for hospitals; otherwise, it is impossible to treat patients well. The Ministry of Commerce must assume the responsibility for this service. Commerce in a socialist society means supply services for the people. But at present this ministry is not performing its duty properly.

All officials ought to help the commercial sector to perform its duty satisfactorily. The Ministry of Commerce must set up its supply centre for sanatoria and holiday homes as well as an agency which will take charge of providing hospitals and schools with the necessary supplies. In addition, the Ministry of Commerce must produce and supply the minor items needed for sanatoria and holiday homes after establishing its supply centre.

All Party organizations must control health and hygienic work and press ahead with it.
CHILDREN’S UNION MEMBERS, ALWAYS BE READY TO BE RESERVES OF COMMUNIST BUILDERS

Congratulatory Message Addressed to Members of the Korean Children’s Union on the Occasion of the 25th Anniversary of Its Foundation

June 6, 1971

Dear Children’s Union members,

Today the Korean Children’s Union (KCU) celebrates the 25th anniversary of its foundation amidst the deep affection of our Party and people.

On this momentous occasion I extend my warm congratulations to all KCU members, the future of our country and successors to our revolutionary cause.

The KCU is a revolutionary, communist mass organization of boys and girls, composed of the sons and daughters of workers, peasants and other working people. Though only 25 years old, it has deep historical roots and glorious revolutionary traditions. The communist children’s movement of Korea boasts an honoured history of 45 years, dating back to 1926 when the Saenal (New Day) Children’s Union was formed as the first revolutionary children’s organization in our country. Holding aloft the red flag of the revolution, our children as the ensuing young revolutionary fighters have traversed the arduous yet glorious path of struggle against foreign imperialist invaders for nearly half a century.
In the days of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle our boys and girls experienced revolutionary organizational life and the ordeals of bloody battles to grow up as indomitable revolutionaries, and contributed greatly to the fight for the liberation and independence of our country. By their valiant struggle they set a noble example as young revolutionary fighters. They were the ones who grew up to be pillars of support in building our Party and our Republic. The glorious revolutionary traditions of our children’s movement were established during the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle for the freedom and independence of the country.

After liberation the red flags of the SCU and the Children’s Corps (CC) were succeeded by the banner of the KCU. Our children who have inherited the glorious revolutionary traditions of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle and have been reared by the Workers’ Party of Korea, have grown to be staunch young fighters through their life in the KCU and have made a notable contribution to the building of a new democratic Korea.

Particularly during the days of the great Fatherland Liberation War against the US imperialist aggressors, our resourceful KCU members helped at the front and behind the lines at the risk of their lives and, following the example of the members of the Workers’ Party, formed children’s guerrilla detachments and dauntlessly fought against the enemy everywhere, thus demonstrating to the whole world the bravery of Korean children. In the Fatherland Liberation War a large number of hero soldiers emerged from the ranks of the young revolutionary fighters who had grown up in the KCU.

Our KCU members, always faithful to the Party and the revolution, forcefully carried out their activities under the “midget plan” and various other good-conduct drives in the days of postwar reconstruction and socialist construction to help build the national economy and defence in every way and to make a considerable contribution to the building of our country into a socialist industrial state.

The great socialist gains and happy life of our people today are
associated with the worthy achievements of the struggle of the KCU members. As true sons and daughters of the Party and the people, as young revolutionary fighters and little builders, our KCU members have discharged their noble duties creditably and have been prepared as reliable reserves of communist builders.

The KCU has grown into a large revolutionary organization comprising more than two million boys and girls.

It is a source of great joy and pride for our Party and people that the KCU members are growing up so splendidly as to be able to succeed to our revolution.

I pay a high tribute of admiration to the worthy achievements of the KCU in the past and extend warm thanks to our dear KCU members who have added lustre to the honour of our country by their courageous actions.

Dear KCU members,

You must not be carried away by the successes which you have already achieved. We are now treading the path of the revolution. The KCU members should study more and be better prepared to take over and carry forward the revolution and to build a socialist and communist land of happiness in our country.

On the happy occasion of the 25th anniversary of the KCU I should like to make a few requests of its members.

First, the members of the KCU should be faithful to its organizational life.

Life in the KCU marks the beginning of political organizational life for people and the basic organizational life for the revolutionization of society as a whole. Only when members of the KCU are faithful in its life will they be able to become good scholars and grow to be fine revolutionaries through continuous revolutionary training.

To be faithful to the organizational life of the KCU is the greatest honour and the sacred duty of boys and girls.

Deep in your minds you should always be aware of the honour of being KCU members, and love and value the organization and participate in its life faithfully. Like the anti-Japanese guerrillas and
the CC members who were faithful to revolutionary organizational life, members of the KCU should value their political life and constantly endeavour to honour it from the moment they become members.

Members of the KCU should be armed with the revolutionary ideas of our Party, and know its Rules well and be guided by them. You should attend every meeting of the KCU, carry out the tasks assigned by its organizations without fail and willingly accept its organizational discipline. You should always lead an organizational, collective life and firmly rely on the KCU organizations in solving all problems.

You should be ready to participate in criticism and self-criticism. Through the KCU organizational life, you should constantly train yourselves to be reserves of communist builders equipped with a revolutionary world outlook. To do so, you should follow what is good, fight against what is evil and openly criticize your own errors and remedy them.

Your organizational life must stand on its own feet. You should make a habit of holding meetings at your own discretion, discussing and deciding on matters and carrying out decisions without fail, even if nobody asks you to do so.

Secondly, the KCU members should be exemplary in school life.

Study is the most important duty of pupils. They can only grow to become fine reserves of communist builders when they study well.

You should have greater enthusiasm for study, observe study discipline strictly, and study and study diligently by using every minute of your time. You must study hard and should all become honour or excellent pupils. You should try hard to become knowledgeable about our language, the history of our revolution and our geography, and to acquire a wealth of knowledge in the spheres of science, technology, literature and the arts.

You should be avid readers, form a habit of taking pleasure in reading and read a great many good, revolutionary books.

You should thoroughly establish Juche in your studies and thus acquire practical knowledge which will serve our revolution, and the
building of socialism and communism, without fail, be it just a letter or merely the use of an item of laboratory apparatus.

You should be a model in abiding by communist ethics, and constantly harden your bodies by taking an active part in physical culture and sports on a large scale.

This should prepare you to be revolutionaries equipped with a wealth of knowledge, moral integrity and physical fitness, and to be comprehensively developed reserves of communist builders.

Thirdly, KCU members should love our socialist system ardently and treasure and treat with care the property of the country and society.

Our socialist system is the best social system under which all the working people work, study and enjoy a happy life to their heart’s content. With a boundless sense of honour and pride that you are growing up while studying as much as you like under this happy system, you should do your best to consolidate and bring honour to our socialist system.

The spirit of loving the country and the people and the socialist system is expressed in treasuring and caring for state and public property built up through the hard fight of our revolutionary forefathers and with the blood and sweat of the people. You should value and treat with care all school fixtures—even a desk, a chair or a pane of glass. You should value, treasure and protect the property of factories and cooperative farms, theatres, cinemas, hospitals, parks and all other property belonging to the country and the people.

Fourthly, the KCU members must develop an implacable hatred for the enemies of the revolution and fight bravely against them.

You are the new generation who have suffered no exploitation and oppression and have experienced none of the trials of grim revolutionary struggle. In order to carry the revolution forward, you should arm yourselves firmly from childhood with hatred for the imperialists, landlords and capitalists.

You should not forget for even a moment the miserable plight of our people who were subjected in the past to all manner of exploitation and oppression under the rule of the imperialists, landlords and
capitalists. You must be fully aware of the aggressive nature of imperialism and the exploiting nature of the landlord and capitalist classes, and learn to carry out an uncompromising war against all class enemies. In particular, you must increase your hatred for US imperialism and Japanese militarism, the sworn enemies of our people. The US imperialists continue to occupy the southern half of our country, and the Japanese militarists are intent on invading our country again. You should make full ideological preparations to fight resolutely against US and Japanese imperialism.

Always and everywhere KCU members should maintain sharp revolutionary vigilance. The landlords, capitalists and all other class enemies are always eager to find a chance to destroy our socialist system and wreck the common property of our people. We must round up every spy, subversive element and saboteur as quickly as possible. You should become active champions and reliable defenders of socialism, guarding the revolutionary gains firmly against the encroachments of the enemy.

Fifthly, the KCU members should acquire the collectivist spirit: one for all and all for one.

Collectivism is the basis of social life under socialism and communism. Only those children who know how to love their friends, the people, the revolutionary organization and the collective, can become true communists.

You should always value and love your friends, help and learn from one another, and combine your efforts to lead the stragglers forward. You should also love the revolutionary organization and the collective and hold dear the interests of the collective and the honour of the organization.

The KCU members should repudiate selfishness.

Selfishness is a remnant of capitalist ideas. No one who is influenced by selfishness can build or live in a communist society. You should refrain from cherishing only your own things while doing injury to others; you should learn to make devoted efforts for your friends and the collective, for the country and society at any time.
Sixthly, KCU members should be equipped with fine communist moral qualities.

You should be exemplary in keeping public order. So that you can observe public order and public morality well, you should always keep yourselves neat and tidy, walk correctly, refrain from doing mischief to your juniors, use good language, and respect and behave politely to teachers and seniors. You should be honest and modest and willingly observe order and discipline at school and in public.

KCU members should launch the activities of “greenery guards” forcefully to make our beautiful mountains and fields even more lovely and to cover towns and villages with dense foliage and blossoming flowers. The well-organized activities of the “sanitary guards” will enable you to keep yourselves clean, keep your houses and schools in order, have your villages and roads kept clean and tidy and to exterminate flies, mosquitoes and other pests.

Seventhly, the KCU members should love work and help build socialism in the country in every possible way.

All the wealth of our society and the happy life of our people are created by work. In a socialist society labour is particularly worthwhile and honourable. To love work is one of the most important traits of a communist.

You must cultivate the habit of loving work and working diligently from childhood. You should always attend to the affairs of your houses and schools faithfully, and take an active part in public work for the collective and society. You must not tolerate dislike of work and an idle life, regarding them as manifestations of the ideas of the exploiting classes, and fight resolutely against them.

You should carry on a widespread good-conduct movement for the country and society. You should become young socialist builders contributing to the economic life of the country and giving every possible help to socialist construction through “midget plan” activities.

Eighthly, the KCU members should participate faithfully in social-political activities.

Our KCU members should not become “bookworms” but must
participate energetically in socio-political activities from childhood so as to grow up into able political workers. You should have a good understanding of the policy of our Party at each period, and go to factories, farm villages, construction sites or neighbourhood units in the residential quarters after school and during vacations to explain and spread it in various forms and ways. You should carry on a great deal of socially and politically beneficial work.

Through socio-political activities you should further enrich knowledge gained at school, train yourselves politically and ideologically, and make an active contribution to revolutionizing your homes, neighbourhood units and society as a whole.

Ninthly, the KCU members should support the south Korean people and children in their fight against the US imperialists and their henchmen and make effective efforts to hasten national reunification.

Today the people and children in the northern half of Korea are living under a happy socialist system and studying as much as they wish, but those in the south are still suffering greatly under the colonial rule of the US imperialists. Because of double or treble exploitation and oppression, they are now ill-clad and starved, and large numbers of children, denied an opportunity of education, are roaming the streets.

As you KCU members begin to live happier lives in the northern half of Korea you should not forget the poor people and children in south Korea and should support and encourage, in every way you can, their struggle against the US and Japanese imperialists and their lackeys for freedom and liberation. You, our KCU members, should prepare yourselves better, physically and mentally, to bring closer the day when you will live happily with the children of south Korea, studying as much as you like and playing joyfully in a reunified country.

Tenthly, the KCU members should strengthen their internationalist friendship and solidarity with children of various countries.

KCU members should unite with the children of the socialist states, join hands with the boys and girls of all the countries fighting against US imperialism for freedom and liberation, peace, democracy and
socialism, and work tirelessly with them, to build a new society on our planet free from imperialism and the landlord and capitalist classes.

KCU members,

You have an immensely great and brilliant future. Before you lies a new era of a reunified country, the country where socialism will have won complete victory and a fine, happy land of communism stretches out ahead.

You, the masters of the new, happy era, have the great honour of enjoying all happiness to your heart’s content in the joyous land of socialism and communism and are at the same time charged with the responsible duty of making this land ever more prosperous. The future of our country depends entirely on how you prepare yourselves and grow up. Rallied closely under the banner of the KCU, all of you should study harder and participate in KCU life more actively, thus growing up sturdily to be true continuers of our revolution and dependable reserves of communist builders.

I am firmly convinced that all of you, our KCU members, will live up to the trust and expectations of the Party admirably.

Always be ready to be reserves of communist builders!
Dear comrade youth delegates,
Dear foreign youth representatives,

The Sixth Congress of the League of Socialist Working Youth is an event of great importance in the lives of all our young men and women and the entire people of our country. At this moment the congress is successfully carrying out its work; it enjoys the great interest and hope of our Party and our people and has the warm support and encouragement of many young friends and progressive people in foreign lands.

The Party Central Committee is very satisfied with the smooth progress of the congress work and wishes it success.

I should like to offer my warm congratulations and thanks to the delegates of the congress and to all the LSWY members and young people of our country—the courageous young fighters who have always been true to our Party’s call and are devoting themselves to implementing the Party’s policies.

On behalf of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea, the Government of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea and all the Korean people, I also sincerely welcome foreign youth representatives.
who have come to our country to congratulate the congress.

Comrades,

The Korean youth movement, in company with the communist movement in our country, has traversed the historic path of proud struggle, and the young people of Korea have glorious revolutionary traditions. For nearly half a century, ever since the formation of the Down-with-Imperialism Union, our country’s first revolutionary youth organization, Korean youth have fought bravely for the independence of our country and the freedom of the people, for the victory of the cause of communism. Our youth shed a great deal of blood in the wars against Japanese and US imperialism, as well as against domestic reactionaries, and suffered many harsh ordeals. Under the leadership of the communists, however, they overcame all hardships and trials and fought staunchly along the road of revolution. With their heroic and self-sacrificing struggle, our young people set a noble example as young communist revolutionary fighters and accomplished great exploits which will shine for ever in our people’s revolutionary history. The brilliant revolutionary traditions of our country’s youth movement were established during the period of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle for national freedom and liberation.

The LSWY which sprang from the deep roots of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, inheriting its brilliant revolutionary traditions, and all the young people, have given full scope to their energies and talents in the battle to establish a new social system in our country free from exploitation and oppression and in the great work of construction to build up our country into a rich and strong socialist industrial state. All the brilliant achievements of our people in the revolutionary struggle and work of construction are associated with the heroic work and endeavours of millions of our young men and women; the great creations of socialism made in this land symbolize the immortal deeds performed by Korean youth for our homeland and people. The young people of our era should feel proud of the achievements attained through their heroic efforts and creative work.

Our young people have changed beyond recognition both mentally
and morally through their fruitful struggle for revolution and construction. They are now ideologically sound. All our young people can defend the purity of Marxist-Leninist ideology and they are unanimous in their resolve to be forever loyal to the Party and the revolution. They are permeated with our Party’s revolutionary ideas. As befits young people in a revolutionary era, our young people like exertion and work; they faithfully participate in political, organizational life, always lead frugal lives and help and lead each other forward, one for all and all for one. This is characteristic of their fine qualities; it is the revolutionary spirit of the heroic Korean youth. Our Party and people are very happy and proud to have such exemplary young people.

We can say with great pride that we have well-trained masters who will bear the destinies of the homeland and the people on their shoulders.

Comrades,
The young people are heirs to our revolutionary cause.

An advanced socialist system has been set up in our country thanks to the heroic endeavours of the people and the young people. Under this system they are enjoying new, happy and worthwhile lives. However, the revolutionary struggle does not come to an end with the establishment of the socialist system and the building of the material and technical foundations of socialism.

Our revolutionary cause has not been completed, and we have liberated only a half of the country so far. US imperialism, the inveterate enemy of our people, occupies half of our territory, and Japanese militarism with US imperialist backing has revived and is intensifying its plans to resume its aggression. In south Korea under the occupation of US imperialism, the landlords, comprador capitalists and the reactionary bureaucratic clique of pro-US and pro-Japanese stooges are still entrenched and the reactionary colonial regime of fascist rule still remains. As long as imperialism and reactionaries and their underlings remain, we cannot discontinue our revolutionary struggle.

Generations pass, but the revolution continues. Although the goals
of the revolution remain unaltered, the generation has changed and the new generation which has grown up since liberation is already emerging as master of our state and society. Only when the new, rising generation takes over the revolution can it be carried forward and our sacred revolutionary cause be accomplished.

It is precisely you, the young people of our age, who are entrusted with the glorious task of taking the revolution over and carrying it forward until our country is completely liberated and reunified and the nationwide victory of the Korean revolution is achieved, and until imperialism is destroyed throughout the world. Even after the country is reunified and the nationwide socialist revolution is won, our young people must continue the revolution until the building of communism is completed. Furthermore, our young people have the duty to fight, in company with the progressive youth of the world, to win victory for the cause of anti-imperialist revolution and the cause of socialism and communism throughout the world.

The young people should not be content with victories, but should fight unremittingly for fresh revolutionary victories, and they should prove themselves worthy heirs to our revolution.

If the young people are to take over and carry forward the revolution, they must, among other things, continue to revolutionize and working-classize themselves. Although revolutionization is necessary for everyone, it is especially necessary for the younger generation who have not experienced the ordeals of revolutionary struggle.

Our young people must arm themselves firmly with Marxist-Leninist ideology, with our Party’s revolutionary ideas, make a deep study of its glorious revolutionary traditions, and tirelessly learn from the lofty revolutionary spirit of their anti-Japanese revolutionary predecessors. As their lives become happier, our young people should not forget the past when our people were exploited and oppressed and should equip themselves firmly with revolutionary working-class awareness. All the young people should recognize the aggressive nature of imperialism, particularly US imperialism and Japanese militarism, and the exploiting nature of landlords and capitalists,
should hate the enemy and fight with tenacity against imperialism and the system of exploitation.

Strengthening organizational life in the LSWY is one important way to revolutionize and working-classize young people. All the younger generation of our country spend their youth in the LSWY organization. Life in the LSWY represents the political, organizational life of the LSWY members and is an excellent school for their ideological training. Our young people should participate loyally in the organizational life of the LSWY and train themselves well politically and ideologically, so that they establish a revolutionary world outlook and thoroughly revolutionize and working-classize themselves while in the LSWY.

In this way, all our young people will become genuine revolutionary fighters for communism, infinitely true to the revolutionary cause of the working class, and will continue battling resolutely for the final victory of our revolution.

Comrades,

Socialist construction is an important revolutionary task of the young people of today.

Our people, under the leadership of the Workers’ Party, have already done a great deal of work in socialist construction. Our socialist system has been further consolidated and our country has become a powerful socialist industrial state. The independent socialist national economy which our people have built up by working hard with a spirit of self-reliance is demonstrating greater strength, and, in general, the people’s material well-being and cultural standards have markedly improved.

Our battle has now become more powerful and fruitful and broader vistas are opening before us. We have to fight forcefully to consolidate and develop the successes achieved in socialist construction and to carry into effect the magnificent new programme of socialist construction put forward by the Fifth Congress of our Party.

The new battle for socialist construction calls for more energetic work on the part of the young people.
Young people constitute a great force on the labour front for building a new society. The Party has faith in their strength and talents and reposes great hopes in them.

Our young people must all take a more active part in the sacred struggle for the building of a rich, strong and beautiful socialist country, and give full play to their great youthful energy and wisdom in this fruitful struggle. Young people must, as they have done in the past, take the lead in doing difficult and arduous work in the fight to fulfil the Six-Year Plan, and perform even more remarkable feats of labour in socialist construction.

The extractive industries, agriculture and the construction sites of great projects to transform nature provide an excellent challenge for our young people. At present the Party is making great efforts in those sectors and hopes that young people will play a greater role there. More young people must go to work in collieries, mines, forestry, fishing, agriculture, on construction sites of power stations and tideland reclamation, and assistance has to be given to those sectors in an all-inclusive mass movement.

A great new upsurge will take place in the socialist construction of our country when strong, vigorous and brave youngsters fight, as a shock force for socialist construction, in all branches of the national economy, giving it all their strength and wisdom.

Young people must not only bear the brunt of difficult and backbreaking work; they must also become the vanguard in carrying out the technical revolution.

Today our country has entered a new stage of technological development. The technical revolution, with its three major fields of emphasis, is one of the central tasks of socialist economic construction set forth by the Party at the present stage; it is an honourable task aimed at developing the country’s productive forces to a higher level in order to ensure the complete victory of socialism and emancipate all the working people from backbreaking labour.

The successful fulfilment of the tasks of the technical revolution put forward by our Party depends largely on the young people who are
sensitive to the new and highly enterprising. Our young people must devote all their wisdom and energies to carrying out the glorious tasks assigned to them successfully.

In order to be pioneers in the technical revolution young people must acquire modern science and technology.

Ours is an era of rapid scientific and technological development. Modern science and technology have been widely introduced and are playing an increasingly greater role in production and construction. Today, without scientific knowledge and technical skill, our national economy cannot be advanced even an inch, nor can young people play the role of shock force and pioneers in socialist construction.

The LSWY organizations must organize a mass campaign amongst the young people to master science and technology, and all of them must make every effort to learn new techniques. Without exception, they must learn and learn hard and acquire more than one kind of technical skill, and master the techniques of their own particular branches of work.

Young people should play the vanguard role in popularizing new techniques and should take an active part in the movement for technological innovation. There should be no conservatism or mystification about technology among our young people. In all fields of the national economy they must oppose conservatism and mystification which hinder technological progress, strive to create new techniques and establish new records boldly by scrapping old technical norms and devise rational work methods and efficient machines. In this way, all the production processes will be mechanized and automated as soon as possible by the wisdom and efforts of our young people, thus freeing the working people from difficult and exhausting work.

It is important to care for and scrupulously protect the wealth which has already been created, while increasing the wealth of the country and society. Our young people should look after all the property of the country and society with devotion and work hard in managing the nation’s economic life.

We are building socialism face to face with the enemy in a divided
country. Our people and youngsters must both accelerate socialist economic construction to the utmost and continue to make great efforts to increase the nation’s defence capabilities and be fully prepared to deal with war. Defending the socialist homeland is a sacred duty of our young people. They must all step forward and defend the socialist homeland militarily and politically.

Our young people must oppose all expressions of indolence and weariness and must always keep themselves alert and ready against the enemy’s aggressive moves. They should never be lulled into mood of pacifism and, in particular, should guard strictly against the infiltration into our ranks of the revisionist ideological trend of fearing war. All young people must have a firm ideological resolve to meet and fight the enemy bravely if he should attack us.

The young soldiers of the People’s Army and the Security Forces who guard the posts of national defence must make the nation’s defence lines impregnable. They must participate in combat and political training with great energy and increase their units’ combat efficiency and combat readiness in every way.

Worker-Peasant Red Guards, Red Young Guards and all our young men and women, as well as People’s Army soldiers, should seriously study military affairs, take an active part in military training and perseveringly study war experiences. Our young people, in company with the entire people, should build socialism successfully, firmly defending their posts and the socialist homeland with a rifle in one hand and a hammer or a sickle in the other.

The enemy of revolution is viciously scheming to undermine our socialist system from within and destroy the achievements of socialist construction. Young people must keep sharp revolutionary vigilance at all times and places and resolutely guard against the enemy’s subversion and sabotage aimed at the factories, enterprises, railways, harbours and other production facilities, cultural establishments and all the property of cooperative farms which have been built up with the sweat and blood of our people.

Comrades,
Our LSWY members and young people are confronted with the sacred task of giving active support to the south Korean youth and students in their fight against US imperialism and its stooges and for freedom, liberation and the reunification of the country.

The south Korean youth movement constitutes an honourable part of the Korean youth movement as a whole. The south Korean young people and students have a brilliant tradition of heroic combat against foreign imperialist aggressors; they have developed a tireless battle against the US and Japanese imperialists and their successive lackeys. Through their heroic struggle, they have defended our nation’s honour and dignity and exemplified the ardent patriotism and revolutionary mettle of the Korean youth.

At this very moment, young people and students in south Korea, braving the enemy’s brutal oppression and terrorism, are fighting admirably for the democratization of education and for democratic freedom and liberation. The flames of anti-imperialist, anti-fascist battle for democracy which they sparked off have already been raging fiercely for three months this year. Their battle against the US and Japanese imperialists and their henchmen has a great impact on the development of the revolutionary movement in south Korea. Their patriotic struggle is playing an important role in awakening broad sections of the south Korean masses who desire national liberation and the country’s reunification and in planting the seeds of revolution in them.

Our people value the courageous struggle of the south Korean young people and students highly and will always remember the priceless deeds they have performed in the noble fight for national liberation.

In order to fulfil their sacred duty in our people’s national-liberation struggle, the young people of south Korea must continue to wage a forceful anti-US, anti-Japanese, anti-puppet fight. The south Korean people, youth and students can only attain genuine freedom and liberation when they have driven out the US imperialist aggressors and smashed their stooges; they can only avert the danger of a new disaster when they have frustrated the Japanese militarists’ plans to reinvade Korea.
At present, the south Korean people, youth and students must fan the flames of anti-fascist struggle for the introduction of democracy. To achieve the democratization of south Korean society is the most urgent task right now in the fight of the south Korean people, youth and students against foreign imperialist aggressors and their lackeys. There can be no social progress or successful development of the youth movement as long as the people’s liberties and democratic rights are trampled upon and fascist repression and despotism prevail.

The young people and students of south Korea must fight more resolutely against the subordination of educational institutions to the military purpose and commercial exploitation in these institutions and for the freedom of speech, the press, assembly, demonstration and association as well as the freedom of action by political parties and social organizations, and should smash all of the enemy’s efforts at fascist repression of the progressive youth, students and people.

In order to win their struggle they must strengthen their ranks and unite with the broad masses of all social strata and, especially, must closely coordinate their movement with the fight of the workers and peasants. Mixing widely with the masses of the workers and peasants, they should constantly increase their revolutionary consciousness and strengthen organizational ties with them through various forms of joint combat. When their fight is linked with that of the workers and peasants, it will be stronger; when the workers, peasants, young people, students and all the patriotic people of south Korea rise and fight in a body, the south Korean revolution will be crowned with brilliant victory.

The puppet clique in the south is now seeking to prolong its power by despotic military suppression and vicious methods, but there is no doubt that it will be overthrown before long by the nationwide resistance of the students and other youth and the broad masses of the people in south Korea just as the old Syngman Rhee puppet clique was overthrown.

Young people in the northern half of Korea and in south Korea are the proud rising generation of Korea who will be responsible for the
future of a reunified homeland. The south Korean youngsters must extricate themselves from the colonial rule of the US imperialists as soon as possible, and they should study as much as they wish and let their youthful wisdom and talents flower under a promising socialist system, like our young people in the northern half of Korea.

The young people in the north must do all they can to support and encourage the just struggle of the south Korean youth. This is their sacred duty. All our LSWY members and young people must not forget for a moment the misery of young people in south Korea, and must always lead a strenuous, militant life, feeling that they are part of the same fighting ranks and work hard to build up the revolutionary base in the northern half of Korea.

The south Korean people and youth are fighting under very difficult conditions, and they still have a thorny path to follow. But the south Korean youth will overcome all hardships and expand their fighting ranks and, in this way, eventually carry out their lofty mission in our people’s national-liberation struggle with credit.

The just struggle of the students and other south Korean people against the US and Japanese imperialists and their lackeys will definitely emerge victorious with the active support of the people, including the young people, in the northern half of Korea and with the warm encouragement of the young people and other progressive people all over the world. In south Korea the sacred cause of national-liberation democratic revolution will be accomplished without fail.

Comrades,

The development of the revolutionary struggle of Korean young people is closely tied to the struggle of progressive youth all over the world for peace, democracy, national independence and socialism. In order to achieve the cause of national liberation, our young people and the rest of the people should constantly strengthen their solidarity with progressive youth and other people throughout the world, at the same time as they expand the revolutionary forces in north and south Korea. Strengthening solidarity with the international revolutionary forces is an important factor in driving the US imperialist aggressors out of
south Korea and achieving the reunification of our country and the nationwide victory of the Korean revolution.

US imperialism is the most savage, most heinous aggressor of modern times and the chief enemy of peace, national independence and socialism.

The young people of Korea should continue to fight resolutely against the policy of aggression and war pursued by the imperialists headed by US imperialism, and should closely unite in this struggle with the progressive youth of the world. Our young people must unite with the young people of all countries who are fighting against imperialism for peace, democracy, national independence and socialism, should support their struggle and strive to win greater international support for our people’s anti-US struggle.

Today US imperialism is bent on aggression and war all over the world and, in particular, directs the spearhead of aggression at Asia. Not a day passes which does not see the flames of war kindled by US imperialism in Asia.

Our young people, in greater unity with the fighting youths of all the Asian countries, should fight to frustrate US imperialist aggression in Asia and to chase the aggressive forces of US imperialism out of the southern half of our country, Taiwan, South Viet Nam, and the rest of Indochina from all parts of Asia. In unity with all the anti-imperialist forces in Asia and the world, our Korean young people should foil the ambition of Japanese militarism, regenerated under the aegis of US imperialism, to invade our country again.

This congress is being attended by many young anti-imperialist fighters of the world. This is a striking demonstration of the international solidarity of young people in the anti-imperialist struggle. You have not only congratulated this congress warmly, but have also expressed active support to our young and other people in their fight against US imperialist aggression and Japanese militarist reinvansion scheme and for the country’s reunification. This support and encouragement mean a lot to us. We are very grateful for it and express our warm thanks to you.
It is very good for the victory of the common anti-imperialist cause that the young people and other progressive people of the world are firmly united and give support and encouragement to one another. More than anything else the imperialists are afraid of young men and women and other people joining forces in precisely this way. That is why they are resorting to all kinds of tricks to obstruct the international unity of the people and youngsters and to break up the anti-imperialist front. It is necessary to sharpen vigilance against the plots of the imperialists to split the anti-imperialist revolutionary forces and so frustrate them.

Our young people are now living in a great age of revolution, an age of struggle when imperialism is losing and socialism is winning on a worldwide scale. The ranks of the youth and other people fighting against imperialism keep growing in Asia, Africa, Latin America, and in the capitalist countries of Europe—in all parts of the world. Opposition to imperialism and aspiration towards socialism is the irresistible trend of our times. Imperialism is on the decline and the imperialists find themselves in an ever-worsening dilemma. The general situation is developing decisively in favour of the revolutionary cause of the peoples.

Our youth, in company with the progressive young people of the whole world, should hold the banner of struggle against imperialism higher and work even harder to close the fighting ranks of the young people opposed to imperialism. In this way, the flames of the anti-imperialist, anti-US struggle will rage more fiercely in Asia and Europe, in Africa and Latin America, and in all countries, large and small—in all parts of the world.

The anti-imperialist revolutionary cause of the peoples will definitely triumph. Imperialism and all reactionaries will be completely destroyed by the struggle of the peoples. This is an inexorable law of historical development.

As in the past, so in the future, young Korean people must fight unflinchingly for the reunification of our country and for the final victory of the Korean revolution, for the building of a new world free
from imperialism, exploitation and oppression; they must fight in unity with the young people of the socialist countries, in unity with the fighting Asian, African and Latin-American young people and in unity with all the progressive youth of the world, holding high the banner of Marxism-Leninism and proletarian internationalism, the revolutionary banner of anti-imperialist, anti-US struggle.

Comrades,

The LSWY is the glorious revolutionary organization of Korean youth led by the Workers’ Party. The triumphant advance of the communist youth movement in our country and the brilliant feats and achievements of the LSWY are all attributable to the wise leadership of the Workers’ Party of Korea. The further consolidation and development of the LSWY and the bright future of the young people of Korea are inconceivable without our Party’s leadership. In the future, the LSWY must be completely loyal to the leadership of the Workers’ Party of Korea, just as it has been in the past.

The road ahead of the LSWY and the young people of Korea will be filled with glory and brilliant victories as they march steadfastly forward under our Party’s leadership, following the revolutionary banner of the Juche idea.

I am firmly convinced that in the future all our LSWY members and young people, as the heirs to our revolution, will carry out their glorious revolutionary duty with honour and will reliably carry forward our revolution.
THE REVOLUTIONARY PEOPLES
OF ASIA WILL WIN IN THEIR COMMON
STRUGGLE AGAINST US IMPERIALISM

Speech at the Pyongyang Mass Meeting Welcoming
Samdech Norodom Sihanouk, Head of State of Cambodia
and Chairman of the National United Front of Kampuchea

August 6, 1971

Esteemed Samdech Norodom Sihanouk and Princess Monique Sihanouk,
Esteemed and distinguished guests from Cambodia,
Comrades and friends,

Today people from all walks of life in Pyongyang have gathered here with great joy to meet Samdech Norodom Sihanouk, Head of State of Cambodia and Chairman of the National United Front of Kampuchea (NUFK), who is now on a state visit to our country, and other distinguished Cambodian guests.

First, in the name of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea, the Government of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea and all the Korean people, allow me once again to warmly welcome Head of State Samdech Norodom Sihanouk, the outstanding leader of the Cambodian people, a staunch anti-imperialist fighter and our very close friend, and Princess Monique Sihanouk, the family and relatives of Samdech, and other Cambodian guests.

Allow me also to send our warmest militant greetings through you to the National Liberation People’s Armed Forces of Cambodia.
(NLPAFC) and all the patriotic Cambodian people who are fighting heroically against the US imperialist aggressors and their stooges.

Samdech Head of State is paying another state visit to our country. This is one more historic event which demonstrates the indestructible, militant friendship and solidarity between Korea and Cambodia.

Everywhere you have been our people have welcomed you warmly, with the happy feeling of brothers meeting again after a long separation. This is a clear expression of our people’s high respect for Samdech Head of State and of their firm, militant solidarity with the embattled Cambodian people.

Today Korea and Cambodia are linked in a common front against the common enemy, US imperialism.

Samdech Norodom Sihanouk has brought us the Cambodian people’s fraternal friendship for the Korean people as well as news of the brilliant victories of the Cambodian people in their war of resistance against US aggression and for national salvation. This has been a new and great inspiration for our people.

As Samdech Head of State has said, in their selfless and heroic armed struggle against the US imperialist aggressors and their puppet mercenaries the NLPAFC has already completely liberated seven-tenths of the country inhabited by 4 million out of the total population of 7 million. This victory has very great political and military importance. During the nine months of the last dry season alone the NLPAFC struck the aggressors and their puppets one telling blow after another in different parts of Cambodia and turned the liberated areas into a reliable base for liberating the whole country.

We heartily rejoice over all these successes of the fraternal Cambodian people considering them our own victory and warmly salute them.

The victories of the Cambodian people are entirely due to the correct leadership of Samdech Norodom Sihanouk and the NUFK. They would have been impossible without the great exploits Samdech Head of State has performed by consistently pursuing anti-imperialist, patriotic, just policies in the past and without the deep trust he enjoys
amongst the people. Today when US imperialism and its stooges have forced a bitter war on them, the patriotic Cambodian people have fully realized through their own experience that the internal and external policies followed by Samdech Head of State in the past were completely correct. They respect him more deeply and are fighting bravely, rallying around him more firmly with every passing day.

At present, too, as well as the historic 5-point statement of Samdech Head of State dated March 23, 1970, his well-loved, vigorous voice resounds throughout Cambodia every day on the radio, calling upon the people to rise as one in the just struggle against US imperialism and its stooges, inspiring those who are fighting with infinite strength and courage and striking great terror into the enemy.

Samdech Norodom Sihanouk said, “Under the banner of the NUFK and the leadership of the Royal Government of National Union of Cambodia, the Cambodian people will fight on against the US imperialists without compromise, never yielding until the motherland is completely liberated.”

In his 24th and 25th messages to the Cambodian people, Samdech Norodom Sihanouk again solemnly pointed to the determination of the NUFK and the Royal Government of National Union of Cambodia to lead the Cambodian people to final victory in their sacred war to resist US aggression and save the nation.

As a courageous anti-imperialist fighter and ardent defender of the people’s cause of freedom and liberation, Samdech Norodom Sihanouk enjoys the deep trust and positive support of peace-loving people throughout the world.

Thanks to this trust, the Royal Government of National Union under the leadership of the NUFK has already been officially recognized by 27 sovereign states as the only legitimate government of the Cambodian people. Its international position is becoming increasingly secure.

In the international arena today it is only natural that those countries which genuinely uphold the anti-imperialist banner and support the national-liberation struggle should recognize the Royal Government of
National Union of Cambodia led by Samdech Norodom Sihanouk and resolutely reject the traitorous Lon Nol-Sirik Matak clique, the stooges of US imperialism.

The patriotic Cambodian people have a very strong fighting spirit and have paved a highway to their glorious, final victory.

Encircled in the small area of Pnom Penh, the traitorous Lon Nol-Sirik Matak clique, the stooges of US imperialism, are floundering in ever-increasing confusion and despair, and their days are numbered. This is a stark reality which even the press in the service of the US imperialists admits.

We once again express our conviction that the Cambodian people will soon completely liberate their motherland and build a new, independent, peaceful, anti-imperialist and prosperous people’s Cambodia with Samdech Norodom Sihanouk as its Head of State.

The victories so far won by the Cambodian people in their struggle against US imperialism and its stooges are a great contribution to the anti-imperialist liberation struggle of oppressed nations all over the world and a valuable support to our people’s anti-US struggle.

In whatever part of the world the US imperialist aggressors are destroyed, it is a very good thing for all the peoples of the world.

The Government of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea and the Korean people regard US imperialist aggression against Cambodia as aggression against themselves. They have exerted all their efforts to assist the Cambodian people. We once again solemnly declare that we are ready to adopt any measures necessary to help the Cambodian people whenever Samdech Norodom Sihanouk and the Royal Government of National Union under the leadership of the NUFK ask us to do so.

The Cambodian and other Indochinese peoples are not just fighting for the complete liberation and independence of their countries; they are also shedding their blood to defend peace in Asia and the world.

Having sustained one defeat after another in their war of aggression in South Viet Nam, the US imperialists spread the flames of war to the Democratic Republic of Viet Nam, Cambodia and Laos. But the
aggressors are only digging their own graves.

The indomitable and heroic struggle of the Indochinese peoples, firmly united under the militant banner of the Summit Conference of the Indochinese Peoples held on the initiative of Samdech Norodom Sihanouk, Head of State, has foiled the US imperialists’ plan for the “Vietnamization” of the war and their designs to “make Indochinese fight Indochinese” being carried out under the signboard of the notorious “Nixon doctrine”.

With indomitable heroism, the Vietnamese people have frustrated the barbarous invasion of the US imperialists and once again smashed the myth of the “invincibility” of US imperialism. This has made a great contribution to the cause of peace, national independence and socialism of the progressive people of the world. Upholding the sacred testament of Comrade Ho Chi Minh, the Vietnamese people are fighting staunchly on all fronts in order to hasten the day of complete victory in their war to save the nation from US aggression.

This year the Laotian people gallantly crushed the large-scale US imperialist invasion of Southern Laos and won a brilliant new victory. They are carrying on the liberation war successfully, dealing the enemy one blow after another.

The US defence department’s secret document on their war of aggression in Viet Nam, recently exposed in the United States, more fully demonstrated to the people of the world the undeniable fact that the criminal authors of the war of aggression in Indochina are the US imperialists and no one else.

There are no reasons or grounds whatsoever for the US imperialists to hang on in Indochina. They must stop their war of aggression in Indochina at once, and unconditionally withdraw all their ground, naval and air forces of aggression, all troops of their satellite countries and puppets, and all lethal weapons and means of war.

We take this opportunity of expressing our full solidarity with the fraternal Vietnamese and Laotian peoples in their righteous national-salvation struggle against US imperialism and its stooges. We fully support the 7-point proposal for the peaceful settlement of the
Viet Nam question recently put forward by the Provisional Revolutionary Government of the Republic of South Viet Nam at the Paris Conference on Viet Nam and the new proposals for the solution of the Laotian question advanced last April 27 and June 22 by the Laotian Patriotic Front.

We are convinced that the peoples of the three Indochinese countries, enjoying the active support and encouragement of all the revolutionary peoples of Asia and the rest of the world, will fight resolutely until they vanquish the US imperialist aggressors to the last man and win a glorious final victory.

Comrades and friends,

Today Asia is the region where the revolutionary storm is fiercest. It is the main arena of the anti-imperialist revolutionary struggle and it is here that imperialism’s lifeline is being cut.

Since there are many revolutionary and embattled countries in Asia and their unity is strong, the US imperialists have directed the spearhead of their aggression against Asia, employing all manner of aggressive acts to blockade and attack Asia’s socialist countries and check the rapidly growing national-liberation movement. But, in face of the united and decisive counterattack of the peoples in this region, the US imperialists have sustained defeat after defeat and this has driven them into such a tight corner that they can no longer remain in Asia. The US imperialist policy of aggression in Asia is faced with total ruin.

Everything that has happened from the time the US imperialists suffered a miserable military defeat in their war of aggression against Korea the first ever in US history and began to slide downhill, until today when they are suffering heavy defeats at the hands of the valiant Indochinese peoples, shows that no actions, however desperate, can save them from their doom, hold back the people’s liberation struggles or halt the victorious advance of socialism.

US imperialism is now confronted by an ever more serious crisis at home and abroad. In the United States, the anti-war and anti-government movements are gaining momentum on a mass scale, economic
stagnation and inflation continue to alternate, unemployment is growing and the international balance of payments is constantly being aggravated. Social unrest is increasing day by day and the differences within the ruling circles have become extremely sharp. The weakness of the military strategy being pursued by the US imperialists, who have dispersed their aggressive armed forces and deployed them in all parts of the world, is becoming more and more apparent, and the disputes between the imperialist powers in their scramble for markets and spheres of influence are growing daily. US imperialism is constantly being hit and mauled not only in Indochina but everywhere in the world.

In a desperate effort to save themselves from ruin, the US imperialists advanced the notorious “Nixon doctrine”, talking loudly about what they call a change in policy, but are actually resorting to more cunning and adventurous schemes of aggression. This is also doomed to failure.

In attacking the revolutionary forces of Asia, the US imperialists went to great lengths to blockade and strangle the People’s Republic of China.

When the people’s revolution triumphed in China, the US imperialists refused to recognize the People’s Republic of China but took a hostile attitude towards it from the first days of its existence. Mobilizing all reactionary forces, they used every vicious trick to blockade and isolate it. They occupied Taiwan, an inseparable part of the sacred territory of the People’s Republic of China, synchronizing this with their war of aggression in Korea, ceaselessly threatened the Chinese people with military invasion and they committed continuous hostile acts against them.

But all this has come to nothing. In spite of US imperialism’s policy of blockade and isolation the People’s Republic of China, far from being strangled, has grown steadily stronger. Today it stands imposingly in Asia as a socialist power and mighty anti-imperialist, revolutionary force.

In recent years it has become an irreversible world trend to recognize the People’s Republic of China as the sole legitimate government of the Chinese people and to establish diplomatic relations
with it. The US imperialists’ policy of blockading China has come to an ignominious end.

So US imperialism has been driven into a blind alley internally and externally. It was under these circumstances that Nixon recently announced his plan to visit China.

This means that the hostile policy towards China which the US imperialists have recklessly pursued for more than 20 years in order to check by “force” the great revolutionary changes in China a country with nearly a quarter of the world’s population has finally foundered. It means that the US imperialists have at last succumbed to the pressure of the mighty anti-imperialist, revolutionary forces of the world.

In the last analysis, Nixon will be turning up in Beijing with a white flag, just as the US imperialist aggressors came out to Panmunjom with a white flag after their defeat in the Korean war.

All facts show that imperialism is collapsing rapidly in our time.

Nixon’s plan to visit China has aroused varied reactions on the part of world public opinion.

His visit will not be the march of a victor but a journey of the defeated, and it fully reflects the decline of US imperialism. This is a great victory for the Chinese people and a victory for the revolutionary people of the world.

The Communist Party of China and the Chinese people are seasoned and tempered. They have a glorious tradition of protracted anti-imperialist, revolutionary struggle. They possess rich fighting experience in countering the enemy’s spear with a spear of their own and defeating him and in outmanoeuvring him by adhering to the revolutionary principle when he resorts to deceptive tactics. The People’s Republic of China, as a reliable pillar of the anti-imperialist, revolutionary forces in Asia, is fighting resolutely against the policies of aggression and war of the imperialists headed by the US imperialists. Holding fast to the principle of proletarian internationalism, it actively supports all the revolutionary peoples of Asia and the rest of the world who oppose the US imperialist aggressors. The Government of the People’s Republic of China has made it clear that it will continue to
adhere steadfastly and unwaveringly to the revolutionary principle and actively support and encourage the embattled revolutionary peoples.

With Nixon’s plan to visit China, the imperialist camp is relapsing anew into further confusion and disintegration. Japan’s Prime Minister Sato, who has closely followed US imperialism and outdone everyone in pursuing a hostile policy towards the People’s Republic of China, is frantically trying to hide the disintegration of his reactionary policy. Deeply upset, he utters contradictory remarks almost daily. Other satellite countries and puppets, having blindly followed US imperialism, are at a complete loss. In particular, the Jiang Jieshi clique and the south Korean puppet gang are raising a hue and cry, overcome as they are by great uneasiness and fear.

Every day finds the general situation turning more and more in favour of us revolutionary people.

The present situation requires the people of all the revolutionary countries, including those actually engaged in fighting, to unite closely, mount a fiercer attack on the imperialists in their chaotic decline and finally vanquish imperialism.

As historical experience shows, the aggressive nature of imperialism never changes even when its strength has ebbed. The imperialists never withdraw from their old positions of their own accord. The deeper they sink into a quagmire, the more stubbornly they carry on their “double-dealing tactics”, waving an olive branch in one hand and brandishing a bayonet in the other, and the more viciously they scheme for aggression and war under the cloak of “peace”.

Because of the continued aggressive acts of the US imperialists, the flames of war have not yet been quenched in Indochina. In Korea the US imperialists continue to carry out military provocations in an attempt to unleash another war and they keep on whipping up tension in Asia.

The revival of Japanese militarism by US imperialism is making the Asian situation more and more dangerous.

From the US-Japan “joint statement” in November 1969 to the automatic renewal of the US-Japan “security pact” and the recent
signing of the US-Japan “agreement on the return of Okinawa”, all the facts show that the US imperialists have already openly set up the Japanese militarists as a shock force for aggression in Asia in accordance with the “Nixon doctrine”. Some time ago, they sent their Defence Secretary to Japan and south Korea to hatch plots to expand the Japanese armed forces of aggression on a large scale for use instead of US troops in their aggressive operations against Asia and to perfect the “system of US-Japan-south Korea joint operations” in south Korea.

The resuscitated Japanese militarists are accelerating the revival of fascism at home in a vain attempt to realize their old dream of a “Greater East Asia Co-Prosperity Sphere” by using the “New Asia Policy” of the US imperialists for “making Asians fight Asians”, and are openly demonstrating their fierce ambition to embark on overseas aggression. Every time they open their mouths, the Japanese reactionary ruling circles claim that Japan should play the “leading role in Asia”. They are openly expediting their plans to hurl Japanese armed forces of aggression into the Korean “front”, claiming that a vast area of Asia covering south Korea, Taiwan and Indochina is their “defence sphere”.

Today imperialism is dying. We should bury it by maintaining high vigilance against the desperate “double-dealing tactics” of the enemy and smashing all his sinister schemes promptly.

We stress that if war is to be prevented in Asia, and if tension is to be removed and genuine peace achieved, the US imperialist aggressors must quit south Korea, Taiwan, Indochina, Japan and all other parts of Asia where they have established footholds. They must give up their scheme of “making Asians fight Asians” by arming satellite countries and puppets. The US and Japanese reactionaries must stop suppressing the national-liberation struggle of the other peoples and interfering in their internal affairs. The problems of each country must be left to its own people to settle.

If the US imperialists and the Japanese militarists refuse to withdraw and persist in their aggressive moves, they will be chased out everywhere by the united action of the people.
In order to thwart their current schemes for aggression and war in Asia, it is particularly important to strengthen the anti-imperialist, anti-US united front of the peoples of the revolutionary Asian countries who are the direct victims of their aggression.

The militant solidarity of the revolutionary peoples of Asia is the product of history. It has been cemented and developed through hard-fought struggles against the imperialist aggressors. The new aggressive conspiracies of the US imperialists and the Japanese militarists are making the peoples of Korea, Cambodia, China, Vietnam, Laos and other revolutionary Asian countries unite more solidly.

The Korean and Chinese peoples have always fought shoulder to shoulder, taking concerted action on a common front against the US imperialists and their stooges. Practical experience has taught them that their destinies are inseparable. The aggressive and war-like schemes of the US imperialists and the Japanese militarists who are conspiring and conniving together in Asia are becoming more overt every day. The peoples of Korea and China are making more complete preparations to deal jointly with any enemy invasion, continuing to be revolutionary comrades-in-arms and fraternal allies now and in the future as they were in the past when they fought victoriously side by side, sharing life and death, good times and bad in the same trench.

Only a short time ago, on the 10th anniversary of the Korean-Chinese Treaty of Friendship, Cooperation and Mutual Assistance, Party and government delegations were exchanged between our two countries and huge mass meetings were held in the capital cities, Pyongyang and Beijing, and in many other places. These celebrations once again demonstrated before the whole world the unshakable determination of the Korean and Chinese peoples to fight together to the last and defeat US imperialism and Japanese militarism.

The fraternal friendship and solidarity between the Korean and Chinese peoples which were sealed in blood and stood all the tests of history, are indestructible. In the future, too, our people will march for ever side by side with the fraternal Chinese people in the struggle against the common enemy.
In order to defeat the imperialists headed by the US imperialists, solidarity must be strengthened not only between the peoples of the countries making revolution in Asia but between the peoples of all countries making revolution. Continuing to hold aloft the banner of Marxism-Leninism, the revolutionary banner of the anti-imperialist, anti-US struggle, we shall fight more fiercely for the victory of our common cause in unity with the peoples of the socialist countries and the revolutionary peoples of Asia, Africa and Latin America and all other parts of the world.

Our people actively support the Japanese and other Asian peoples in their struggle against US imperialism and the revival of Japanese militarism. The Korean people express their firm solidarity with all the Arab peoples, including the Palestinian people, in their struggle against the US imperialists and their stooges, the Israeli aggressors, and with the African peoples in their struggle against imperialism, colonialism and racism and for freedom, liberation and the consolidation of national independence. Our people resolutely support the struggle of the Cuban people who are successfully building socialism while smashing the incessant acts of aggression and subversion of US imperialism. We resolutely support the anti-US, anti-dictatorship struggle of the Latin-American peoples. We express our firm solidarity with the anti-imperialist, anti-US struggle of the peoples of all countries of the world.

Even though US imperialism is now putting on a show of power, if all the revolutionary peoples of the world join in dismembering it everywhere, it will eventually be smashed.

If the Japanese militarists, blinded by their aggressive ambitions, follow their old path of aggression again, instead of learning a lesson from their bitter and ignominious defeat in the Second World War, they too will be unable to escape the miserable fate of their final downfall.

Comrades and friends,

For the final victory of the Korean revolution we should strengthen and develop our own internal revolutionary forces in every way, while
at the same time strengthening our solidarity with the international revolutionary forces.

Today the US imperialists are still entrenched in south Korea, refusing to withdraw and are trying desperately to make Koreans fight Koreans. The Japanese militarists with the backing of the US imperialists are developing their plans to invade our country again. Under these circumstances we must not slacken vigilance for even a moment. We must continue to make great efforts to strengthen our defence capacity, as well as to hasten socialist economic construction in order to make the defences of our country impregnable in any emergency.

Holding aloft the banner of the Juche idea, under the wise leadership of our Party our people have followed the revolutionary line of independence, self-support and self-defence, and thereby successfully carried out the historic task of socialist industrialization and built up a defence potential strong enough to crush the imperialists any time they attack us.

Encouraged by the successes scored in the northern half of Korea, the south Korean people are carrying out a fierce battle to overthrow the military fascist dictatorship of the US imperialists and their lackeys, shatter the Japanese militarists’ scheme to invade our country again and attain freedom, liberation and the reunification of our country. They are striking heavy blows against the colonial rule of the US imperialists.

Alarmed by a situation which is developing more and more in favour of the revolution with the passage of time, the puppet clique of south Korea clings as always to the coattails of the US imperialists and relies all the more on the Japanese militarists in a vain attempt to postpone its doom. In an endeavour to cover up their treacherous nature and stifle the movement for peaceful reunification mounting with irresistible force amongst the south Korean people, they are widely publicizing their fraudulent “peaceful reunification programme”. This stupid ruse, however, will fool no one, nor will it save the south Korean puppet clique from a fate which has already been predestined.
The Government of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea has made consistent efforts to bring about the peaceful reunification of Korea. Last April it once again put forward an 8-point programme for independent, peaceful reunification.

On this occasion, too, the US imperialists and the south Korean puppet clique have not replied to our fair and just programme for peaceful reunification—a programme reflecting the unanimous desire of the entire nation and are only indulging in empty talk about peaceful reunification. If the south Korean rulers truly want peaceful reunification, they must, first, stop pleading for the permanent stationing of US troops but must make them withdraw from south Korea. They must stop conspiring with the Japanese militarists and bringing them into south Korea. They must stop suppressing the political parties, social organizations and democratic personages of south Korea who call for peaceful reunification but allow them to come out for north-south negotiations for the reunification of the country. They must proceed from the stand that the Korean question must be solved by the Koreans themselves.

Apart from the question as to whether or not the south Korean rulers accept our 8-point peaceful reunification programme, if they truly want reunification, why are they afraid of contacts and negotiations between the north and the south?

We are ready to establish contact at any time with all political parties, including the Democratic Republican Party, and all social organizations and individual personages in south Korea.

If the south Korean rulers refuse even initial contacts between the north and the south and only pay lip service to peaceful reunification, it will stir up further bitter hatred and wrath amongst the people. They are openly claiming that the question of reunification can only be discussed after 1973 when their “strength is built up” or even in the second half of the 1970’s. Their motive is to bring the resuscitated Japanese militarists into south Korea in full force by then and bring about their foolish ambition of “reunification by prevailing over communism”.

199
Our people will continue to fight strenuously to step up socialist construction in the northern half of Korea, to bring about the south Korean revolution by assisting the south Korean people and to get the question of reunification solved independently by the Korean people themselves on a democratic basis and in a peaceful way.

The Korean people’s just struggle to force the US imperialist aggressors to withdraw from south Korea, remove tensions in Korea and attain the independent, peaceful reunification of our country, is bound to triumph with the constantly growing support and encouragement of peace-loving people the world over.

Samdech Norodom Sihanouk and the Kingdom of Cambodia, having stood for a long time firmly on the side of the Korean people in their opposition to the US imperialists and their lackeys, have recognized the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea as the only legitimate state of the Korean people and have actively supported and encouraged the Government of our Republic and the Korean people in their struggle to force the US imperialist aggressor troops to withdraw from south Korea and to achieve the independent, peaceful reunification of our country.

Let me express warm thanks to Samdech Norodom Sihanouk, the National United Front of Kampuchea and the Royal Government of National Union of Cambodia for this.

The Korean and Cambodian peoples are bound by firm ties of militant friendship through their common struggle against imperialism headed by US imperialism and for the building of a new life.

Our people are very happy to have such a resourceful and courageous people as the Cambodian people as their close friends and they set great store by the friendship and solidarity between the peoples of the two countries. The present visit of Samdech Norodom Sihanouk to our country is a new and great contribution not only to intensifying our joint anti-US struggle and cementing and developing the militant friendship and solidarity between our two peoples but also to strengthening and developing the anti-imperialist, anti-US united front of the peoples of the revolutionary countries in Asia and promoting the
cause of the revolutionary peoples of the world. This gives us great satisfaction.

In conclusion, I reaffirm that our people will fight for ever shoulder to shoulder with the Cambodian people in the joint anti-US struggle and remain their reliable comrades-in-arms and allies. It is my sincere wish that the courageous Cambodian people, under the wise leadership of esteemed Samdech Norodom Sihanouk, will win further brilliant victories in their struggle against US aggression and for national salvation.

Long live the indestructible militant friendship and solidarity between the Korean and Cambodian peoples!

Long live the National United Front of Kampuchea, with Samdech Norodom Sihanouk as its Chairman, and the Royal Government of National Union of Cambodia!

Long live the solidarity of the revolutionary peoples of Asia!

Long live the solidarity of the people of the world!
LET US STRENGTHEN THE MACHINE-TOOLS PRODUCTION CENTRE

Speech at a Consultative Meeting of the Managerial Workers of the Factories and Other Enterprises in the Kusong Area

September 4, 1971

On this occasion, we have inspected several machine factories in the Kusong area and found that these factories have done a great deal of work. The Kusong Machine-Tool Factory, in particular, has worked hard to increase the output of machine tools and has attained the capacity to produce 10,000 a year. This is a tremendous success.

Today, at this consultative meeting, I shall speak on some questions relating to consolidating the success in the production of machine tools and to strengthening the machine-tools production centre.

The most important task in carrying out the technical revolution proposed by our Party is to increase the production of machine tools. Without them it would be impossible to carry out the technical revolution successfully. We can say that the production of machine tools is the kingpin in the whole chain of the technical revolution.

We can only modernize local industry factories, put production on a steady basis, and thus improve the people’s standard of living rapidly by increasing the production of machine tools.

We have built a large number of local industry factories in many parts of the country during the past years, but the equipment of these factories has not yet been modernized. None of them, including the
confectionery mills and fruit processing factories, has been equipped with modern plant.

If we are to modernize the local industry factories, we must set up factories for the production of different kinds of single-purpose equipment and increase their output. By the single-purpose equipment factory we mean a factory which produces machines which specialize in the performance of a single function. In the Pyongyang Cornstarch Factory there are machines which pack caramel and other kinds of sweets in paper. A factory which produces such machines is called a single-purpose equipment factory.

We must build these factories in many parts of the country and produce large numbers of single-purpose machines of various kinds. Only then can we modernize confectionery mills, factories for processing fruit and other foodstuffs, as well as clothing factories, shoe factories and other daily necessities factories, and mass-produce high-quality goods.

During our current inspection tour of North Phyongan Province, we found that the clothes of women and children were unattractive. If we are to improve their clothing, we must produce sewing machines and many other kinds of tailoring equipment in large quantities and modernize clothing factories.

We have emphasized, for a long time, the need to refrain from supplying the people with maize in the form of unprocessed grains, but this practice is still going on in the districts of Kusong and Sakju in North Phyongan Province. If we are to supply the people with maize as a food ration, we must establish maize processing mills. At present, however, there are no modern mills of this kind, so that the people are obliged to crush the maize by means of millstones or primitive mills just as they did in the old days.

In order to provide the people with good food and good clothing, the provinces will have to build various single-purpose equipment factories. North Phyongan Province, for instance, has a population of several millions. If it is to feed and clothe all these people decently, it must have a fruit-processing equipment factory, a meat-processing
equipment factory, and a factory which produces facilities for the production of clothing, footwear, headgear and school requirements. It also needs a factory which manufactures refrigerators to store fish to be supplied to the people regularly as well as those for home use, and also a factory which makes TV sets which are necessary for the people’s cultural life. If we build such factories, we shall be able to produce various kinds of household utensils in whatever quantities we need, for we are expecting the Kim Chaek Iron Works to mass-produce hot-rolled and cold-rolled items in the future.

If every province is to establish single-purpose equipment factories, large quantities of machine tools are required. There will be no problem in establishing single-purpose equipment factories and producing single-purpose machines, provided we have machine tools. I saw the single-purpose equipment factory organized by the Ministry of Machine Industry No. 2 and an imported shoe factory with up-to-date equipment. There was nothing out of the ordinary about them.

If we produce a large number of machine tools, we shall be able to set up single-purpose equipment factories in each province during the Six-Year Plan period, mass-produce delicious and nutritious foodstuffs and high-quality daily necessities, and improve the people’s standard of living to a considerable degree.

If we produce a large number of machine tools, we can build up lorry and tractor repair centres and repair and power supply shops in large factories and other enterprises.

Since the number of lorries and tractors in the country areas continues to increase, a repair centre for these vehicles will have to be set up in each county, and an overhaul centre for several counties. And the repair and power supply shops of large factories and other enterprises should also be well equipped. These tasks require a large number of machine tools.

Machine tools are used for many other purposes. In our country a great deal of equipment now needs renovation, and many factories have to be extended or built. Our country is a peninsula, and so it must
have many ships. In order to build many ships we must extend the existing shipyards and build new ones. To do this and to operate them requires a large number of machine tools.

The increased production of machine tools will also bring us a large amount of foreign currency.

The *Kusong 3* lathe which is produced by the Kusong Machine-Tool Factory has won a good reputation abroad, and there is a large foreign demand for it. You say that you can produce 3,500 lathes of this type next year, and you can earn a large sum of foreign currency by exporting them.

If we produce 10,000 machine tools from the Kusong Machine-Tool Factory, another 10,000 from the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory, and still another 10,000 from other machine factories through a forceful campaign to increase the output of machine tools at the machine-tool factories, we shall be able to solve all the problems in the technical revolution and earn a great deal of foreign currency.

The Kusong Machine-Tool Factory must maintain the present production level of 10,000 machine tools a year and work hard to develop this success. The fact that the factory has attained this level has been made known to the public by the media; it must not fall short of the present level.

In producing 10,000 machine tools a year it is important to improve the quality of machines, increase their variety and produce a balanced quantity of different varieties.

At the news of the success made by the Kusong Machine-Tool Factory in attaining the production level of 10,000 machine tools, some faint-hearted people are said to have stated that the quality of machine tools produced from now on will drop, and that only lathes and drilling machines and other machine tools which are easy to make will be produced. That is why there must be no lowering of the quality of machine tools produced and no production of only those machine tools which are easy to manufacture.

If we are to set up a single-purpose equipment factory in each
province, to strengthen tractor and lorry repair plants and other repair centres, and to build new factories and enterprises, we must ensure a balanced production of different kinds of machine tools including lathes, drilling machines, gear cutters and grinders.

If you produce only such machine tools as lathes or drilling machines, it will be of little consequence, no matter how many you produce. In order to manufacture single-purpose equipment and produce spare parts necessary for the repair of lorries and tractors, gear cutters and grinders are indispensable. The Ministry of Machine Industry No. 1 must, therefore, make a detailed estimate of the national requirements of machine tools their varieties and quantities—and organize work carefully, so as to ensure the balance between the kinds of machines by specifying, for instance, which factory is to produce the complete range of gear cutters and which is to produce the range of grinders.

If we are to ensure the production of different kinds of machine tools necessary for the construction of single-purpose equipment factories and repair centres, we must build up a parent factory.

The equipment for the parent factory must even be obtained from abroad at the cost of foreign currency. We must not be niggardly with money to import the equipment for the parent factory. We can only mass-produce different kinds of machine tools so as to meet the needs of the various sectors of the national economy when we have a well-equipped modern parent factory.

You must not try to construct a parent factory from scratch, but build it up by extending an existing large machine-tool factory. As our experience with the Pukjung Machine Factory shows, if we add some buildings and equipment to existing factories, we shall be able to increase the variety of machines without too much difficulty. The Pukjung Machine Factory is now producing many kinds of engines, and as far as ranges of engines are concerned our country produces nearly all the kinds which are produced by foreign industrial countries.

In order to increase the variety of machine tools, we must extend the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory and the Kusong Machine-Tool
Factory. As for the range of grinders, these are now produced at the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory. So it would be a good idea to add some more buildings and equipment to this factory and let it produce enough grinders to meet the national demand.

When I visit factories and enterprises, I find that gear cutters are required everywhere. I was told that in all, six kinds of machine tools in the range of gear cutters are essential in our country. The Kusong Machine-Tool Factory should manufacture them. The Ministry of Foreign Trade must immediately import the five gear grinders and two bed grinders which are needed to equip the Kusong Machine-Tool Factory.

The Kusong Machine-Tool Factory must be provided with the necessary workers.

If it is to consolidate the success it has already achieved and to produce 10,000 machine tools every year, this factory will have to be allocated additional workers.

In connection with the problem of manpower for this factory, it must be decided whether it is preferable to let the supporting work hands from other factories and enterprises stay there or to send them back where they came from and appoint new men in their place. It seems advisable to send the supporting men back to their own factories and enterprises and appoint discharged soldiers to the machine-tool factory.

If the supporting workers were to stay at this factory, there is the first problem of housing. I think many of the supporting workers have homes. If the Kusong Machine-Tool Factory was to give the supporting men permanent jobs, it would have to build hundreds of flats at one time, and this would be a very difficult task for the factory to perform.

Moreover, when it was receiving the supporting men, the Kusong Machine-Tool Factory promised that it would send them back by April 15 next year. The factory must keep its word.

The Kusong Machine-Tool Factory must be allocated discharged soldiers and train them well to be the hard core of the factory. It should
organize intensive work of passing on technical skill to the new men so as to help them to improve their technical knowledge and skill quickly. The supporting men from other factories and enterprises should be sent back when the newly appointed discharged soldiers have attained a considerable degree of technical knowledge and skill.

In addition, we must solve the problem of housing for the workers. On this occasion we have learned that the housing shortage is a problem not only for the workers of the Kusong Machine-Tool Factory but also for those of the Kusong Textile Mill and other workers of Kusong in general. We must see that housing construction is undertaken on a large scale in Kusong so as to tackle the housing problem for the workers.

The state will supply cement and steel rods needed for the construction of these homes. Since it has a concrete building materials works, Kusong will be able to build as many houses as it needs by its own efforts provided that it is supplied with cement and steel rods.

There is a large stockpile of cement, but because of the shortage of transport it is not immediately sent to some places where it is needed. The railway’s failure to do this is due to the shortage of covered wagons to carry bulk cement. Because of this, the railway cannot ship cement when it rains; so cement transport has to cease during the rainy season every year.

As I have said more than once, if we are to solve the problem of cement transport, we must manufacture covered wagons with removable roofs. If these roofs are removable, they can carry cement with them on, and on their way back after unloading cement, they will pick up other loads with their roofs removed. This will eliminate the practice of running empty on their return journey after unloading cement.

Cement can also be packed in sticking or something of that kind for transportation.

In some countries, nitrogenous fertilizer is now used in the form of liquid ammonia for maize cultivation, and this liquid is said to be carried in rubber bags. If liquid ammonia is transported in tanks by rail or by road, the vehicles will have to make empty runs on their way
back. But if it is carried in rubber bags, the vehicles will be able to carry other loads in addition to the bags. This will be beneficial. Likewise, if cement is transported in rubber sacks or something like that, there will be no need for specialized rolling stock for the shipment of cement, and empty runs will be eliminated. Both the railway and other sectors must try hard to solve the problem of cement transportation.

The houses to be built in Kusong must not be too high.

In Pyongyang high-rise buildings are constructed because the area of building land is limited, but in cities like Kusong there is no need to build dwellings too high. Lifts are not yet available for all dwelling houses, so those with too many storeys will present difficulties in getting to and from the top floors and will be inconvenient in many other respects. That is why even in Pyongyang high-rise buildings are constructed only where central heating is available.

At the centre of Kusong, dwelling houses each with a suitable number of stories should be built since at the centre a street will have to be laid out.

For the workers of the machine factories located in the outskirts of the city, two to three-storeyed houses should be built like the ones in Songnim, rather than higher ones. Since the machine factories in the outskirts of Kusong generally happen to be located in valleys, the Songnim-type dwelling houses will be better-looking and more convenient than high-rise buildings. Two to three-storeyed Songnim-type houses should be built in Paegun, too.

Cement should not be supplied for the construction of Songnim-type dwellings. The building materials for the construction of this type of dwelling must be obtained through local efforts by the provinces, cities and counties concerned either by establishing brickfields or by making blocks from slag. In the future, the Songnim-type dwellings should be built by local efforts on the responsibility of the chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees concerned.

The homes of the workers of the Kusong Machine-Tool Factory
should be built in the heart of the city near the textile mill rather than near the machine-tool factory. This is advisable because most of the wives of the men of this machine-tool factory go to work in the textile mill.

It must be a consistent policy to build workers’ houses near their wives’ workplaces. At present, however, the officials concerned have loaned them near the husbands’ workplaces, so that women have to go a long way to work. This is wrong. In Pyongyang now dwelling houses are located near women’s workplaces even if these houses have to be far away from the workplaces of their husbands. In Kusong, too, the houses of men whose wives work in the textile mill should be moved closer to the mill. Since men go to work alone, without having to take children with them, there is no problem even if their workplaces are a little further away. Since the men of the machine factory work standing beside their machines, walking will promote their health.

Kusong must solve its passenger transport problem.

In this city are the machine-tool factory with the capacity of producing 10,000 machine tools, a textile mill with 100,000 spindles and many other large factories and enterprises. Kusong with many industrial establishments and a large industrial population must take proper steps to provide means of travel to and from their work.

This city should be provided with some buses. The Ministry of Machine Industry No. I must produce bus engines or Sungni 58 lorry engines for the city so that it can assemble its own buses.

Commuter train service should also be organized to solve this city’s passenger transport problem. The factories in this city are dispersed over a wide area, and some of them are very far from the city centre, so that many workers have to travel a long way to and from work. Buses alone are not enough to provide transport for the workers who are living far away from their workplaces.

If a commuter train makes approximately four runs a day between Paegun and Panghyon, the men’s problem of going a long way to and from work will be solved completely. If this commuter train service is available, the manpower problem will be solved reasonably because
the residents of Kusong can go to work in factories located in Paegun or Panghyon and vice versa.

Couple about four passenger coaches to a locomotive, and they will make a commuter train. The state should supply the engine for the purpose. The Ministry of Railways must use it to build a locomotive and run the commuter train service.

You should make a comprehensive estimate of the total number of buses required by Kusong by taking into consideration the available commuter train service, of the number of existing buses, and of the number to be supplied, and then take the necessary, steps. Since Kusong has a large industrial population, it will be difficult for small buses alone to provide sufficient transport; it must be given some large ones.

At present, the machine-tool factory, the textile mill and some other factories and enterprises in the city are said to have their own buses, but it would be advisable to put them all under the unified management of the city.

Next, the supply service for the workers has to be improved.

First of all, you must supply them with an adequate amount of vegetables.

If the workers are to get an adequate supply of vegetables, each of the factories should take responsibility for a cooperative farm, help it to introduce sprinkler irrigation, collect human feces for the farm so that the farm can increase the output of vegetables while continuing to produce grain. If they give active assistance to the cooperative farms in this way, the workers will get an adequate supply of vegetables.

We must see that the people are supplied with fish regularly.

Although a large quantity of fish is caught at present, the supply is not satisfactory because cities and counties have no proper refrigerating facilities. To ensure a regular supply of fish for the people, you must build refrigerated plants at city administration centres and county towns and equip shops with refrigerators. At the moment these facilities are not available and fish storage is impossible, so that fish have to be supplied all immediately on arrival. I was told
that nowadays so much fish is being supplied to this city that the people are tired of eating it.

The irregular supply of fish is due to the fact that the chief secretaries of city and county Party committees are inefficient in their work. Kusong has the machine-tool factory and other large machine factories, but it has not yet built a refrigerated plant. Taegwan County claims to have built a refrigerated plant, but it is not yet operating it on the grounds that it has difficulty in obtaining seamless tubes and so on.

Refrigerated plants should be built as soon as possible at city administration centres, and in county towns and districts with a large industrial population so as to facilitate the regular supply of fish to the people.

The shortage of seamless tubes is the biggest problem in the construction of refrigerated plants. The present national demand for seamless tubes needed for the construction of refrigerated plants amounts to thousands of tons. So I recently instructed the Cabinet officials that seamless tubes should be supplied on a preferential basis to large fishing ports, central counties, and counties with a large industrial population.

At all costs, fish should be supplied regularly to Kusong, Taegwan County and Sakju County since they have a large industrial population and since these workers are living in the mountains. We must supply some materials to Kusong and Taegwan County so as to help them with the rapid completion of the refrigerated plants which have yet to be finished. In addition, Kusong, Taegwan County and Sakju County should each be provided with one refrigerated van or, perhaps two, so as to deliver fish regularly to the industrial districts and shops which are far from refrigerated plants.

The railway sector says that it will organize five refrigerator trains before the end of this year, and when these are finished we are going to allocate one of them to permanent service in North Phyongan Province. If the refrigerator train is made to run first to Sinuiju, and then to Kusong and Sakju, fish will be carried once in each direction every week, and the people will be able to get a regular supply of fish.
The chicken plants must increase their egg production to supply the workers with sufficient eggs.

At present, the rate of egg production at the Taegwan Chicken Plant is said to be 70 to 80 per cent, and this is a very high level.

This plant says that it raised the rate of egg production by working properly with its people. Efficient work amongst the people is very important everywhere. So in *On Some Theoretical Problems of the Socialist Economy*, I said that if the masses were stimulated to revolutionary enthusiasm through efficient work amongst the people, through effective political work, production could be developed steadily at a high rate. As the experience of some countries shows, if the work amongst the people, the political work, is neglected, people will hate work, and if this happens production will stagnate, instead of making progress.

The Taegwan Chicken Plant must erect a few more buildings and increase egg production. These can be built without great difficulty by making blocks of weathered granite to make walls and by cutting and sawing caterpillar-eaten pine trees and using them as rafters. Even if the chicken plant buildings are built of wood, there will be no danger of fire breaking out since no flame is used to disinfect and since no fire is made to heat the plant.

In the initial days of chicken plants, the people in this sector were inexperienced and considered chicken raising something of a mystery and regarded periodical flame disinfection as indispensable. But you can dispense with flame disinfection if you obtain healthy breeding hens through careful selection, and if you prevent chicken diseases from infiltrating by efficient anti-epizootic work.

At one time in the past, the Kusong Chicken Plant had trouble because of chicken diseases, and that was because the managerial workers, given to fame-seeking and impatient to succeed more quickly than other plants, had brought breeding hens at random from anywhere. This was also the case with the Hamhung Chicken Plant, which for this reason once suffered a lower egg yield than other plants. The level of egg production at the Kusong Chicken Plant has now risen
sharply. This plant should increase egg production further and offer
them on sale at both shops and markets.

Since the Kusong Machine-Tool Factory has done great work, and
since other machine factories in the Kusong district have done a good
job, the state must comply with all the requests made by these factories.

The capacity to produce 10,000 machine tools a year attained by both
the Kusong Machine-Tool Factory and the Huichon Machine-Tool
Factory has solved a big problem in carrying out the three major tasks of
the technical revolution. This is, indeed, a matter for rejoicing.

Now that machine tools are produced in large quantities, success in
carrying out the three major tasks of the technical revolution depends
on how the chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees and the
senior officials in charge of provincial administrative and economic
establishments develop their work. All the officials must give a
powerful impetus to their work in a high revolutionary spirit.

In conclusion. I wish to mention the matter of working efficiently
among the people with complex backgrounds.

At present, this work is not being done efficiently, with the result
that the people who can be rallied behind our Party are frequently
given a wide berth or discriminated against.

On my recent visit to Yaksu-ri, Chongsong County, I met the ri
Party secretary and the chief secretary of the county Party committee
there and learned about their problems in their work with the people
with complex backgrounds. In Yaksu-ri people’s social origin was not
defined correctly and people were misjudged, so that people who
presented no great problem were being distrusted and politically
discriminated against.

A man in Yaksu-ri, Chongsong County, owned a few hectares of
forests and some 1,800 phyong of non-paddy fields in the past and was
fairly prosperous. His land was very arid, so he gave it to his
brother-in-law before liberation, and he himself engaged in
slash-and-burn farming. But after liberation, the land given his
brother-in-law was registered as confiscated land because he had not
cultivated it himself, and his social origin was defined as rich farmer.
He has four sons and, their family backgrounds being defined as rich farmer, these children were being shunned in their political life one way or another.

It was mistaken in the first place that the social status of the family was defined as rich farmer, and the affairs of his sons, too, had been mishandled. So I told the chief secretary of the county Party committee and the ri Party secretary to visit the man’s home that very evening and apologize to them for defining their social origin as rich farmer and for shunning them, and also to settle the affairs of the sons.

The chief secretary of the county Party committee and the ri Party secretary paid a visit to the man’s home that evening and told the gathering of the family that the Premier, being briefed about the question of his family, had said that the social origin of the family was defined incorrectly, that the man’s sons should not be discriminated against in their political life, that they should even be admitted to the Party if they worked well, and that the youngest son, though too old, should be recruited into the People’s Army if he wished it. I was told that on that evening all the family were too moved to tears by the unexpected event to go to sleep and early the next morning came to the ri Party committee and resolved that none of them would ever fail to prove worthy of the Premier’s kindness by working faithfully until the last moment of their lives.

A man in Yaksu-ri served in the People’s Army for seven years after his enlistment at the time of the Fatherland Liberation War, and after discharge he has been doing a good job as a lorry driver. But his uncle is said to have lost several thousand phyong of land through confiscation at the time of land reform, and his wife’s brother, who had been a small shopkeeper before liberation, is said to have fled to south Korea after liberation because he had thought he would find himself in an unfavourable situation because of being a shopkeeper in the past. For this reason the man was not admitted to the Party, although he had served in the army and is working well. So I told the ri Party secretary that if he goes on working enthusiastically in support of Party policy and applies for Party membership, he should
be given proper training and be admitted to the Party.

From these examples it is clear that ri Party secretaries and chief secretaries of county Party committees do not know how to analyse all problems from the class point of view and how to work properly amongst different sections of the masses in accordance with Party policy.

To trust the people with complicated backgrounds and ease their problems when they work well and support our Party ardently is neither an act of a Right capitulator nor the weakening of the class struggle. It is an efficient class struggle to win over as many of the people with complicated backgrounds as possible and unite them closely behind our Party. Rejecting and shunning the people who work faithfully and follow us, allegedly to intensify the class struggle, is not, on any account, an example of skilful class struggle.

I think there are some people who are working honestly and yet suffer political discrimination because of their social origin, not only in Yaksu-ri but in the factories and enterprises and rural communities here in Kusong district.

If anyone with a complicated background frankly tells the Party about his family background and the records of his political life, is working faithfully now, supports our Party sincerely and is ready to follow it to the end, we must trust him in spite of his complicated background and settle the outstanding political problems. If we do this, such people will be very happy and do a better job and make many innovations in production.

In a few days we are going to give a demonstration lesson on the problems in work amongst people with complicated backgrounds in the factories and other enterprises and rural communities in Kusong and on how to settle these problems. The secretaries of the Party committees of the factories and enterprises and the ri Party secretaries must attend the meeting, fully prepared to make a concrete report on the problems in their work amongst people with complicated backgrounds, problems which are difficult for them to settle on their own.
Comrades,

On behalf of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea and the Government of the Republic I should like first to express my warm thanks to you comrades who are serving on the commercial front.

On this occasion, I am going to speak about some tasks in developing socialist commerce in our country.

1. THE ADVANTAGES OF SOCIALIST COMMERCE IN OUR COUNTRY

Socialist commerce is infinitely superior to its capitalist counterpart.

One of its greatest advantages is the fact that it serves the workers, farmers and other sections of the working masses.

Capitalist commerce serves the exploiting and privileged classes and aims at making profits. In a capitalist society, therefore, rich
people can eat and live well, but poor people have to go about in rags and starve. In contrast, socialist commerce serves the interests of workers, farmers and working intellectuals and gives them an equal opportunity to eat, dress and live well. This is an essential difference between socialist and capitalist commerce.

Another advantage of socialist commerce is that it contributes to eliminating the differences between the urban and rural areas.

Capitalist commerce sells manufactured goods to rural inhabitants at high prices and buys agricultural products at low prices, so that the urban community exploits the rural community and that the latter lags behind the former. But socialist commerce contributes to removing the backwardness of rural communities and reducing the gap between the urban and country areas through the purchase of agricultural products and the supply of industrial products. In our country in particular, there is no difference in prices anywhere—between urban and country areas—as a result of the establishment of a uniform price system.

There is another essential difference between socialist and capitalist commerce, a difference with regard to the commodities themselves.

Capitalists produce showy goods, which are not substantial, so as to deceive buyers, and they sell them whether they are good or harmful to people, in order to make as much profit as possible. In a socialist society, however, it is essential to mass-produce and supply goods which are durable, beneficial and indispensable to the people.

Unlike capitalist commerce which seeks profits, socialist commerce thus serves the promotion of the well-being of the workers, farmers and other working people. In a nutshell, we can say that it is supply work to the working people.

The capitalist commercial system was abolished in our country a long time ago.

Our efforts to eliminate capitalist commerce began with the organization of consumers’ cooperatives in the days immediately after liberation. We organized large numbers of them and let them compete with the private commercial sector. We also adopted a policy of extending the state commercial sector on a large scale on the one hand
and, on the other, transforming the private sector on socialist lines and worked tirelessly to carry this out. As a result, the capitalist commercial sector had ceased to exist in our country by 1957-58, more than ten years after liberation. From then onwards, only the socialist commercial system has operated in our country.

Our country now meets the needs of the working people for goods by means of domestic production, and the quality of goods has improved considerably.

We have pursued the policy of providing the people with homemade consumer goods ever since liberation rather than import them from other countries. This is a consistent policy of our Party. Our efforts in this direction over the past twenty odd years have achieved a great deal of success.

Today, no foreign goods are on sale in our shops, and all the consumer goods for our people are homemade, although their quality is not very high. Japanese and American commodities are now flooding many parts of the world, but not our country. Foreign visitors to our country admire this. It is our great pride and a great victory which we have achieved in building socialism.

It is true that our goods are not yet sufficient to meet the people’s requirement both in terms of variety and quality. We can say that this is an inevitable consequence of the 36 years of colonial rule by the Japanese imperialists. Their policy of obliterating our national industry in those years restricted the development of our light industry excessively and even ruined our handicraft industry. Therefore, we had to build light industry from scratch after liberation. Because our light industry is young, the technical level of the workers in this sector is not high, nor has this industry equipped itself with all the necessary facilities. It is not supplied with adequate amounts of raw materials and other necessities, either. Within a few years, however, its technical equipment will improve and the technical level of the workers will rise, and, consequently, the quality of consumer goods will improve. Then, we shall be able to meet the needs of the working people for consumer goods more successfully.
This is not all that we have achieved in developing socialist commerce.

According to the Party’s policy of bridging the gap in commodity distribution to urban and country areas, the commercial network has been extended to all the 2i, and goods are sold at uniform prices in both towns and rural communities. In the past farmers had to buy goods from peddlers at high prices or they had to carry their farm products to county and sub-county towns and barter them for manufactured goods. But this practice disappeared from our country a long time ago.

It is true that peasant markets still exist. As On Some Theoretical Problems of the Socialist Economy points out, the peasant market will disappear gradually as the quantity and variety of goods increase in step with the development of socialist industry, but it will remain in existence for a fairly long time. Even now it plays only a secondary role in the supply of consumer goods to the working people. Farmers do not have to go a long way to buy industrial goods. This is also another great victory we have achieved in the development of socialist commerce.

2. SOME TASKS IN IMPROVING THE SUPPLY OF CONSUMER GOODS TO THE WORKING PEOPLE

Although the socialist commercial system has been established in our country, consumer goods are not supplied efficiently to the working people according to the system, at present. Our commercial workers have not yet prepared themselves ideologically, technically and professionally in line with the socialist commercial system.

The low level of their ideological preparedness is revealed in various ways. The goods displayed for sale, for instance, are not neat and attractive; they are displayed carelessly. Seaweed and other marine
products would look attractive and palatable if they were arranged neatly, but they are not. Quite a lot of goods are damaged or become unusable because of careless storage, careless packing, and careless transportation. On my personal guidance tour of provinces I used to visit local shops and find that apples and pears and other fruit were heaped on the floor in some shops. Even potatoes must not be handled like that, still less fruit. How can they have any commercial value, if they are left to roll about on the floor?

The comrade who has just spoken at this meeting is ideologically well prepared to serve the people. I think her manner of work is communistic. But commercial workers in general are not prepared ideologically so well as this comrade. Many of them are working carelessly.

Our country has now all the facilities needed to remove the differences between urban and rural communities in the supply of goods, and to provide all the working people with equal shares of them. But commercial workers are not doing this satisfactorily.

One of our major commercial problems which must be solved is that of supplying food for the working people. Today, this work is not being done as required by the socialist commercial system.

Let me take an example of vegetable supply.

When it is a good vegetable season in Pyongyang, Kaesong or Haeju, few vegetables are available in Jagang, Ryanggang or North Hamgyong Province for one month or two. It is common knowledge that vegetables mature earlier in the southern area and later in the northern region because of the different weather conditions. Commercial workers ought to take steps to supply vegetables produced in Pyongyang, Kaesong or Haeju in early spring to the workers of Jagang, Ryanggang or North Hamgyong Province. Only a little effort will be enough for them to have vegetables cultivated on a large scale in the southern region and then supply them to the workers in Kanggye, Jonchon, Manpho and Huichon or to those in Chongjin, Hoeryong and other parts of North Hamgyong Province. Conversely, they will be able to ship vegetables from these areas to South Hwanghae Province or Kaesong in August and September when
vegetables are scarce in these southern districts until they can produce autumn vegetables. In addition, if they plan an appropriate amount of vegetables to be stored fresh, and the amount of radishes to be sliced and dried and other vegetables to be dehydrated for supply when vegetables are scarce, by taking into account how long the summer and autumn vegetables will last, and if they organize work in detail, they will be able to supply sufficient amounts to the working people in and out of season.

We can say the same about the problem of fruit supply.

At present, hundreds of tons of fruit are on sale in Pyongyang every day, but it is so scarce in places like Huichon or Sakju that it is not supplied properly even to train passengers. Twenty tons a day will be enough for these passengers. It does not matter if the fruit for train passengers is a little more expensive than usual because it costs a little more for storage and transport. If fruit is available to the passengers, their journey will be so much more pleasant, even if the fruit is a little expensive.

Our country is not in such straitened circumstances that it cannot even afford to sell fruit to travellers. Before liberation, the area of orchards in our country was scarcely 10,000 hectares, but now it is nearly 200,000 hectares, of which as many as 70,000 hectares bear fruit. If they try, the commercial workers will be able to sell fruit not only to train passengers but to the people in Ryanggang and Jagang Provinces.

A few words more about the problem of fish supply.

We have already created the conditions which permit us to supply fish to the working people regularly. Our catch of pollack during a single winter exceeds 300,000 tons. This alone is enough to ensure the daily supply of 100 grammes per head of the population for six months. One hundred grammes per head means 500 grammes for a family of five, and this amount will constitute a substantial ingredient for soup or stew for the daily meals of the family. Because of inefficient supply, however, pollack are scarcely available when their season is over, although there are plenty of them in season.
The present inefficiency in the supply of food for the working people is, of course, due in part to the fact that our food processing is underdeveloped. But you can supply fish, fruit and vegetables to the working people much better than now, simply by organizing this work carefully, quite apart from processing.

Recently, the supply of fish to the Kangson and Kiyang districts has been improved, and the working people there are said to be very happy about it. Fish have been supplied every day to the Kangson district at the rate of 100 grammes per head of the population. I was told that, at first, women bought them in bulk, but this practice has ceased now that fish are supplied daily. Why should they buy a large amount at a time since they can buy them whenever they go shopping? I have heard that the volume of fish sales in the Kangson district has considerably decreased from what it was at first.

This convinces us that, if we organize work well, we can supply fish to the working people in all seasons, without shops running out of stock even with the present catch of fish.

At present, commercial workers are not trying to improve the supply of foodstuffs also because they are afraid of incurring a loss by shipping vegetables, fruit, fish and other highly perishable items from place to place. This is a mistaken attitude. Is it an attitude worthy of the commercial workers who serve the people not to transport these supplies over a long distance for fear of their natural decrease? The state has taken appropriate steps to ensure that commercial agencies do not incur any loss from the sale of these items which are transported over a long distance.

The problem does not lie in the high rate of natural decrease in the amounts of such items, but in the vestiges of the outdated ideas in the minds of the commercial workers, in the absence of an attitude to serve the people and take the responsibility for the people’s living conditions, that is, in the lack of the working-class spirit, the spirit of serving the people. Our commercial workers ought to feel sympathy for the workers in Kanggye for whom vegetables are not available when those in Pyongyang are eating them; they must feel remorse for
their being unable to supply fruit to the workers in Chongjin when those in Kaesong are eating it. But some of the commercial workers are devoid of these feelings.

Jagang Province is not very far from Pyongyang; it is only five to six hours’ rail journey to the province. Many of the workers in that province are those who went to work there from Pyongyang in line with the Party’s policy of evacuating factories during the Fatherland Liberation War. Living in a place where the temperature drops to 30 or 40 degrees C below zero, the people who are used to a mild climate will not lack difficult problems. But there they are faithfully carrying out the tasks given by the Party by living up to the Party’s policy. The commercial workers must, as a matter of duty, improve the supply service for them. The workers in North and South Hamgyong Provinces or Kangwon Province, coastal provinces, receive fairly good supplies of fish, but those in Jagang Province cannot even obtain these supplies properly. This weighs on my mind whenever I see them.

The officials in charge of the railways, the fishing industry and fruit culture as well as those in the commercial sector must realize that they should be held responsible for the undesirable situation in the supply of vegetables, fruit and fish to the working people.

Most of our senior officials came from among the working class. In the exploiting society in the past, the capitalists lived in luxury, but the working class was subjected to oppression and ill-treatment. We promoted the people of working-class origin to be cadres in the hope that they would serve the working class and the rest of the people loyally, with a good understanding of the feelings of the working class, and without forgetting their situation in the past when they had been oppressed and mistreated. But, in the course of their long tenure of office, they seem to have forgotten all their wretched past when they could not afford to eat an apple. Trains go to and from Jagang Province several times every day and there is even an airline service to and from there. So, if they are set on the task, officials can bring fruit, vegetables and similar items to the market there in whatever quantities are needed.
If they make an effort, the commercial workers will even be able to supply choice items to the province regularly.

If a family, for instance, is supplied with a pot of pickled shrimps, pollack roe, shellfish or other similar pickled items, this will be enough to last for several months since these foodstuffs are eaten very little at a time, and not as much as bean paste is. If the officials in charge of the commercial sector show concern and organize work efficiently, things like pickles can be supplied to the people regularly in the quantities they need. But they do not work hard to procure a variety of pickled items for the working people, nor are the officials of the fishing industry interested in producing pickled fish, being preoccupied with the catching of fish.

If the commercial workers are really resolved to serve the people with all their hearts, they will be able to sell chestnuts and sweet potatoes to the people at all times. Our country is noted for its chestnuts. But not many of them are on sale in the shops. In the past, baked sweet potatoes used to be on sale in many places, but nowadays even these things are seldom seen.

The scarcity of chestnuts and other special items for sale is due to the inefficient procurement of foodstuffs.

At present, procurement workers do not try to buy a variety of food items, and, worse still, they are hard to please in approaching the people. It makes no difference to them whether they procure a large amount or a small amount; they are not given much stimulus. They will receive wages and food supplies and educate their children even if they are not good at procurement. So they do not work diligently to improve their work, and they are unreasonably over-particular in their dealings with farmers.

Farmers are not interested in gathering chestnuts now, and it seems to me that this is mainly because procurement workers are careless. The state priced chestnuts high, but few of the people we have met have sold their chestnuts at state prices. We asked the reason, and they replied that they have to sell them at low prices because the buyers assess the grades of the fruit low. Since their work of gathering the fruit
and selling it is not very rewarding, nobody wants to gather it.

We believe that the production of chestnuts will increase quickly if this fruit is priced still higher so that the farmers take as good care of their chestnut groves as the Changsong people do their red-pepper crop. Red-pepper cultivators can earn 8,000 won if they produce one ton of dried red pepper from one hectare, and 16,000 won if they produce two tons from one hectare. Their incomes from the cultivation of this crop are so high that the Changsong people tend their red-pepper fields with every care.

I think that, if the chestnut procurement price is much higher than that of rice, cooperative farms will make great efforts to tend chestnut trees well. They say that they cannot tend them because of the shortage of labour, but this is not really the case. They do not allocate labour to this work because they are not interested in it. Some comrades say that chestnuts cannot be priced higher than rice. But we must not compare them as they do. Chestnuts are not consumed all the time as rice is; they are needed a little at a time only when the appetite is not good, when one is not in good health or when travelling. So it does not matter if they are bought and sold at rather high prices. Also, there will be no harm in raising their procurement prices because it will increase the farmers’ incomes and help them to live well.

At present, blueberries are also scarce, and this is also due mainly to the fact that no one is interested in picking them because of their low price.

During our anti-Japanese armed struggle, we used to pick and eat blueberries on Mt. Paektu, and we know that they are a very delicious wild fruit. They are also eaten a few at a time, just sparingly for their good taste. It is a good idea to pick them carefully and sell them raw or process them into jelly for the market. Then, people will buy them and eat them as a choice fruit or serve them to their visitors as a special product of Mt. Paektu. How good that would be!

If anyone thinks that the working people in a socialist society can get along with only rice and bean paste soup and can dispense with choice food, he is grossly mistaken. The socialist system must be
incomparably superior to the capitalist system with regard to the people’s diet as well. If the commercial workers in our country today make a little more effort, they will be perfectly able to provide the people with a greater variety of diet.

If they organize supply services well with a communist attitude as required by the socialist commercial system, the officials in charge of the commercial sector will be able to ensure the regular supply of vegetables, fruit, fish, pickles, chestnuts and similar items in all seasons, and there will always be rich stocks of food in the shops. Then, the people will be better off and happier.

A capitalist society is a society where only a minority of rich people can live well. In that society every shop is full of goods, and superficially, everything may look affluent, but the working people, the overwhelming majority, cannot afford to buy them, no matter how many there are, and they have to starve and go about in rags.

By contrast, in our country conditions exist for all the working people to eat and live equally well. In a capitalist country people who have no money are destined to die of hunger, whereas in our country the people are supplied with food by the state from the day they are born, and, moreover, the state buys food grain at high prices from the farmers and supplies it to the factory and office workers virtually free of charge. This is only done in our country.

Furthermore, we have priced vegetables and eggs and similar items low so that every one of the working people can buy an equal share of non-staple foodstuffs. As a result, everyone in our country can eat rice to his fill and also get adequate supplies of soya sauce, bean paste, vegetables, fish, cooking oil and so on. In our country, the food problem was solved a long time ago, and now we are working hard to feed the people better. We are going to increase the production of eggs, chicken and pork for the people. One of the major objectives of the Six-Year Plan with respect to the people’s living standards is to supply sufficient amounts of meat to the people.

Today our country has the potential to supply an adequate variety of foodstuffs to the working people in all seasons. The problem is that
commercial workers are not thinking and acting in line with the socialist commercial system. Therefore, in order to develop the food trade further and improve supply services for the working people, it is necessary, first of all, to intensify the ideological struggle and eradicate the remnants of outdated ideas from the minds of the commercial workers.

If the supply of food is to be improved, it is also necessary that there should be changes in its production sector.

Food must be palatable and attractively packed. But the confectionery now being produced is neither tasty nor attractive, so it cannot stimulate the appetite. Food packing is not good, either. Boxes for packing drops and envelopes for biscuits can be made attractive quite easily, but they are made carelessly. In future, the workers in the food industry must try hard to produce wholesome and delicious foodstuffs and improve packaging.

Innovations must also be made in the transport of goods.

We always say that separate trains should be made up to carry foodstuffs, and that each of the passenger trains bound for Jagang, Ryanggang and North Hamgyong Provinces should also have one or two wagons attached for the transport of food. Then, the people in Chongjin and Hyesan can eat vegetables from early spring.

We must also take steps to use motor vehicles to transport those foodstuffs which are not suitable for rail transport or which need to be delivered urgently. As matters now stand, the transport of foodstuffs by rail requires an excessive time for formalities. If special motor vehicle convoys are organized, they will be able to carry food quickly to Sakju, Kanggye, Huichon and other similar places.

The commercial workers must thus increase their working-class spirit and people-oriented spirit, and the food industry workers and transport workers must cooperate with each other, so as to improve the food trade radically. In this way, the problem of the supply of non-staple food will be solved first, and then choice food will also be made available in and out of season. This is the first matter which I should like to emphasize to you today.
Next, the work of the wholesale agencies must be improved.

The wholesale agencies are an intermediary establishment which relays the consumer products from factories and other enterprises to the retail agencies. In other words, they receive goods from their producers and deliver them to shops, and as such they perform a very important duty. In spite of this, some executives of these agencies are given to bureaucratic practices and work carelessly. They delay the delivery of goods, handle them roughly at wholesale centres, and then deliver them when their seasons are over, so that these goods do not sell. They even send the goods intended for workers’ districts to rural communities.

Wholesale workers must intensify their ideological struggle and establish a strict system and order and, in particular, a well-disciplined system under which they order goods correctly and receive them on time and deliver them to retail agencies quickly.

To proceed, we must increase the number of facilities for public catering and communal amenities, modernize them and run them more hygienically.

It is very important to improve hygiene in restaurants, barbers’ shops, hotels and other service establishments. We have to manufacture facilities to disinfect tableware, automatic food carriers, automatic boilers and various other kinds of equipment needed to modernize restaurants and other public catering facilities and communal amenities and improve hygienic operations there. The state must ensure the construction of a factory to produce equipment for the public catering and other service networks.

Equipping restaurants well is very important in relieving women from their kitchen work, which is one of the major tasks that must be tackled during the Six-Year Plan. If well-equipped restaurants cook and serve wholesome and delicious food, they will attract many customers. It is not a bad idea for families consisting only of a wife and husband to eat at restaurants every day.

Restaurants should be increased in number and modernized so that wholesome food can be prepared using little labour. In addition, they
must specialize. A large city should only have a few restaurants which serve different kinds of food, but many speciality restaurants, for instance, in the service of rice-and-hot-soup, in noodles, in buns and tea, in milk and so on. A few buns filled with jam and a cup of tea will make a meal for you. Bakeries must also be modernized so as to mass-produce good-quality bread and develop a simple dietary system.

Dining cars must be well equipped so as to improve their service and cater for the convenience of the passengers.

Dressing women’s hair and cutting men’s hair are both very important in keeping people looking smart. So we must not neglect to equip hairdressers’ and barbers’ shops. Hair clippers which are not properly disinfected can spread skin diseases. So the barbers’ shops must be given adequate supplies of disinfectors and disinfectant and cosmetics.

Bathhouses must also be developed in a modern way. Individual shower-baths and separate bathing facilities should be made available for everyone, and bathrooms shared by many people at once should be abolished gradually.

Service facilities should be increased in historical places, pleasure grounds and other public places.

Mangyongdae and Ponghwa-ri are visited by large numbers of people. But there are few restaurants where rice or noodles are served, nor are there many shops which sell cider and other soft drinks. I was told that many people complain about this. Service facilities are not only inadequate in Mangyongdae and Ponghwa-ri, but also in the Taesongsan Pleasure Ground.

Many booths and restaurants should be set up in historical places and pleasure grounds, and many booths should be built near public places. Theatres should also be provided with snack bars where buns and tea are served.

The production of articles for children must be increased, and the network of services for them extended further.

We are fighting for the revolution and construction, and this is for our future, for the master of the future. Our Party spares nothing if it is
for the children, and it shows unremitting concern for providing them with better food and better clothing so that they grow up, romping about to their heart’s content, without envying anything in the world.

But our officials do not work hard to implement the Party’s policy. In consequence, sufficient food for children is not available to nurseries and kindergartens, nor are there enough clothes and other goods for children.

We must develop the processing of children’s food on a large scale and improve their food supply radically. The production of sweets with calcium ingredients must be increased, chestnut flour must be packed in small envelopes and supplied to nurseries, and adequate amounts of powdered milk and condensed milk produced for the children who are being weaned. Nurseries and kindergartens will have to be supplied liberally with convenient food items which can be poured from envelopes into water to make soup and other liquid food instantly, and with plenty of powdered apple, sand-eel meal, seaweed and various other kinds of foodstuffs which are needed to promote the health of children.

We must also increase the production of children’s clothes. At present, the Women’s Union is trying to organize women’s and children’s clothing factories, and this is a very good undertaking. The commercial network must also increase the production of children’s clothes. I have heard that adults’ clothes are made from remnants by the commercial sector. Certainly, this is not a bad thing. But it seems better to make clothes from remnants for the children of nurseries and kindergartens. If we increase the production of these children’s clothes and dress them well, both the children and their parents will be pleased, and the streets and villages will look much brighter.

We have to increase the number of barbers’ shops for children.

In conclusion, I should like to talk briefly about encouraging the commercial workers to feel that their work is honourable and about improving their social treatment.

Socialist commerce is not profit-making; it is a supply service for the people, and the commercial workers are entrusted with a very
important and honourable duty to take care of the people in a responsible manner. We still use the term commerce, and this is because commodity production still exists and because the law of value is still working and not because we identify the nature of socialist commerce with that of capitalist commerce.

Even in a communist society to which we are moving, the establishments in charge of supply work and of communal amenities will remain in existence. Of course, in that society monetary dealings such as we have now will give way to a form of free supply and free service. The manner of supplying consumer goods and of offering service may change, but the establishments which distribute and supply consumer goods and which render services will need to exist.

The workers in the commercial network, in the field of communal amenities, and in the procurement sector, must have a clear understanding of the importance of socialist commerce as well as a high sense of honour and pride in serving the people and in being responsible for their living conditions.

All consumer goods which are produced by the state are supplied to the people through commercial and distribution agencies. Therefore, whether the people are well off or not depends largely upon the role of the workers on the commercial front.

We can say that commercial workers in our society are what the sergeant major is to the army. Soldiers hold the sergeant major in high esteem. This is because he takes care of them in their everyday lives, in the provision of food, clothing and everything else. Just as the soldiers’ living conditions depend largely on the sergeant major, so the people’s living conditions depend largely on commercial workers. If commercial workers perform their duties well, the people will receive regular supplies of fish, vegetables and fruit; if they do not work well, the people will be unable to eat adequate amounts of non-staple food and will suffer a great deal of inconvenience in their lives.

Since the people who work in the commercial and distribution and other service sectors deal with a large number of their fellow men, they may find themselves in difficult situations. Some customers may say
that they do not like some goods in a shop, finding fault with one thing or another, and some people may complain of the food served in a restaurant. But you must not allow this to discourage you to lose the sense of honour in your work.

In view of the importance of commercial and distribution work the Party has established the system of the heads of political affairs departments in their sector. This system is aimed at improving political work for the commercial workers so that they think and act in keeping with the socialist commercial system. We must intensify political work for the commercial workers and convince them that they are the servants of the people and inspire them with a high sense of honour in serving the people.

In addition, we must pay attention to improving their social treatment. This means holding the commercial workers in social esteem, and not looking down upon them. Party organizations and working people’s organizations must educate the working people well so that they understand clearly that the commercial workers are precious people who are in charge of providing them with material facilities and so that they respect them in public.

I firmly believe that, after this conference, all the commercial workers will bring about a new change in their work of supplying goods to the working people and in providing them with communal amenities.
ON SOME PROBLEMS CONCERNING
THE INTERNAL AND EXTERNAL POLICIES
OF THE WORKERS’ PARTY OF KOREA
AND THE GOVERNMENT
OF THE REPUBLIC

Interview with the Managing Editor
of the Japanese Newspaper Asahi Shimbun
and the Correspondent of the Kyodo Press
September 25 and October 8, 1971

I am grateful to you for your visit to our country. You are most welcome guests.

Although it is our first meeting, the Chairman and Vice-Chairmen of Chongryon (the General Association of Korean Residents in Japan) are old friends of yours. The Chairman of Chongryon has asked me to receive you as friends. So we are receiving you not as journalists but as friends, as national guests. I hope you will consider today’s meeting not as an interview of journalists with a Premier but as a talk between friends, intimate friends.

You have given a great deal of help to the work of Chongryon and actively supported the repatriation work of Korean citizens in Japan and their struggle to defend their democratic, national rights. You are well-disposed towards the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, and have helped us in many ways; and you have been working hard to develop friendly relations between the Korean and Japanese peoples. Let me express my gratitude to you for all of that.
I received your questions through our organizations concerned. You have asked me various questions and I understand why. There has not been much contact between us, so you are unfamiliar with our country. And I think your questions are based on your desire to have a deeper understanding of many subjects. I regard your questions as well-intentioned.

Now, let me reply briefly to your questions.

First, on our socialist construction and the prospects of the Six-Year Plan.

As you know, it took us ten years to carry out the Seven-Year Plan. Having started in 1961, the Seven-Year Plan was supposed to be fulfilled in 1967. However, because of the prevailing situation, we ran three years behind.

In recent years the US imperialists strained the situation to the extreme by creating the Caribbean crisis and expanding their war of aggression in Viet Nam. Since they were intensifying their aggressions and war provocation, we had to increase our defence capacities by carrying out the line of self-defence, so as to guard our socialist achievements and the DPRK with our own efforts. Therefore, our Party put forward a revolutionary line of simultaneously carrying on the development of our economy and defences. To fulfil this line, we allocated large funds to defence, and so we needed more time to complete the national economic plan. This is what compelled us to extend the Seven-Year Plan by three years.

We carried out the Seven-Year Plan in a very difficult situation. The ever-increasing aggressive actions of the US imperialists and the blockade policy followed by them and the Japanese militarists against the DPRK presented many obstacles to our socialist construction. In addition, the complex situation which developed in the international communist movement also affected our socialist construction to a certain degree.

However, our people overcame all the difficulties and carried out the Seven-Year Plan successfully. Although it took ten years to fulfil the plan, our national economy developed very rapidly. In the past
decade during which the Seven-Year Plan was carried out, our industrial output grew by 12.8 per cent on an annual average. I think this is a very rapid rate of growth, compared with other countries. Our people are proud of this.

With the successful fulfilment of the Seven-Year Plan, the foundation of our independent national economy has been consolidated and a solid economic basis laid, which makes it possible to develop all branches of the national economy quickly.

The greatest success we achieved in the realm of industry during the Seven-Year Plan period was the further development of the Juche industry and rapid growth of industrial production. By Juche industry we mean an industry which emphasizes developing production, basically using our own raw materials. During the Seven-Year Plan period, thanks to our Party’s policy of building Juche industry, our industry took a giant stride forward. The machine-building industry, especially, developed rapidly.

A great success has also been achieved in agriculture.

The greatest achievement in this sector during this period was the completion of the irrigation system. We irrigated our paddy fields completely and also brought many non-paddy fields under irrigation. In the Six-Year Plan period we are going to complete the irrigation of all non-paddy fields also.

We have also completed the electrification of the country areas, so the whole country has now been electrified. I do not think there are many countries where electrification has been completed not only in towns but also in the rural areas.

The mechanization of agriculture has made considerable progress. Of course, it has not yet been completed because we have failed to realign all the plots of land and we are short of farm machinery.

Since we have not yet completed the mechanization of agriculture or introduced the widest use of chemicals, we have continued to develop agricultural production, firmly adhering to the principle that industry must assist agriculture and the towns must help the country areas. Formerly, our country lacked food. But, as a result of our Party’s
efforts for the development of agriculture, we have long been self-sufficient in food.

Fruit growing has also made rapid progress. Before liberation our country had less than 10,000 hectares of orchards. However, following the Pukchong Meeting of the Presidium of our Party Central Committee, we launched an all-out people’s movement to plant orchards. As a result, our area of orchards is now 200,000 hectares.

Our stockbreeding has also achieved a great success. During the last few years, in particular, we have been concentrating our efforts on the poultry industry, bringing about excellent results.

We have also accomplished a great deal in the development of culture. We have been carrying out a compulsory nine-year technical education for several years. In our country, every family subscribes to newspapers or magazines, and radios are available to all the working people.

Our people’s living standards have also risen considerably. Our great efforts directed to building our defences in the past somewhat hindered the improvement of their living conditions. However, their livelihood has been steadily improved. During the Seven-Year Plan period, we increased the production of consumer goods markedly by carrying through the Party’s line of simultaneously developing centrally controlled and local industries. It is true that the quality of our local industrial goods leaves room for improvement. However, as far as consumer goods are concerned, we are meeting the demand almost fully on our own, instead of relying on imports. In addition, with a view to improving the people’s living standards, our Party took radical steps in the Seven-Year Plan period to abolish the agricultural tax in kind.

On the basis of the successes which have been achieved in socialist construction, we have started the Six-Year Plan this year.

The Fifth Congress of the Workers’ Party of Korea convened last year set forth the programme of the Six-Year Plan and proposed three major tasks of the technical revolution as being the most important for the building of our socialist economy.
The first of these three tasks is to reduce the difference between heavy and light labour in the field of industry.

In our mining, forestry and other extractive industries the work is much harder than in other branches. We are going to deliver people from arduous work by introducing extensive mechanization and automation in these industries. Because the general level of mechanization is not yet high in our country, it is impossible to complete this task under the Six-Year Plan. But as the saying has it, “Well begun is half done,” and if we get down to this job, starting with the extractive industries, I think we shall be able to mechanize and automate all the present backbreaking and labour-consuming work gradually.

The second task is to accelerate the rural technical revolution so as to markedly reduce the distinction between agricultural and industrial labour.

In our country, agriculture is much more labour-consuming than industry is. If we are to free farmers from arduous work, we must promote agricultural mechanization and the wider use of chemicals and modernize farming. We are planning to narrow the gap between agricultural and industrial labour drastically during the Six-Year Plan period by accelerating the rural technical revolution and shall see to it that in most areas, ploughing, harvesting and all other kinds of farm work are done by machines.

Our Party adheres to the policy of eliminating the distinctions between town and country, and this policy can only be successfully implemented when the rural technical revolution is correctly carried out. It is possible to improve the farmers’ working conditions decisively, and introduce an eight-hour working day in farming as in industry, only through mechanization of agriculture and the wider use of chemicals. When farm work becomes easy and the general living standards in the countryside rise, the distinctions between town and country will become much narrower.

The third task is to carry out the technical revolution so as to emancipate women from the heavy burdens of household chores.
In order to emancipate women completely, it is necessary not only to guarantee them equal rights with men in accordance with the Law on Sex Equality, but also to provide conditions for them to participate freely in state and public activities.

In our country today many women go out into the world to work. Women account for 45.5 per cent of the total industrial work force. Our women are not merely made to work to solve the manpower problem. We get them to take part in social life and in the building of the nation, mainly for the purpose of revolutionizing and working-classizing them. If women simply stay at home, they become socially backward. Only when they take part in society to work and lead collective lives, will they be ideologically reformed and get revolutionary tempering. That is why our Party has continually encouraged women to participate in society.

We have adopted a number of measures to lessen the burdens of working women. Those who have many children enjoy benefits from the state; although they work six hours a day they are paid for eight hours. In addition, the state has built creches and kindergartens all over the country to help bring up the children.

This alone will not solve the whole problem, however. In order to solve women’s problems fully, we must go further and deliver them from the heavy burdens of household chores.

In order to do this, we are planning to increase state investments and undertake many projects. We are going to develop the food industry so that women can prepare meals easily; we also intend to lighten their household chores by building many clothing factories and laundries and producing large quantities of kitchen utensils. Furthermore, we are going to provide the country areas with running water so that women will no longer carry water jars on their heads.

In brief, the three major tasks of the technical revolution proposed by our Party are a sacred revolutionary task aimed at emancipating our working people from difficult, backbreaking work. In the Six-Year Plan period, we are going to raise our people’s living standards by fulfilling these three tasks.
The Six-Year Plan is being carried out satisfactorily in our country. We found the master key to the technical revolution in the production of machine tools. If we are to carry out this revolution, we need a very large number of machine tools. If we are to mechanize and automate the operations in mining and other fields which still require much arduous work, we must produce various kinds of machines and equipment. And if we want to mechanize our farming, we must develop tractor repair factories and spare parts plants, and produce all types of farm machines in larger quantities. Numerous machine tools are also needed if we are to develop the food industry. That is why we are putting the main emphasis on producing many machine tools in the first battle to make a breakthrough in the carrying out of the Six-Year Plan.

As you can see from our press reports, our machine-tool plants are making strenuous efforts to increase their production. Previously, the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory produced 2,500 machine tools annually, but now it can produce 10,000 through its dynamic efforts under the torch of technological innovations. Last August, this factory produced a variety of 850 machine tools and in September, the figure grew to 1,000. As for the Kusong Machine-Tool Factory, it used to produce no more than 1,400 machine tools a year. But last August it turned out 850 machine tools, so now its annual productive capacity has passed the 10,000 mark.

Our working class is seething with activity today. Everywhere they are increasing production quickly by actively introducing automation into production processes and rationally reorganizing production.

Our people’s fighting spirit convinces us that the Six-Year Plan will be carried out successfully.

In addition to the technical revolution, we consider the ideological and cultural revolutions to be major tasks.

You asked me what was the key to the rapid progress of socialist construction in our country. We have no particular key. We are promoting socialist construction by increasing the revolutionary zeal and activity of the working people.
If we are to succeed in building socialism and communism, we must occupy two fortresses—the material and the ideological. Some people consider that when the material foundation of socialism is basically laid, socialist construction is completed. However, we hold another opinion. The material basis alone cannot solve all the problems. Needless to say, in a communist society we shall be able to put into effect the principle whereby people work according to their ability and receive according to their needs. However, in the period of building socialism and communism, that is, in the period of transition from capitalism to socialism, we cannot even occupy the material fortress successfully, unless we firmly arm people ideologically and occupy the ideological fortress.

We oppose the tendency to concentrate on economic construction only, without giving people ideological education, as well as the tendency to lay stress solely on ideological work, disregarding economic work. That is why our Party always follows the principle of strenuously promoting the ideological and cultural revolutions as well as the technical revolution.

For a formerly backward country to advance rapidly, it is particularly important to give its people a proper ideological education. With a view to stepping up socialist construction in our country, we are steadily intensifying the politico-ideological education of the workers, farmers, working intellectuals and all other working people so that they can devote all their energy and talent to the construction of socialism.

In carrying out the ideological and cultural revolutions, it is very important to study hard. The whole nation has now acquired the habit of studying, guided by the slogan, “The entire people, the entire Party and the entire army must study!” All officials study more than two hours daily and, every Saturday, they study collectively. I study, and so do vice-premiers and ministers; and all managers and chief engineers of factories study hard. We have also established a system under which cadres study at regular educational institutes for one month every year. We ensure that Party officials study at Party schools, workers in economic fields at institutes of economics and diplomats at the
University of International Affairs. At these schools the officials improve their practical qualifications and technological levels, at the same time fighting to rid themselves of any unhealthy ideological tendencies.

We have designated the struggle to prevent the infiltration of bourgeois culture as an important task of the ideological and cultural revolutions. If the Western, Yankee culture is introduced, people suffer from it and become depraved ideologically. Therefore, in order to prevent the infiltration of the bourgeois, Yankee culture, we are exerting great efforts to develop our socialist literature and arts which are national in form and socialist and revolutionary in content. At the same time, we are intensifying the ideological education of the people so that they will remember their past when they were exploited and oppressed, take pride in socialism and have confidence in the future.

An important task of the cultural revolution is to improve our working people’s general technological and cultural qualifications. We are endeavouring to see that they acquire at least one technical skill and raise their level of general knowledge. We are going to introduce compulsory ten-year education in the future. Some schools have introduced it on a trial basis. We shall start this system next year and make it mandatory for all schools within a few years. In the future, many more newspapers and magazines of various kinds will be published for the working people.

Our Party intends to improve the people’s living conditions still more in the Six-Year Plan period. Our people are now leading happy lives without having to worry about food, clothing and housing. However, we cannot yet consider that our people’s living standards are high. So we are going to adopt a number of measures during the Six-Year Plan period to raise them equally. If we carry out the Six-Year Plan successfully and work hard for a few more years, our people’s living standards will rise markedly and they will enjoy as happy lives as any other people.

Second, let me touch on the question of Korea’s reunification.

Our people unanimously desire the independent peaceful
reunification of the country. The trend towards peaceful national reunification is greatly increasing not only amongst the people in the northern half of Korea but also amongst the south Korean people. This is clear from the fact that the south Korean students and other young people rise up almost every day in the fight against military manoeuvres and for peaceful reunification. This was also plainly revealed during the “presidential election” held in south Korea this spring.

In the last “election” south Korea’s opposition parties formed a coalition and challenged Park Chung Hee. The candidate of the New Democratic Party was about to defeat Park Chung Hee only to lose because of the latter’s fraudulent practices. In Seoul where the puppet rulers have massive police and army forces at their disposal, the opposition candidate beat Park Chung Hee by polling over 60 per cent of the votes, and in Jolla and other provinces, he also polled more votes. Had the “election” been conducted fairly, he might have been elected. Only through terrorism and fraud could Park Chung Hee again seize the “presidency”. The New Democratic Party candidate obtained so many votes at the “election” not because he is popular but because, during the “election” campaign, he came out with the slogan of peaceful reunification, which the people demand.

Some of his slogans were worthy of attention. He declared that if he came to power, he would not pursue a one-sided policy. In other words, he promised not only to maintain relations with the US and Japan but also to establish them with the Soviet Union and the People’s Republic of China. He also stated that he would dissolve the “homeland reserve forces”, abolish rule by secret police and reunify the country by peaceful means. These slogans enabled him to gain some popularity among the south Koreans.

The south Korean people’s support for the candidate of the New Democratic Party during the last “election” can, in the final analysis, be interpreted as a desire to reunify the country not by means of war but in a peaceful way as soon as possible.

The DPRK Government has on scores of occasions put forward
specific proposals for peaceful reunification, reflecting the unanimous desire and will of all the Korean people to reunify their country peacefully. This spring the Supreme People’s Assembly of the DPRK made an eight-point proposal for peaceful reunification, in which our previous proposals were succinctly stated. Specifically, in our speech on August 6, we reclarified our readiness to come into contact at any time with all the south Korean political parties including the Democratic Republican Party, social organizations and individual persons. You must be well aware of this.

Our proposal for peaceful reunification enjoys the unanimous support and approval of the entire Korean people.

In our country peaceful reunification is opposed only by a tiny handful of south Korean reactionary rulers. They do not want peaceful reunification; they imprison those who advocate it on a charge of violating the “Anti-Communist Law”, labelling them as “pro-communists”. Park Chung Hee is the most die-hard opponent of peaceful reunification.

It was only last year, as the trend towards peaceful reunification developed rapidly with an irresistible force amongst the south Korean people, that the south Korean rulers uttered the words “peaceful reunification” for the first time. But their “peaceful reunification plan” is least of all designed to reunify the country in a peaceful way. They claim that the reunification question can be discussed only at the end of the 1970’s, or a decade later, and advocate that they must “build up strength” until that time. In other words, they say that they will “build up strength” first and then reunify the country peacefully.

In the long run, this amounts to rejecting peaceful reunification. The country can be reunified peacefully if only both sides desire it and make concerted efforts. Is “building up strength” needed for peaceful reunification? This outcry of the south Korean puppet rulers is no more than an extension of the slogan of “reunification through domination over communism” which they always advocated.

We studied what kind of “strength” they would “build up”. By “building up strength” they mean to build up their might so as to
overwhelm us economically, politically and militarily. This is simply an illusion which is totally unrealizable.

First, if we view their “building up of strength” in a favourable light, it may be construed that they intend to compete with us economically.

But I am sure south Korea will never win an economic competition with the northern half of Korea. If south Korea develops its economy, we shall not be caught napping, without doing anything, shall we? The longer the period of time which elapses, the faster our economy will grow. To be honest, if economic competition is conducted on a peaceful basis, we can leave south Korea far behind. South Korea is now allocating most of the US “aid” for its huge military expenditure. However, we handle everything on our own. Therefore, if we reduce our defence spendings and allocate more money for economic construction, we shall develop the national economy more quickly and raise the people’s living standards to a much higher level than now. So, in fact, economic competition between us and south Korea is out of the question.

Now, how will they “build up” their political “strength”? It is obvious that the south Korean puppet rulers will not be able to do as they wish.

As I have already mentioned, the south Korean people are more strongly demanding peaceful reunification with every passing day. How strong the trend towards peaceful reunification in south Korea is today can be clearly seen in the fact that Park Chung Hee himself, who had indiscriminately arrested and imprisoned those who simply uttered the words peaceful reunification, had to talk about “peaceful reunification” during the last “election” in order to curry favour with the people.

The south Korean people’s discontent with the present puppet rulers and social system is also increasing daily. As long as the present colonial ruling system remains intact in south Korea, the people cannot enjoy genuine freedom and rights nor can they live comfortably. In south Korea today, there is a great gulf between rich and poor. Even if
the south Korean economy develops to some extent in the future, this
gap will not disappear. If the economy develops, the handful of the rich
will get still richer but the great majority of the people will not be able
to free themselves from their present poverty.

Expressways are now being built in south Korea, but this is
designed for the preparation of war and in no way for the improvement
of the people’s living standards. For a developed capitalist country, it is
another matter, but for south Korea the building of expressways is not
a pressing task. What use are they when cars are scarce and oxcarts
prevail? If, instead of building expressways, south Korea effected
irrigation in the rural areas by using the money to build dikes and
reservoirs, this would greatly help the south Korean people’s living
conditions. But the south Korean puppet rulers do not even dream of
doing any of these things.

Some time ago I read an article in a Japanese newspaper which
mocked the south Korean situation. It said that south Korea was full of
hovels and slums on either side of the fine expressways. I believe that
this is the true situation in south Korea. So it is natural that the people’s
discontent grows with each passing day.

It is clear that south Korea is not in a position to compete with us
either economically or politically. After all, by shouting for the
“building up of strength” the south Korean puppet rulers mean only to
gain time and repress the progressive forces calling for peaceful
reunification and achieve “reunification through domination over
communism” after advancing war preparations.

The south Korean authorities are grossly mistaken. If they “build
up” their military “strength” and continue their preparations for war
against us, we shall not just be sitting with our arms folded, shall we?
So, if they “build up strength” and continue their war preparations,
when will peaceful reunification be achieved?

Furthermore, their ambitious “reunification through domination
over communism” is a very silly illusion. By this they mean to achieve
national reunification by destroying communism in our country and
overthrowing the socialist system in the northern half of Korea. This
can only be considered an anachronistic way of thinking.

They can never eradicate communism. The communist movement is more than 100 years old, if we count it from the time of the Paris Commune. Communist ideology has become the dominant ideology in many countries and it is deeply rooted in the hearts of the people. The notorious enemies of communism have made every frantic effort to wipe out communism, but none has succeeded. Communism has not been wiped out; on the contrary, it is spreading every day. History has fully proved that communism cannot be exterminated.

The south Korean puppet rulers cannot overthrow the socialist system in the northern half of Korea either. Our socialist system is daily prospering and it is strengthening and developing very rapidly in all spheres—political, economic and cultural; all the people in the north strongly support and love this system and are working hard to consolidate and develop it.

The south Korean puppet rulers’ “build up strength” slogan implies, in the last analysis, that they intend to “build up strength” and “reunify the country through domination over communism”. In fact, this means that they will never reunify the country. After all, their real intention is to delay the country’s reunification, keep south Korea as a colony and military base of the US imperialists and even invite the Japanese militarist forces of aggression to come in and support them in maintaining their military fascist rule.

The south Korean authorities’ scheme to retard national reunification is being demonstrated at the preliminary talks between the delegates of the north and south Korean Red Cross organizations now under way at Panmunjom.

It can be said that the south Korean authorities were forced to agree to the north-south dialogue because of our repeated proposal for north-south negotiations and the south Korean people’s increasing demand that such talks begin. On the other hand, their US masters seem to have egged them on to negotiate with our side in order to get out of their predicament. This can be seen in the fact that The New York Times wrote a story in this tenor.
Although the south Korean side agreed to the preliminary talks between the Red Cross organizations, they do not participate in the discussions in good faith and are resorting to delaying tactics. Probably you are well aware of this because you saw it at Panmunjom yourselves. Now under discussion at the preliminary talks are the place, date and agenda of the full-dress talks. They are simple problems which could be agreed upon easily. However, the south Korean side is obstructing the talks, deliberately delaying the discussions. As regards our September 20 proposal they said a reply would be given only on September 27.

These days at the Panmunjom preliminary talks a debate is going on about the place of the full-dress talks. As far back as ten years ago, we proposed to hold a north-south conference between the political parties and social organizations in Pyongyang and Seoul. We have made this proposal on a number of occasions both in our speeches and official documents. On this occasion our Red Cross organization has proposed that the negotiations be held first at Panmunjom and, later, in Pyongyang and Seoul as soon as preparations are made. By preparations we mean, above all, the provision of communication facilities. No facilities have been provided for communication between Pyongyang and Seoul. That is why our side proposed to create these necessary conditions before holding the talks in the two cities. However, the south Korean side insisted on starting the talks in Seoul and Pyongyang at once. Their proposal was unreasonable, but we agreed, out of our desire to make the talks a success at all costs. Judging from the attitude now being taken by the south Korean side at the Panmunjom talks, they seem to have a hidden aim to wreck the talks under any pretext and shift the blame onto our side.

We do not intend to scuttle the talks. We sincerely want to expedite them and bring them to a successful conclusion by any means, even if we have to make concessions on minor questions. By doing this, we are going not only to search for the families, relatives and friends scattered between the north and the south but also to achieve freedom of correspondence and free visits between the two parts.
When the question of talks between the Red Cross organizations of north and south Korea was raised for the first time, we proposed not to confine the talks to the question of searching for families and relatives but to include in the discussion the question of correspondence and free visits between the north and south. Not only the people in the northern half of Korea but also the south Korean people were greatly excited and warmly supported this proposal. The south Korean rulers were extremely upset at this and repeated the outworn phrases such as: “We must not get too excited,” “It is premature,” and so on.

The positions of our side and the south Korean side at the talks of the north and south Korean Red Cross organizations have now become clear. Ours is to facilitate the talks and south Korea’s is to delay them. This is where the real difference lies. Therefore, in order to promote the talks between the two Red Cross organizations and make them a success, I think it is necessary to arouse public opinion still more and the south Korean people must fight more actively to bring pressure to bear upon the south Korean authorities.

Recently some people in south Korea have been suggesting the possibility of north-south visits beginning with those of journalists. We also welcome this approach. We are not against south Korean journalists coming to see the northern half of Korea. We also hope that our correspondents will be able to go and see south Korea. But the south Korean authorities keep the door shut, in fear of contact and visits between north and south.

We shall not only continue to promote the talks between the Red Cross organizations of north and south Korea but will also work towards a gradual establishment of contact between the political parties and social organizations of north and south Korea.

Our Party and the Government of the Republic have consistently maintained that under any circumstances, the Korean question must be solved by Koreans themselves. In other words, we want to reunify the country independently without any foreign interference. We think this is quite feasible.

The DPRK is entirely independent in all respects. We allow nobody
to meddle in our internal affairs and nobody does. The problem is that
the US and Japan are interfering in the internal affairs of south Korea
and thus hindering our national reunification.

The US imperialist occupation of south Korea is the greatest
obstacle to the independent and peaceful solution of Korea’s
reunification question. Therefore, in order to expedite reunification,
the US imperialists must first desist from their aggressive policy
towards our country and withdraw the aggressive troops they brought
into south Korea under the name of “UN forces”. At the same time,
they must not encourage the Japanese militarist forces of aggression to
reinvade south Korea. The south Korean rulers, for their part, should
strive to drive the US imperialists and other foreign forces of
aggression out of south Korea and put an end to their interference in
internal affairs.

On the contrary, the south Korean rulers are pleading with the US
imperialists not to leave south Korea and are taking pains to bring the
Japanese militarists back into south Korea. Now, in an endeavour to
deceive the south Korean people and world opinion, they miss no
chance of accusing us of an alleged intention to “invade the south”. In
the long run, this is aimed primarily at justifying the occupation of
south Korea by the US imperialist troops of aggression and the
reinvasion of south Korea by the Japanese militarists.

We have never intended to “invade the south” nor have we ever said
anything of the kind. The Government of the Republic has consistently
advocated, and is still advocating, peaceful reunification. We are not
going to impose the socialist system of the northern half of Korea on
south Korea. We have more than once proposed the establishment of a
sort of confederation as a tentative step to achieving national
reunification, while retaining the present systems in north and south
Korea. In the future our Party and the Government of the Republic will
continue to advocate peaceful reunification and strive for it.

Since the US imperialists are occupying south Korea and the
Japanese militarists are scheming to reinvoke south Korea, we cannot
expect the question of Korea’s reunification to be solved easily. This is
true. However, the peaceful reunification of our country will be greatly hastened if all the people in north and south Korea, the Japanese and other Asian peoples and people throughout the world unite and put up a strong fight against the US imperialists and the Japanese reactionaries, exerting pressure on them so that US imperialism will have to withdraw its aggressive troops from south Korea and Japanese militarism desist from supporting the south Korean puppets. We consider that the question of Korea’s reunification has prospects of a peaceful solution on the principle of national self-determination, according to our people’s will, although it may take some time.

Third, you asked me to speak on the role the United Nations can play in the settlement of the Korean question. We must wait and see. The UN has persisted in making unfair demands on us. The UN has adopted unlawful “resolutions” on the Korean question and insolently demanded that we respect them. Only then, they say, will they allow our representative to participate in the UN General Assembly and make a statement. We can never accept the illegal UN “resolutions” on the Korean question and their unjust demand.

We respect the UN Charter and have never violated it. We oppose the UN “resolutions” because they are unlawful and contrary to the spirit of the Charter. It is not we but the US imperialists who are violating the UN Charter. The US imperialists are trying to justify their occupation of south Korea under the plea of the UN “resolutions”. The so-called “UN forces” occupying south Korea are the US imperialist armed forces of aggression which have usurped the UN flag.

The UN must first repeal the unlawful “resolutions” on the Korean question adopted under US coercion, dissolve the “United Nations Commission for the Unification and Rehabilitation of Korea” and withdraw the “UN forces” from south Korea.

The UN must repeal the unlawful “resolutions” adopted on the Korean question up to now, and treat the DPRK fairly. The UN must not make unreasonable demands on us and must not interfere in the Korean question, leaving its solution to the Koreans themselves.

Fourth, I should like to refer to the question of defending the
national rights of the Korean citizens in Japan and to their repatriation.

It is essential for the Korean citizens in Japan to defend their national rights. It is natural that any nation should defend their own rights, and this does not run counter to international law. As we understand it, many Japanese also live abroad and they also want to defend their national rights rather than renounce them. So it is no less natural for the Korean citizens in Japan to be defending their national rights.

Korean citizens in Japan must primarily be guaranteed their full right to national education.

All our citizens residing abroad have schools of their own. Where the number of Korean citizens is rather small, the schools are in charge of our embassies. In China, there are a relatively large number of Korean citizens, and we have our own schools in Beijing, Shanghai and many other places. The Chinese Government is doing all it can to ensure and protect the education of Korean citizens. At present, all the Korean residents in China have their own schools, learn our spoken and written language and study our Party’s policies and our history.

The Korean citizens under Chongryon in Japan are doing very much the same thing. Such are the legitimate national rights of the Korean citizens in Japan.

In my opinion, their national education resulted from their staunch fight for it, and also from strong support and encouragement of the Japanese people and progressives in all walks of life.

There are some individual people among the Japanese ruling circles who are reactionary. They are trying to frustrate the national education of the Korean citizens in Japan, but cannot do so because of the pressure from the overwhelming majority of the Japanese people and progressives. Inside the Japanese government there is a reactionary group opposed to the national education of the Korean citizens in Japan, and at the same time there are also many who support it. Probably that is why the Japanese government allows our nationals to receive financial aid from us for their education.

It is very important for overseas citizens to get a national education.
As you know, a nation is primarily characterized by the unity of the spoken and written language. If the Korean nationals in Japan could not speak or write Korean, they could not, in fact, be called Korean nationals. Therefore, we attach very great importance to the national education of Korean citizens in Japan and we shall continue to give active support and aid to this end.

Since Japan has a large population, we believe it need not try to turn Koreans into Japanese. We hope that in the future, too, the Japanese people and progressives of all sections will firmly support and defend the national education of the Korean citizens in Japan.

At present the Japanese government is preventing Korean citizens in Japan from obtaining the nationality of the DPRK; I think this is an expression of its unfriendly attitude towards our country. Reactionary circles within the Japanese government, working hand in glove with the south Korean puppet clique, are forcing the Koreans in Japan to choose “Republic of Korea nationality”. Those who accept “ROK nationality” are granted special “favours”, but those who are of DPRK nationality suffer from unjustifiable sanctions under various pretexts. It seems to me that some are so harassed that they have no choice but to accept “ROK nationality”. The Japanese authorities formally call for the “freedom” of choice of nationality but, actually, they allow nothing of the kind and unwarrantedly impose “ROK nationality”. Even if they impose it on some of the Koreans residing in Japan, there will be no big problem. Although they change their nationality against their will under pressure from the Japanese reactionaries, they will unreservedly support the DPRK, the same as all the south Korean people do now.

In the final analysis, this regrettable change of their nationality into “ROK nationality” is taking place because our country is divided into the north and south. I am sure, however, that this problem will also be solved correctly in due course.

As far as the repatriation of Korean citizens in Japan is concerned, it has been effected as a result of the efforts made by both sides. In other words, it has been brought about because both our side and the Japanese Red Cross Society have exerted great efforts. We do not
consider that this has happened solely through the endeavours of our Red Cross Society.

The repatriation of Korean citizens in Japan has been resumed and repatriation ships are plying between our two countries. This is very encouraging. It is a step forward in the development of friendly relations between the Korean and Japanese peoples. We hope this work will continue with the support of the Japanese people so that all Korean citizens who wish repatriation can return to their motherland.

We also consider it necessary to allow Korean citizens in Japan to visit their homeland freely. We hope that the repatriation ships plying between Niigata and Chongjin will carry not only the people who are returning, but also those who will visit relatives in the homeland and then go back to Japan.

You thought that we set up the General Bureau for Overseas Compatriots Affairs only recently, but it was established as early as 1959, when the repatriation of Korean citizens in Japan began. Until recently this bureau has been unable to function because repatriation was interrupted. But now it is operating with the resumption of repatriation. The General Bureau for Overseas Compatriots Affairs performs such work as helping those who have returned to get employment according to their wishes and aptitude and guaranteeing their residence in the locality of their choice.

We are guaranteeing all conditions for the repatriates to give full play to their talent and intellect, and enjoy all conveniences. The compatriots who have returned from Japan now all receive free education and free medical care and take an active part in socialist construction. At present, in accordance with their desire and ability, they are working in government bodies, economic and cultural institutions and in other fields, applying all their knowledge and talent. There are repatriates from Japan among the athletes who recently visited Japan. So those who are fond of sports are engaged in sports, those who like the arts work in the field of the arts and those who have technological training work in the field of technology.

Fifth, I will touch briefly on the relations between Korea and Japan.
Since the first days of its foundation, the DPRK has pursued the policy of having friendly relations with all nations that take friendly attitudes towards us on the principles of equality and mutual benefit.

As for Korea-Japan relations, Japan committed aggression against Korea and Korea suffered from this aggression. This is the historical relationship between Korea and Japan. Yet, it is not the Japanese people but the Japanese imperialists who invaded Korea. Japan is also our neighbour. That is why after our country was liberated from the yoke of Japanese imperialism and the DPRK was founded, we desired to have a good-neighbour relationship with Japan despite the different social systems.

However, the Japanese government has all along been unfriendly towards the DPRK. Here are a few examples:

In 1950 when the US imperialists launched the war of aggression against our country, the then Japanese Prime Minister Yoshida stated, “Japan will collaborate with the UN by transporting troops and arms to the Korean war.” And in 1953 during the “ROK-Japan talks” the Japanese delegate uttered the absurdity that “Japanese rule over Korea has benefited the Korean nation.”

In the days of the Kishi Cabinet, too, the Japanese reactionaries made many hostile statements against our country.

According to the June 1958 issue of a Japanese magazine, the senior Japanese delegate to the “ROK-Japan talks” said: “The Sino-Japanese and Russo-Japanese Wars were waged in order to repulse the forces menacing Japan beyond the Amnok River as they had advanced to the Korean peninsula.... If we do not rise up for a third time and push the 38th parallel beyond the Amnok River, we will not be able to save our honour in the face of our ancestors, in the face of our forerunners. This is Japan’s diplomatic obligation. It is imperative to solve the questions pending between Japan and the Republic of Korea, and it is no less important to strive to push the 38th parallel up to the north.” He added, “The 38th parallel is the lifeline of the ROK; it is also Japan’s lifeline.”

In 1960 Ono Banboku, former vice-president of the Japan
Liberal-Democratic Party, said, “We must form a ‘United States of Japan’ with Japan, south Korea and Taiwan put together.” All this was reported by the Japanese press.

This was also the case during the days of the Ikeda Cabinet. 

During the period of the Ikeda Cabinet ex-Prime Minister Kishi Nobusuke said at a plenary session of the House of Representatives, “Japan’s defence zone must be extended to south Korea and Taiwan.”

On February 2, 1961, Kosaka Zentaro, the then foreign minister, said that the Japanese government “recognizes the south Korean government as the sole government of the whole of Korea because 38 UN member states recognize the south Korean government only”. He added, “It is a pity that the sovereignty of the Republic of Korea does not extend to the northern half.”

In September 1962, the minister of justice of the Ikeda Cabinet said: “We must prevent Korea’s reunification at all costs because the Republic of Korea is the first line in opposing communism.”

The situation is more appalling under the Sato Cabinet. I must say a few words about Sato, too, although our criticism of your Prime Minister might somewhat embarrass you.

After they were defeated in Asia, the US imperialists put forward what they call the “Nixon doctrine” to “make Asians fight Asians” and Sato was the first to accept it. And it is none other than Sato who, disregarding the strong opposition of the Japanese people and public circles, signed the aggressive “Japan-US joint statement”. What is more, Sato visited Seoul to “congratulate” Park Chung Hee on his reassumption of the “presidency” through the fraudulent “election”, although he knew that all the south Korean people opposed Park. I regard this as one of the evidences of Sato’s extremely unfriendly attitude towards us.

As you see, the Japanese government has all along taken an unfriendly, hostile attitude towards our country.

Our country has never invaded Japan or interfered in its internal affairs, nor have we pursued an antagonistic policy towards Japan. We have always striven to have friendly and good-neighborly relations
with Japan. But our unilateral efforts will not establish good-neighbourly relations. It is entirely because of the hostile policy of the Japanese government towards our country that such relations have not been established between the two countries to this date.

Take trade relations for example. We want to develop trade relations with Japan and are working hard to this end. Geographically, Japan is close to us. So, once economic exchange is effected, we shall have to pay less shipping costs and obtain many other advantages. However, we are forced to buy the necessary goods from far-off European countries such as France, England, Austria and Holland because Japan is pursuing a policy of blockading our country. These countries have no diplomatic relations with our country. But they do not bar economic exchange with us. Only Japan, in company with US imperialism, persists in blockading us.

Our country is carrying out some trade transactions with Japanese companies, but this trade is of a one-sided nature because of the hostile policy followed by the Japanese government. Japanese technicians can come here to inspect our plants, but our technicians are not allowed to enter Japan. So they cannot visit Japanese factories and, accordingly, we cannot order the necessary goods. The Japanese government not only prohibits the entry of our technicians into Japan but, under the pretext of controlling war materials, deliberately restricts trade between us and Japanese companies.

Whether the Japanese government is doing this for fear of the US or the south Korean puppets we are not sure. The Japanese government seems to fear the penetration of communist information, if our people are allowed entry, but I do not think this is anything to worry about. In Japan there is a Communist Party and a great many people who propagate communism. And how much communist information can our technicians carry out in Japan?

If Japanese reactionary circles intend to frustrate our socialist construction through economic blockade, it is stupid of them. Even without Japan, we trade with other countries and buy as much machinery and equipment as we need. Even if Japan rejects trade with
us, our socialist construction will not be disorganized. However, we hope to develop trade relations with our neighbour Japan to as great a degree as possible.

It is reported that Japan has recently expressed its willingness to admit our technicians. If it is true, we welcome this step.

In order to have friendly relations between Korea and Japan and, further, to establish diplomatic relations, the Japanese government should first correct its attitude towards our country. It should desist from its hostile policy towards the DPRK and stop instigating the south Korean puppet regime to make Koreans fight against each other again.

Whether or not the Sato Cabinet will be replaced is Japan’s internal affair, so we are not going to meddle in it. To us it is not a question of who becomes Japan’s Prime Minister but whether the hostile policy towards our country is abandoned or continued. Unless the Japanese government’s policy towards our country is changed, the relations between Korea and Japan will not improve even if the Japanese Prime Minister is replaced. We think it is necessary for the Japanese government to correct its incorrect policy in keeping with the trend of the times.

At present, the progressive forces in Japan are carrying on a movement to restore diplomatic relations with China and establish them with the DPRK. We approve of this.

If the Korean and Japanese peoples establish diplomatic relations or, prior to this, effect friendly visits through their concerted efforts, we shall welcome such action. Even before diplomatic relations are established with Japan, we are willing to arrange mutual visits of journalists, technicians and other people as often as possible and introduce extensive economic and cultural exchanges. However, in our opinion, this must not be unilateral but must be conducted on the principle of reciprocity.

I was told that you intend to invite our art troupe. We welcome this. It is good to open the road between the two countries and visit each other.

No matter what specific measures will be taken, we think it is
entirely up to the Japanese government whether or not friendly relations will be established between Korea and Japan.

Sixth, I would like to touch on the question of the revival of Japanese militarism.

At present some people are debating whether or not Japanese militarism has been revived. We consider that it has already been revived. This is not a speculation; it is a conclusion we have reached on the basis of facts.

As you know, the Japanese militarists drew up specific invasion plans such as “Operation Three Arrows”, “Operation Flying Dragon” and “Operation Bull Run” a long time ago, and, under these operational plans, they have been continually conducting joint military exercises in the East Sea with the US imperialist troops of aggression and the south Korean puppet troops. This year they have already conducted many such military exercises. They say that these exercises are carried out for “defensive” purposes. Needless to say, however, they are in fact aggressive military exercises staged with Korea, China and the Soviet Union as their imaginary operational zones.

The DPRK is target No. 1 in the Japanese militarists’ overseas aggression. With a view to moving their armed forces of aggression to the Korean front, they are conducting large-scale amphibious manoeuvres with the south Korean puppet troops and helping the south Korean puppets build an expressway straight up to the Military Demarcation Line. This expressway is linked directly with the ferry between Shimonoseki and Pusan. All this is aimed at invading our country.

The Japanese reactionary ruling circles are openly claiming that if war breaks out in Korea, they will not sit with arms folded. On December 1, 1969 in the Japanese Diet Sato said; “Guaranteeing the security of Japan’s neighbours such as the Republic of Korea and Taiwan is a matter of great concern in the light of the security of Japan itself.” And he added, “It is quite natural that Japan should react strongly, if her neighbours’ security is encroached upon.” And in February last year he stated: “If war breaks out in Korea, we cannot
just remain an onlooker.” He even claimed that “It is part of Japan’s right of self-defence to make a preemptive attack.”

Even these few examples clearly convince us that Japanese militarism has been revived and has entered the stage of full-scale preparation for overseas aggression.

The time has already passed to debate whether or not Japanese militarism has been revived. Judging from what they are doing now, we must consider that militarism has been revived in Japan. It cannot be considered otherwise. Its revival is a stark reality. So the urgent task for us now is how to curb its aggressive designs and safeguard the peace of Asia and the world.

It is true that Japanese militarism has revived. But whether it can dare to launch a war or not depends entirely on how the Japanese and Asian peoples will struggle.

The Japanese people’s struggle is very important in opposing the aggressive manoeuvres of the Japanese militarists. We believe that the Japanese people are powerful enough to prevent the Japanese reactionary government from unleashing a war of aggression. Today’s Japanese people are not the Japanese people of the 1910s or the 1920s; they are the Japanese people of the 1970s. The Japanese people are now tenaciously battling against the Japanese militarist forces of aggression.

There appears to be a conflict of views inside the Japanese ruling circles as to whether or not to launch a war of aggression. Being an island country, Japan depends heavily on foreign raw materials for its industry. In case of war, it will be very difficult to obtain raw materials in the island. For this reason, some of the Japanese monopoly capitalists seem to fear war.

Thus, in Japan the aggressive forces are insignificant and the anti-war forces form an overwhelming majority. If the broad anti-war forces unite closely and launch a more vigorous anti-war movement, the reactionary government of Japan will not risk starting a war, no matter how much it wants to.

As for the Japanese militarists’ objects of aggression, they are not to
be slighted. The days are gone when Japan lorded it over Asia. Today’s Korea is no longer the Korea of the time of its “annexation to Japan”, today’s China is no longer the China of the days of the Sino-Japanese War, and today’s Soviet Union is no longer the Russia of the Russo-Japanese War. The might of Korea, China and the Soviet Union has now been incomparably strengthened.

We believe that if the peoples of Korea, China, Japan and Indochina and many other Asian peoples unite firmly and fight, they can frustrate the Japanese militarists’ aggressive intentions. However, if they harbour illusions about Japanese militarism and give up fighting, considering that it has not yet been revived or that it is not worthwhile fighting it, it will only help the Japanese militarists.

If the Japanese militarists start another aggressive war in disregard of the changed situation, they will suffer a still heavier defeat before the united forces of the revolutionary Asian peoples and the peace-loving people throughout the world.

As in the past, so in the future, our people will fight stoutly against the Japanese militarists’ aggressive plans.

Seventh, let me say a few words on Nixon’s visit to China.

You asked if there will be any change in our foreign policy in connection with Nixon’s China visit. We still do not think it necessary to make any radical change in our foreign policy. Of course, the foreign policy of a country is not immutable. It may alter in accordance with changes in the international situation. However, we are independent in our foreign policy, we have a diplomatic policy of our own. Therefore, whether Nixon comes to China or whatever attitude China takes, it will not cause any great sensation among us.

As for Nixon’s visit to China, his is not a victor’s march, it is a pilgrimage of the vanquished.

China and the US have no diplomatic relations. History knows few instances of the head of a state visiting a country with which his country has no diplomatic relations. This proves that US imperialism finds itself in an impasse. Otherwise, it would not act in this way.

The reactionary US rulers have been very obstinate in pursuing
their blockade policy towards the socialist countries. They have followed this policy towards the socialist countries for many years. Following the victory of the October Socialist Revolution in Russia, the US imperialists did not recognize the Soviet Union and continually blockaded it. They recognized it only 16 years later. As for China, they have blockaded it for 22 years. However hard the US imperialists blockaded China, it has not collapsed but has continued to grow in strength as a revolutionary force in Asia. Nixon’s visit to China, which he has until now treated as an antagonist, shows that the US imperialists are at their last gasp.

The US imperialists are now faced with a grave internal and external crisis. In the United States the economic crisis is growing more serious, the people’s anti-war movement is on the increase and US soldiers are becoming more and more war-weary. Almost all the US soldiers in South Viet Nam are reported to be addicted to narcotics. This shows that US soldiers are extremely tired of war. In addition, the US imperialists have many difficulties in pursuing their military strategy. They have scattered their armed forces of aggression over so many parts of the world that they are not effective and this involves great financial burdens.

US imperialism has few allies among capitalist countries. The number of US followers is gradually diminishing. During the Korean war, US imperialism mobilized 15 satellite nations, whereas for the Viet Nam War today it has managed to mobilize only such puppets as south Korea, the Philippines, New Zealand, Australia and Thailand. US imperialism is now suffering defeat after defeat in the Viet Nam War. In this way, US imperialism is now going downhill; it is not what it was in the past.

With a view to extricating itself from this blind alley, US imperialism has put forward the “Nixon doctrine” and begun to pursue the policy of making Asians fight Asians and pitting the peoples of the Middle East and Africa against each other. Although Nixon has advanced the “Nixon doctrine” as a means of finding a way out of the crisis, it has failed to win popularity. Only a stupid man like Sato
accepts the “Nixon doctrine” but other people do not.

In these circumstances the US rulers seem to find it difficult to overcome the crisis by means of war alone. Indeed, the US imperialist policy of aggression still remains unchanged. However, US imperialism is seeking a way out by some other means for the time being. Nixon is visiting China at a time when US imperialism is at a dead end. In my opinion, he aims to improve relations with China and relax the tension temporarily so as to have some breathing space before intensifying preparations for an aggressive war.

From the historical point of view, the dialogue between China and the US is not the first of its kind between a socialist and an imperialist power. There were similar instances in the past. Moreover, many countries have begun to recognize the People’s Republic of China as the sole legitimate government of the Chinese people. So we do not regard the Sino-US dialogue as strange but as quite feasible.

It is unlikely that because of its talks with the US, China will change its socialist principles, its opposition to imperialism. Because China is a socialist country and there are incompatible contradictions between the socialist and capitalist systems, there can be no compromise on issues of principle.

If, through Nixon’s visit to China, a dialogue is opened up between the two sides, a certain relaxation of international tension is achieved, and conditions arise for solving the Asian problems which remain unsettled, this will certainly be a positive, and not a negative, development.

If the tension is lessened in Asia and US imperialism withdraws from there, will the “Nixon doctrine” be put into practice? We do not think it will. We do not consider that Japanese militarism will be able to play the role as an aggressor in Asia on behalf of US imperialism. The Japanese people are now rising up against the joint Sato-Nixon statement. If the Japanese people and all the other Asian peoples fight in unity, the “Nixon doctrine” will inevitably fail.

Even if international tension is somewhat alleviated as a result of Nixon’s China visit, this does not mean a complete removal of the
danger of war. Historical experience shows that even if a nonaggression pact is concluded between socialist and imperialist countries or the relations between a socialist country and an imperialist country improve temporarily, this cannot be a definite guarantee for the prevention of war. In the past, a nonaggression pact was concluded between Hitlerite Germany and the Soviet Union. But war broke out one year later. The 1930s saw the conclusion of a neutrality pact between the Soviet Union and Japan. In signing this pact, the Japanese imperialists aimed at carrying on the Sino-Japanese War easily. To be sure, the present situation is different from that at the time when Hitlerite Germany and the Soviet Union concluded a nonaggression pact. At the time Hitler was growing in strength, whereas US imperialism is on the decline now.

However, the nature of imperialism has not changed. War is the companion of imperialism. True, US imperialism has been weakened, but no one can claim with certainty that it will not at some time in the future start another aggressive war.

As for the future relationship between our country and the US as a result of Nixon’s visit to China, it will entirely depend on US imperialism’s policy towards Korea.

As I have already said, the DPRK has consistently maintained the principle of promoting friendly relations with all countries which respect the Korean people’s freedom and independence, want to establish diplomatic relations with our country on an equal footing and are friendly towards us. This was stated at the time when we proclaimed the founding of the DPRK and was also made clear in the Ten-Point Political Programme of the Government of the Republic which we announced several years ago.

Irrespective of future Sino-US relations and the US imperialist policy towards other Asian countries, we shall pursue our independent policy towards the US in the light of its policy towards our country. That is why we are closely watching the stand US imperialism is going to take towards us.

What is important here is the withdrawal of its armed forces of
aggression from south Korea. It is clear that as long as the US imperialists occupy south Korea, we cannot have friendly relations with the US whatever the relations between China and the US might be. However, if they discard the UN cloak, and withdraw their troops from south Korea and stop providing south Korea with military equipment for aggression, it will be another matter.

The Korean Armistice Agreement was concluded between the Korean-Chinese side and the “UN Command” side. When the Korean Armistice Agreement was concluded, the two sides agreed to convene a political conference immediately for a peaceful settlement of the Korean question. However, US imperialism has not carried out but violated this agreement and still refuses to quit south Korea. In accordance with the Armistice Agreement, they should withdraw, leaving the Korean question to the Koreans, or solve the question through political negotiations.

If the US imperialists withdraw their troops completely from south Korea and leave the Korean question to the Koreans themselves, there will be a change in our attitude towards the US. But, as long as they persist in their policy of aggression, there can be no change in our US policy.

US imperialism must also desist from its plot to help Japanese militarism replace it in carrying out aggressive war in Asia. I do not think the Japanese people will allow Japanese militarism to commit acts of aggression for the sake of US imperialism. If US imperialism stops helping Japan play the role of the “leader” in Asia, and withdraws its aggressive troops from Korea, our US policy may change accordingly.

If the situation is relaxed, we shall make effective use of it. We do not intend to go against developments. We want a relaxation of the situation; we do not want an aggravation of tension.

The US imperialists are now resorting to double-dealing tactics. It is customary with them. Historically, whenever they found themselves in adversity, the imperialists employed double-dealing tactics, putting up the slogan of “peace” while continuing with their war preparations.
Therefore, I think we must sharpen our vigilance against the imperialists’ double-dealing tactics.

Lastly, you asked about the differences between the socialist countries and about our Party’s position. I will make a brief comment on this.

As you know, differences exist between socialist countries. We do not consider their differences as antagonism between states, resulting from their institutional contradictions. In the light of Marxist-Leninist principles, there can be no antagonism between the socialist countries. The divergences of opinion between socialist countries are, after all, ideological differences between brothers who are fighting together for the building of socialism and communism. Therefore, if the imperialists seek to gain something out of the differences between the socialist countries, it will be no more than an absurd illusion.

Our Party is working consistently to remove the differences between the socialist countries and strengthen the unity of the international communist movement. We assert that socialist countries must unite on the principle of fighting imperialism, supporting the international working-class movement and the national-liberation movement in colonies, defending the socialist system and not interfering in other countries’ internal affairs. We are proposing to unite and wage a joint struggle on this principle even if there are differences between the fraternal parties and countries. We shall not aggravate the split of the international communist movement; we shall only strive to guarantee unity. This is our Party’s position.

Thank you for your attention. I hope we will join our efforts for friendship between the Korean and Japanese peoples.
Comrades,

I am now going to speak about some measures to meet the present shortage of manpower.

Whether or not we solve the acute manpower problem in our country today correctly is an urgent matter on which our success in carrying out the Six-Year Plan put forward by the Fifth Party Congress depends, and which affects the rate of progress in our revolution and construction.

As all of you know, we have a great deal of work to do in the period ahead in order to implement the decisions of the Fifth Party Congress. During the Six-Year Plan, we have to construct a large number of factories and other enterprises, railways, roads and ports and harbours, improve rivers, develop the land and reclaim tidal stretches on a large scale. We also have to increase our defence capabilities, develop science, education and culture, and improve the people’s standard of living. If we are to carry out these enormous tasks, we need a great deal of manpower. But we can predict that the acute manpower situation in our country will continue for a further few years as the result of the Fatherland Liberation War. The problem of manpower in our country
will not be solved earlier than 1974.

In spite of this serious shortage of labour, some senior officials are not taking positive steps to tackle this problem. It is not that there is no possibility of solving this problem at present. If Party organizations and senior officials organize work carefully, they will be quite able to ease the strain on labour. All sectors and units must strive to mobilize reserve manpower so as to overcome the shortage of labour.

We must, first of all, accelerate the rural technical revolution and obtain manpower reserves.

At present, a cooperative farmer in our country can cultivate only 0.6 hectare of crops. This is due to the low level of mechanization in the rural economy.

We must hasten the rural technical revolution in accordance with the policy formulated by the *Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country* so as to increase the area of crops cultivated by each cooperative farmer. We have to save rural labour in this way and send the surplus to industry and capital construction. This is a most important way to solve the acute manpower problem at the moment.

We must work hard to enable each cooperative farmer to tend one hectare of crops at first and get the labour we need from the rural communities from next year. If we supply them with a few more tractors and lorries, each of the farm members will be able to take care of one hectare without any difficulty.

If they are supplied with a large number of machines, the cooperative farms will turn over surplus labour of their own accord. If they can easily farm with a small number of hands, they will not have to keep a large number which means a smaller share of distribution for each. The Chongsan Cooperative Farm in Kangso County has already given up nearly 300 work hands by reducing its work force in step with the rising level of mechanization. If we raise the level of mechanized farming, we shall not only be able to save a large amount of agricultural labour, but also increase the production of cereals, relieve the farmers from burdensome labour, and considerably narrow the differences between industrial and agricultural labour.
If we are to raise the level of farm mechanization and obtain surplus labour from the rural communities, we must first increase the production of tractors.

Several days ago we visited cooperative farms in North and South Hwanghae Provinces and talked to many people about how to obtain surplus labour from the rural communities. In the course of these discussions, we drew the conclusion that we shall be able to obtain a large amount of labour from there if tractors are available to them. Everyone to whom we talked said that they would offer many work hands in exchange for tractors. Someone said that he would give five for one Chollima tractor, and another man who knew the advantage of mechanization said that he would offer 10. One man also said that he would give 15 for one Phungnyon tractor. These, of course, are the figures which the farmers estimated by the standard of the present low utilization rate of tractors. Even if we were to recruit labour from the rural communities at the rate of 10 persons for one Phungnyon tractor, five for one Chollima tractor, and 2.5 for one Jonjin tractor, we should be able to obtain a large amount of labour. In fact, we can recruit more than this. We must increase the production of tractors and supply more of them to the rural communities so as to save rural manpower.

In order to increase the production of tractors, it is necessary to supply an adequate amount of steel to the tractor factory and put production on a steady basis. I was told that tractors are not being produced regularly at present because of the shortage of steel. If that is the case, we shall have to make up for the shortage even if we have to import it.

In addition to putting tractor production on a steady basis, we must increase the capacity of the tractor factory and modernize it. In this way we shall raise the level as soon as possible to such an extent as to produce 10,000 Chollima tractors and 5,000 Phungnyon tractors a year. At some time in the future, we shall have to reach an annual capacity of producing 10,000 Phungnyon tractors.

Phungnyon tractors are very good for ploughing paddy fields. Chollima tractors are suitable for harrowing and hauling, but not for
ploughing paddy fields because they cannot break up land to any great depth. *Phungnyon* tractors can plough paddy fields at depth and increase rice yields. Farmers say that the paddy fields which have been ploughed with the *Phungnyon* can produce 10 to 15 per cent more rice than those ploughed with the *Chollima*. Farmers in Anak County in South Hwanghae Province, for instance, say that if they have more tractors of the *Phungnyon* type they will produce at least seven tons of rice per hectare.

The annual production capacity for *Jonjin* tractors must also be increased to 8,000. This type of tractor is suitable for the cultivation of orchards and vegetable fields and is indispensable for operations on small plots and sloping fields in mountainous areas in particular.

We must direct national efforts to increasing the production of tractors so that two of them will be available per 100 hectares of cultivated land in the near future and then six to seven of them at the next stage.

On increasing the output of tractors, we must supply them first to the western region where there is a large area of cultivated land and where crop yields are high.

As well as increasing the production of tractors for the rural communities, we must see that the existing ones are used more effectively. This is important. The present rate of tractor operation is 60 per cent in most cases and 75 per cent at best. These figures are very low. If tractors are operated at such a low rate, an addition to their number through increased production will not be of great significance. The rural economy must use the existing tractors effectively and increase their rate of operation drastically.

To this end, provinces should be provided with tractor repair shops and tractor spare parts factories. Only then, can the machines be repaired as soon as they go out of order and maintenance be done according to plan. The ministries concerned must take the responsibility to construct a tractor repair shop and a tractor spare parts factory for each province as soon as possible. It is desirable that the Ministry of Machine Industry No. 1 should take charge of constructing
tractor spare parts factories, and the Agricultural Commission trailer farm machinery plants and tractor repair shops. The tractor spare parts factory in each province should be made a branch of the tractor factory. Only then will the parent factory send technicians to help the branch factories and equip them properly. The tractor factory should re-equip itself with highly efficient new machines and hand over the old ones to the provincial tractor spare parts factories.

There will be difficulties if they try to construct all the provincial tractor spare parts factories at one time. Priority should, therefore, be given to South Hwanghae, South Phyongan, North Phyongan, and North Hwanghae Provinces which produce large amounts of cereals, and other provinces should be provided with these facilities gradually. South Hamgyong and Kangwon Provinces should extend the existing tractor spare parts factory in South Hamgyong Province a little and share its use.

It is advisable that factories capable of manufacturing general tractor spare parts should be constructed for South Hwanghae, South Phyongan and North Phyongan Provinces which produce large amounts of cereals and have large numbers of tractors and that the other provinces should have factories capable of manufacturing limited items for the time being and then, in step with the increase in the number of tractors, develop them to meet the demands for tractor spares in general. The spare parts which are to be produced in the provinces must be standardized on a national basis. The project for the construction of tractor spare parts factories must be given priority in the supply of machine tools and building materials.

In order to save rural labour, it is also necessary to increase the production of lorries for the rural communities.

At present, a great deal of rural labour is used on hauling work. Therefore, if we supply a large number of lorries to the rural communities for hauling operations, we shall be able to save a great deal of labour. This will also eliminate the practice of wearing out tractors by using them for long-distance transport.

Oxcarts are still used widely on cooperative farms. If we supply one
Sungni-58 lorry per 100 hectares of cultivated land so as to replace the oxcarts in the future, we shall be able to save a great deal of manpower. Since lorries are fast and can carry heavy loads, one of them will be able to replace 15 to 20 oxcarts easily.

By replacing cattle-drawn carts with lorries, we shall also be able to develop the cattle into dairy cows. If we develop 200,000 cattle into dairy cows, we shall produce plenty of milk for the children of nurseries and kindergartens.

We must first supply one Sungni-58 lorry to each cooperative farm, and then increase the number as the output grows. The cooperative farms which have large loads to carry and which are far away from railway stations should be supplied with more lorries and those with less loads to carry and railway stations close by should be supplied with fewer lorries. With the increase in the loads to be handled by county cooperative farm management committees, more lorries should also be supplied to them.

The Sungni General Motor Works is said to be unable to produce lorries on a regular basis at present because of an inadequate supply of malleable cast iron. The factory must take measures to manufacture malleable cast iron by its own efforts so as to produce lorries on a steady basis as soon as possible. The amount of this iron produced at the Munchon Machine Factory alone is not enough to meet the demand, and, moreover, it would be difficult to transport supplies from Munchon if war should break out.

While using the existing production capacity to the maximum on the one hand, the Sungni General Motor Works should, on the other, increase the capacity quickly to such an extent as to produce 10,000 Sungni-58 lorries a year. The Jaju lorry shop should also be modernized and its output increased.

We must also produce a large number of small trucks for local industry factories and for commercial and procurement agencies in counties.

We shall have to get the Kaengsaeng automobile plant to increase its production of engines, and build a new plant in Pyongyang for the assembling of small trucks. If approximately 3,500 Kaengsaeng
automobile engines are produced a year, these will be enough to assemble the small trucks needed for the local industry factories and for the provincial and county commercial and procurement agencies and to spare some for the production of motorcars.

If we supply the local industry and commercial and procurement sectors with only 1,000 small lorries every year, they will be able to improve procurement, commerce and the distribution of goods considerably and will not have to use any oxcarts. If we work hard for the next five to six years, we shall be able to solve this problem completely.

We must establish lorry repair centres in provinces for the purpose of raising the rate of lorry utilization in the rural areas. As in the case of the tractor repair centres, the ministries concerned should take charge of the construction of the lorry repair centres, giving priority to the western region in this work. The construction of the motor vehicle repair shops should be undertaken by the Agricultural Commission and that of motor vehicle spare parts factories by the Ministry of Machine Industry No. 1.

In view of the ever-growing number of lorries and tractors in the rural areas, each province will also have to have a tyre reclamation plant. The Ministry of Machine Industry No. 1 has been given the task of constructing the one for South Hwanghae Province, but it is impossible for this ministry to do it for all the other provinces. So the other provinces will have to build them by their own efforts by receiving a certain amount of equipment.

A large growth in the number of tractors and motor vehicles requires the training of as many drivers. While producing more drivers at the driver training centres on the one hand, we shall, on the other, have to teach middle-school pupils how to drive so that they will all be able to drive tractors and lorries after graduation. The soldiers who are discharged from the service should also be trained to drive so that they can drive lorries or tractors when they return home.

We must also manufacture harvesters in order to save rural manpower. The Agricultural Mechanization Research Institute of the
Academy of Agricultural Sciences has not yet constructed a farm machine worth mentioning over the past ten years. It must speed up its research work. Not only the Academy of Agricultural Sciences but also the Academy of Engineering must concentrate on farm machinery and manufacture high efficiency harvesters as soon as possible.

If we are to mechanize agriculture, we need a large number of electric motors. These motors are needed for thresheres, crushers, water pumps and for many other purposes. The Taephyong-style dryer which has been invented by our farmers also needs an electric motor. Each workteam of the cooperative farms needs at least four to six electric motors. To produce so many electric motors required for the rural communities is beyond the capabilities of the existing centrally-run factories. So each province must quickly construct by itself the buildings of a factory for the production and repair of electric motors and equip it by obtaining facilities and technicians from the Ministry of Machine Industry No. 3.

We have also to manufacture bulldozers and ditch diggers. In order to mechanize farming, fields should be enlarged and changed into regular shapes, and the sloping fields in mountains should be terraced. In addition, tractors and lorries have to be provided with good approaches to the fields for smooth movement to and from there. To facilitate land development, we must produce large numbers of bulldozers, ditch diggers and other modern machines for the rural communities.

By producing and supplying large numbers of tractors, lorries and various other farm machines to the rural communities and by mechanizing farming in this way, we should ensure the economic use of manpower in rural communities. Thus we will recruit 50,000 to 70,000 industrial workers from the agricultural sector every year, and we will obtain 350,000 to 400,000 of them in several years.

Next, we must take measures to reduce the work forces of the nonproductive sectors and the management personnel of factories and other enterprises.

These work forces and management staffs have now increased excessively. We must reduce them without hesitation by merging or
removing, as the circumstances require, the excessively sub-divided departments in both the non-productive and productive sectors.

We must first slash the personnel of the people’s committees and of other institutions which are in charge of administrative and economic affairs.

As the matter stands now, the organizational structures of the provincial people’s committees are uniform, regardless of the provincial populations. This is not right. The provincial people’s committees should be classified into a special grade, the first, second and third grades according to the provincial populations, and the sizes of the staffs of these committees should be defined accordingly.

Some departments of the provincial people’s committees should be removed from their organizational structure.

The People’s Committee of South Phyongan Province, for instance, has many departments that should be merged with one another. This committee can dispense with the revolutionary relics department because there are not many revolutionary relics in this province. This department can be merged into the education and culture department, and a few instructors in charge of these relics can be assigned to the latter. This people’s committee does not need to have the Taedong River Development Management Bureau and the department for the supervision of lorries and tractors.

The provincial people’s committee needs to have the economy planning department, the labour department, the commercial department, the procurement and food administration department, the city management department and so on. The financial department of the provincial people’s committee should also be retained. The period of transition from capitalism to socialism needs strict auditing and an uncompromising struggle against embezzlement and waste. At present, the Ministry of Finance and other ministries concerned are in charge of financial inspection of factories and other enterprises. But the Ministry of Finance finds it too much to deal with only the large factories and enterprises, and the other ministries are not in a position to examine the financial affairs of the industrial establishments under their jurisdiction.
properly, because they are affected by self-centredness. In order to ensure correct financial inspection, it is necessary for the provincial people’s committee to have a financial department. The county does not need a large financial staff. It needs one which is just large enough to inspect the financial affairs of its local industry factories and cooperative farms since those of large factories and enterprises are inspected by the ministries and the provinces concerned.

The organizational structure of the provincial people’s committee must not provide for too many vice-chairmen. I have heard that there are six to seven vice-chairmen in the provincial people’s committee. That is too many. The Cabinet has many Vice-Premiers because it has to deal with many external affairs, but the provincial people’s committee does not need so many vice-chairmen. It is desirable that their number should be reduced a little, and that the office of vice-chairmen who will be in charge of internal affairs should be established separately.

The county people’s committees should also be graded special, first, second and third, according to their populations, and the sizes of their staffs should be defined accordingly. The Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country says that the county is the basic unit which gives direct and unified leadership to rural work and all other local affairs. Therefore, the present departments of the county people’s committee should be retained, and only those counties which have too large a staff in relation to their grades should reduce the size of their staffs.

The personnel of the provincial rural economy committee should also be reduced. In the past, this committee had to have a large staff which was necessary for the improvement of agriculture. But, now that county cooperative farm management committees and the management boards of cooperative farms are able to work on the right track, and now that agricultural production is being directed satisfactorily, there is no need for the provincial rural economy committee to have a large staff.

As we always say, the county cooperative farm management
committee is the basic unit which directs production on cooperative farms firsthand and gives them material and technical assistance. Nevertheless, agronomists are all assigned to higher units, and there are few agriculturists or their assistants on county cooperative farm management committees. We must reduce the personnel of the provincial rural economy committees and strengthen the county cooperative farm management committees.

The rural economy committees should be graded special, first, second and third in accordance with the amounts of grain produced in the provinces concerned, and the size of their staffs should be determined according to their grades.

Since the provincial rural economy committee is an agricultural enterprise, it must function under the jurisdiction of the provincial people’s committee just as the provincial local industry management bureau does. The provincial rural economy committee ought to work under the direction of the provincial people’s committee, and the chairman of the former should also function as a vice-chairman of the latter in charge of agriculture. At present, the chairmen of these committees are on an equal footing, so that the chairman of the former behaves as if he were the master of the province like the latter, and is reluctant to accept his leadership, working in a self-centred manner. In a certain province, the two committees are even undertaking housing construction separately, and each as its own electric motor repair workshop. It is, indeed, unnecessary for each to have its own. If one large, well-equipped electric motor repair workshop exists in a province, and serves all the factories and cooperative farms in the province, the issue will be settled.

The chairman of the rural economy committee is not the master of the province; he is the master of an agricultural enterprise. The master of the province is the chairman of the provincial people’s committee, and only when he functions in this capacity can he give unified leadership to the province and eradicate departmental self-centredness. But this does not, of course, mean that he has at his disposal the lorries, tractors and so on and can interfere with agricultural work simply
because the provincial rural economy committee is under the
jurisdiction of the provincial people’s committee.

The personnel of the county cooperative farm management
committee also have to be reduced. In a county where grain production
does not count for much, the county cooperative farm management
committee can have a staff which is as small as that of the management
board of a cooperative farm producing a large amount of grain.

Now that agriculture is highly mechanized and county cooperative
farm management committees can give effective technical guidance to
cooperative farms, the management boards of cooperative farms also
do not need large staffs. We are of the opinion that 1.5 to two
managerial workers per 100 hectares of cultivated land will be able to
manage their farm without difficulty.

We are running several cooperative farms of different sizes on an
experimental basis and have reached the conclusion that the personnel
of management boards of cooperative farms can be reduced. The
Management Board of the Chongsan Cooperative Farm in Kangso
County, for example, has a small staff, although the farm is several
times as large as other cooperative farms and produces a large amount
of grain. In the Samsok District, Pyongyang, several cooperative farms
each with a managerial staff of as many as ten persons have been
reorganized into workteams and merged into one cooperative farm,
and their managerial personnel have been reduced by a large number.
But farming is going well there. This, however, does not mean that all
other cooperative farms should be merged. The rural ri is the lowest
administrative unit which has a clinic, a shop and schools. If several
coope rative farms reorganize themselves into one by abolishing the
existing central establishments of the ri involved in the merger, they
will have to build many houses and many other difficult problems will
rise. So the number of managerial workers should only be reduced
without changing the present organization of ri and cooperative farms.

The number of commercial and purchasing workers should also be
reduced.

At present, too many people are working in shops. You must have
seen that the owners of most general shops in former days ran them by
themselves—a wife and husband. Private shop owners were reluctant to
employ assistants so as to dispense with the cost of keeping them. One
or two persons will be enough to run a shop in our rural communities
nowadays. So the shops need not keep many assistants without
distinction. They should be classified into different grades so as to
keep only necessary hands.

Wholesale agencies, too, should organize their goods supply system
rationally and reduce their personnel. At this meeting a suggestion has
been made that the provincial wholesale centres should be transferred to
the provincial people’s committees. This will not do. They should
belong to the Ministry of Commerce, and this ministry should ensure
that commodities are equally distributed amongst all districts.

If purchasing is organized sensibly, the procurement sector, too,
will be able to save a great deal of manpower. At present, there are a
few procurement workers in each ri, but they are unnecessary since
there are shops in every rural ri. These shops should take charge of
purchasing, and the county procurement workers should collect the
purchased goods by travelling around the shops in small trucks. Then,
there will be no problem. If the League of Socialist Working Youth,
the Union of Agricultural Working People, and the Women’s Union
organizations are well stimulated, they will be good at information
work for procurement and contribute to increasing the amount of the
procurement. The purchasing system should be established properly
and organized rationally, so as to save labour and the surplus must be
moved to another sector.

Too many people are engaged in shoe repair, watch repair and in
other communal services, and this sector, too, needs investigation and
pruning so as to remove excessive labour.

Managerial staffs of factories and other enterprises must also be
reduced without hesitation.

It is reported that at present these managerial staffs account for 4.5
per cent of the total industrial population on the average, and even 7
per cent in extreme cases. This is excessive.
In future, the proportion of managerial staff should be reduced to 1.2 to two per cent or so. A maximum of 2.5 per cent can be permitted in special cases. In a factory or enterprise which has not more than 100 workers, the manager will even be able to do the statistical work.

A small managerial staff does not necessarily mean that it cannot ensure a large amount of production. At present, some officials think that the management structure is doing the job; it is not the management structure but the working class, the producer masses, that is doing the job. The managerial force of factories and enterprises should be reduced without hesitation, and productive labour should be increased.

It will be a good idea to merge local industry factories in counties into combinations. Even small local industry factories in counties have their own managerial staffs of several people including the men in charge. If these factories are merged, a great deal of managerial labour can be saved.

Reduction of the managerial force will prevent people from travelling about to obtain materials. A large number of people are now doing this. They are also staying in Pyongyang. They have come from provinces to obtain materials, but many of them waste a large sum of state money, idling away their time, playing chess or leading an indolent and dissipated life. In our country, all materials are now supplied under the material supply plan. Therefore, even if people from factories and enterprises travel about to obtain materials, they will not be able to get the materials which are not available, nor will the material supply agencies issue the items which are not supposed to be supplied simply because people visit them personally. If they think that production will go smoothly only when people travel about to obtain materials, they will be mistaken. The management force must be reduced so as to prevent people from wasting time by travelling about in vain.

If managerial labour is to be reduced, officials must also improve their work method. They must not summon managerial workers of factories and other enterprises frequently to higher authorities, but
senior officials must personally visit their subordinate units and solve the problems at the lower echelons and help them in their work. In addition, the managerial workers of factories and enterprises must increase their work efficiency steadily and work more enthusiastically.

Research institutes must also be merged or disbanded as the situation requires. There are many designing establishments in provinces, and these can be merged into one. Research institutes should be reduced so as to move many engineers and assistant engineers to newly built factories and enterprises.

The personnel of Party organs should also be reduced. In the past few years, the staffs of Party committees have swollen a great deal on the whole. An investigation shows that there are many instances of unnecessary expansion. So the organizational structure of Party bodies should be overhauled, merging departments or removing some offices according to the character of their work.

Office No. 3 of the Party committees at different echelons and the revolutionary relics departments of the provincial Party committees, for instance, need not exist separately. The work of Office No. 3 can be turned over to the organizational department, and that of the revolutionary relics department to the information and publicity department. The office of the secretaries in charge of agriculture and industry will not be necessary for all county Party committees. Secretaries for industry can supervise both industry and agriculture in those counties where there are many industrial enterprises and agricultural output is low; and the secretaries for agriculture can do both in those counties where agricultural output is high and there are few industrial enterprises. In future, the Party committees of the provinces, cities and counties, too, should be graded just as the people’s committees are, and the size of their staffs should be decided according to their grades.

The reduction of the personnel of Party bodies should be handled with prudence lest their departments be merged or their personnel reduced, at random. Economic progress in our country has been rapid not only because the policies of our Party are correct but also because
Party work has developed in depth. If Party work had lagged behind administrative and economic work, our country could not have become the powerful socialist state it is today.

At this meeting, a suggestion has been made to merge the youth work department and the administrative department into the organizational department, but this must not be done at the present stage.

We set up the youth work department separately for the purpose of improving work among the young people. Youth work ought to be done particularly well, since it is an important undertaking to train the reserves of our revolution. If we should disband the youth work department and place the work of directing the working people’s organizations all in the care of the organizational department, youth work could not be done properly, being lost in the enormous volume of the work of the organizational department. As matters stand now, the organizational department is not giving proper guidance to the work of the trade unions, the Union of Agricultural Working People, and the Women’s Union.

Nor should the administrative department be merged into the organizational department. It must function separately so as to direct and control the judicial and prosecuting institutions and the social security service to work properly—to refrain from trying the cases of people who have not been proved guilty by convincing evidence and punishing them, or judging innocent people guilty. If you doubt the need to keep the administrative department as a separate organization simply because you could dispense with it in the past, you are mistaken.

An opinion has also been expressed in favour of abolishing the commercial department of the Pyongyang City Party Committee, but it must not be abolished. The supply of vegetables and other goods in Pyongyang is more efficient than in provinces because the city Party committee has the commercial department which directs commercial work. If we abolish the commercial department and let the light-industry department perform its functions as is the case with the
provincial Party committees, the light-industry department will be unable to guide commercial work properly under the circumstances where it is unable to direct even local industry as it should. It is desirable that the city Party committees not only in Pyongyang but also in Chongjin and Hamhung which have large populations should have commercial departments.

Beside reducing the personnel of Party organs, we should adopt measures to ensure that at some units people who are not full-time Party officials do Party work while participating in productive labour. In small factories and enterprises Party workers will be quite able to do Party work while participating in productive labour.

Next, we must give a strong stimulus to the technical innovation campaign in the industrial sector and increase productivity so as to save labour.

In hearty response to the report to the Fifth Party Congress on carrying out the three major tasks of the technical revolution, the workers of Huichon have pressed ahead vigorously with the technical innovation campaign. Last August they produced 850 machine tools of different kinds and thus surpassed the level where they can produce 10,000 machine tools a year. This means an increase to 400 per cent compared with the annual output of 2,500 machine tools in the preceding period. Seeing the torch of technical innovations raised by the workers of the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory, the workers of the Kusong Machine-Tool Factory have improved their production processes and mechanized and automated production by strenuous efforts. As a result, they have produced 850 machine tools a month this year, although they produced only 1,400 a year in the previous period. This is a remarkable success which amazes the world. This dramatic increase in production by the workers of Huichon and Kusong by means of technical innovations, without a noticeable increase in the number of work hands, means, in the long run, that they have saved a great deal of labour.

Why can other factories and enterprises not mechanize and automate production processes by making technical innovations when
the Huichon and Kusong Machine-Tool Factories can do this? Still being passive and conservative, some officials are not working hard to improve production processes and mechanize and automate production. The timber industry and the construction sector, for instance, are still hanging on to their old norms, instead of saving labour through technical innovations. Hanging on to old norms and only asking for more work hands means that they intend to work in an easy-going manner without exerting themselves.

It is true that there can be differences in the degree of introducing mechanization and automation in production at factories and other enterprises. Although not all factories and enterprises can increase their production to 400 per cent just as the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory did, they will be able to double the output at least. Doubling production is very welcome. The question depends on whether or not the officials concerned work zealously to carry out the Party’s policy on saving labour and increasing production through a powerful technical innovation movement.

By developing a powerful technical innovation campaign following the example of the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory, all sectors and all units of the national economy must steadily improve production processes and mechanize and automate production through strenuous efforts. In this way they will increase production and obtain more manpower reserves.

If we are to press forward the technical innovation campaign forcefully, we must conduct an ideological struggle amongst the officials. A technical innovation means a revolution, so it cannot be effected without the ideological struggle. The Party Central Committee departments in charge of economic affairs and the Cabinet Secretariat must intensify the ideological struggle amongst the officials of the ministries and other central authorities, and the local Party organizations must strengthen it among the factories and enterprises. Those who cannot get through the intense ideological struggle will drop away, and those who get through it will continue to advance, flying the red flag.
To proceed, we must conduct Party work, political work, well so as to give full play to the energy of the working masses.

Recently, we have examined and criticized the tendency towards a narrow-minded closed-door attitude which is in evidence in the work of Party organizations and have taken steps to improve its organizational work and deal more efficiently with the masses of different sections. These measures are of great importance not only in rallying the broad sections of the masses closely behind the Party but also in mobilizing manpower reserves.

If Party work, political work, is efficient, it can give full scope to the energy of the working masses and encourage them to do double and treble the amount of work. Party organizations must work well with the masses and encourage all of them to work enthusiastically for the Party and the revolution. There is a great manpower reserve in efficient Party work and political work and in increasing the working people’s energy. A large amount of labour ought to be saved by giving full scope to the energy of all the working people through the revolutionary improvement of Party organizational work in keeping with the facts and by means of efficient work amongst the masses at different levels.

In order to ease the acute manpower situation, we must improve labour administration. The Ministry of Labour and other labour administration services must correct the shortcomings in this work as soon as possible and organize it well to meet the requirement of the situation. In particular, we must pay close attention to improving labour administration in the agricultural sector, and press forward the work of easing the present strain on manpower.

In addition, we must intensify Party guidance to ensure that all sectors and all units develop a powerful mass campaign for the mobilization of manpower reserves. The economic departments of the Party Central Committee must stimulate the senior officials of the ministries and other central authorities, the provincial Party committees must rouse the leaders of factories and enterprises to action, so that the leadership officials themselves display a high degree
of Party spirit in exploring and mobilizing manpower reserves. All the Party organizations must conduct an uncompromising ideological struggle against the slightest manifestation of passivity, conservatism, and self-centredness revealed by institutions and provinces and other districts, and further strengthen their supervision and control of labour administration. In this way, we shall succeed in solving the acute manpower problem and satisfy the demand for labour which is increasing with the development of the national economy.
FOR THE INTRODUCTION
OF UNIVERSAL TEN-YEAR
COMPULSORY GENERAL EDUCATION

Concluding Remarks at an Enlarged Meeting
of the Political Committee of the Central
Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea
September 30, 1971

Yesterday, I examined the matter of introducing universal ten-year compulsory education which includes senior middle-school training, and I think we shall have to adopt it in the future.

Until now we have been giving the pupils universal nine-year compulsory technical education because we have had to train them in technology. If we extend the period of compulsory education to ten years by adding another year, and if we replace the subjects on technology in the current curriculum with those on general knowledge, we shall be able to teach all the younger generation a perfect knowledge of secondary level. Now that the shortage of technical labour has been eased to a considerable degree, there will be no problem in the changeover from universal nine-year compulsory technical education to universal ten-year compulsory education.

It is necessary to raise the working people’s level of general knowledge to that of a senior middle-school graduate not only for the purpose of developing industry further, but also for attaining rapid progress in agriculture. The People’s Army also has many technical sections and this requires that the young people who are to join the
service should have, at least, general knowledge of senior middle-school level. Everything will go smoothly when young people who have been given ten-year compulsory education go to work in factories and rural communities and to serve in the army.

It is very important for people to acquire general knowledge of senior middle-school level.

There is a great difference in the development of people who have received senior middle-school education and those who have not. At present, some cadres cannot raise their level in spite of their hard work, and this is mainly because they have not had a proper secondary education. Senior middle-school graduates can teach themselves fairly difficult subjects even if they do not take university courses. They can digest any books, either on natural science or social science. People who lack a secondary education cannot digest social science properly, and still less natural science.

Senior middle-school graduates can also acquire technical skills quickly. Since they have learned algebra, geometry and other basic subjects, they can acquire reasonably high level techniques quickly. If technical skills are taught to senior middle-school graduates for six months or for a year, they can perform any work successfully in factories.

Senior middle-school graduates will also find it easy to take university courses after their service in the army. Even after several years’ military service, they will be able to take full university courses, without going through the preparatory course.

As matters now stand, young people go to serve in the army without having acquired a complete secondary education, so they have to go through complicated processes if they are to enter university after their military service. The discharged soldiers have to pass a preparatory course if they are to take a university course, and they prefer to take social-science courses rather than natural-science courses. Even in the study of social science, they find it very difficult to keep pace with other students. But, if they finish ten-year compulsory education before they join the army, they will be able to take a university course
directly after their discharge from the service. In this case, they can catch up quickly with other students if they make a little effort to review the basic subjects since they have already learned enough about them.

In conclusion, we must change over from universal nine-year compulsory technical education to universal ten-year compulsory education.

The introduction of this form of education will mean a large step forward in the cultural revolution. It will give the working people in our country an opportunity to reach the highest level of general knowledge in Asia.

How universal ten-year compulsory education is to be introduced needs further study. If the school age begins at seven as it does now and one year is added to the leaving age so as to make up the ten-year period for the compulsory training, the pupils will have to finish this education when they are older than working age. This will have a great effect on the labour problem. So it seems a good idea to begin this compulsory education at the age of six, one year earlier than now.

At present, preschool children spend three years in kindergarten, from the ages of four to seven. If they begin school at six, their kindergarten period will be one year shorter than now. If they spend two years in kindergarten and enter school at six, they will complete it at sixteen at which age they can go to work or serve in the army.

If they finish their senior middle-school education at sixteen, girls who enter university will graduate from it early. At present, the girls who take a medical university course, for instance, finish it when they are relatively old. Some of them even graduate from university at the age of 28 or 29, so they marry soon and have children, and consequently are unable to serve society for very long. In future, girls who start a four-year course, like that of the university of education, at the age of 16, will finish it when they are 20 years old. Even if they start a six-year course at the university of medicine, for instance, they will graduate when they are 22 years old.

Since they will finish senior middle school at 16 in the future, girls
can also serve in the army for two to three years before they go to university, just as boys do. This, of course, does not mean that all the girls must perform military service after their ten-year compulsory education. The army does not need so many women. Hundreds of thousands of girls will finish senior middle school every year in the future, so the army can recruit as many girls as it needs even if those who choose medical and similar courses are sent there straight away.

Boys will finish a university course when they are a little older than their female counterparts because they have to serve in the army. But boys can also finish it younger than under the present system. If a boy performs some three years of military service from 16 years of age, and then enters a five-year university course at 19, he will finish it at 24. He can work a great deal for the state and society for some five years before he marries, say, at 29 or 30. This is good for boys.

The point is whether six-year-old children can be taught in the first year of the primary school course. I have studied this problem a great deal, and I think that they are quite ready for this training.

In some socialist countries the age for compulsory education is six. In a capitalist country which is said to be giving “nine-year compulsory education”, schooling also begins at six. Of course, “compulsory education” in capitalist countries is different, in essence, from that in socialist countries. In our country, compulsory education means that, if a child of school age is not sent to school, the responsible adult, parent or guardian, incurs legal penalties; but capitalist “compulsory education” implies that children of school age are admitted to school. In other words, under their “compulsory education” system, one is free to send one’s children to school if one wishes.

In view of the fact that six-year-old children are given school education in other countries, there is no reason why our age for starting school should be seven. At present, some people doubt the possibility of educating six-year-old children, arguing that it would be difficult to teach them at school because they are too young to know anything, and that school training would interfere with their physical development.
There is no need to worry about that.

At present, six-year-olds are being taught in the first year of more than 40 schools on an experimental basis. Yesterday, I went over the report which reviews the one-year experiment in these schools, and at the consultative meeting of educationists, talked to the teachers in charge of the experimental classes. The six-year-olds who have finished kindergarten are fully qualified for first-year primary school training. According to information I was given, a primary school in Songnim, which taught 48 six-year-olds, has produced 35 pupils with excellent marks, 13 with good marks, and none with ordinary marks. We have conducted an experiment on six-year-olds at the Pyongyang Namsan High School, and the results are fairly good.

I had a child, a little younger than six, enrolled in the first year of the primary course of the Pyongyang Namsan High School for the purpose of testing whether it is advisable to teach six-year-olds at school. The class is said to contain seven and eight-year-old children. The child is the youngest of the class and said to be fairly good at learning and keep pace with the others well.

Giving school education to six-year-olds will probably pose no problem in cities like Pyongyang and Songnim which have ample kindergarten accommodations for all the children.

I was told that, according to experiments which have been carried out it would be rather difficult under the present circumstances to give six-year-olds school training in mountainous districts.

At a consultative meeting yesterday, a woman teacher from Kujigol, Yangdok County, made a very impressive speech. She was teaching a first-year class of 20 six-year-olds. Two of the children gave up schooling halfway, and she taught the remaining 18 for one year. Of the 18, only eight children had finished kindergarten education, and the rest had no experience of this sort, and it was difficult for them to get to and from school. They had to walk six to eight kilometres, and this was very hard for them, and in winter, particularly, the weather was so cold that they used to come to school crying and tired, and often dozed off in class. Probably, the teacher had a lot of trouble. In spite of her
A school in Kapsan is also carrying out an experiment on six-year-olds in the first year, and there the conditions for school going seem to be worse than those in Yangdok. In winter, the children have to go over passes through deep snow and in snowstorms to reach school, and, because of high mountains, the sun sets earlier and it becomes dark earlier and they usually have to come home across the passes at night. So the teacher in charge of the class discussed the matter with the guardians and brought the children into the hostel. The children are too young to feel at home in the hostel, and they say they would like to go home.

In mountainous districts, the long distance to and from school is a problem. It is unnecessary to have all the children come a long way to the parent school. Villages can even be established in mountainous areas, and a kindergarten set up in each of them, and a branch school organized in the kindergarten. If we assign a teacher to each of the branch schools for the children who are too young to walk all that distance, and if the children are sent to the parent school from their second year, the problem will be solved. If we develop this and other methods, we shall be able to give school education to the six-year-olds in mountainous areas.

Education for six-year-olds needs further experimental work. We have conducted experiments with some 40 schools so far, and it is desirable to do it with 400 schools in the 1971-72 school year.

If we are to educate the six-year-olds at school, it is necessary for kindergartens to give them efficient basic training in preparation for school.

Teachers say that there is a great difference between the children who have received education in kindergartens and those who have not. It is difficult for the latter to assimilate what is taught in school, and the results are not good.

At yesterday’s consultative meeting I asked a teacher from a primary school in the Samsok District, Pyongyang, how it was that
some children had not gone to kindergarten before they entered school when there were kindergartens in many places in that district. She replied that their grandmothers were so indulgent that they did not send their grandchildren to kindergarten. Indulgent grandmothers will not be able to educate them properly at home.

Kindergarten teachers educate them well, without indulging children. Some time ago, an official of the General Association of Korean Residents in Japan sent us his three sons, requesting me to take care of their training. One of them is six years old. At first, the boy was self-indulgent and unruly even in my home. I sent him to a kindergarten and brought him home after three days to see him and found that he had changed a great deal. In my presence he looked very reserved, knew how to greet people politely, and behaved himself. Probably his teacher at the kindergarten had taught him not to forget to salute the Marshal and not to be mischievous. On that afternoon I took him in my car and went for a drive around Mt. Taesong. This time he did not talk nonsense as he had done previously and even saluted the soldiers whom he happened to see from the car. So I thought that kindergarten teachers really were different from ordinary people. Certainly, kindergarten teachers have a way of teaching children. I intend to examine the boy once more in a week. Yesterday, I asked his teacher whether the boy could be sent to school next year, and the teacher answered that she was very sure that the boy would be ready for school by that time.

Kindergartens must prepare their children well for school training.

They are not doing this work properly at present, so that some of the children from kindergartens do not listen to their teachers in class and try to go out, and some of them do not even know how to hold a pencil. So school teachers seem to have a lot of trouble for the first month or two after the children’s enrolment. Even a three-year-old child can hold a spoon if it is taught to do, and the fact that six-year-olds cannot hold a pencil is due to the kindergarten’s neglect of teaching them how to do so.

During the last six months of their education, kindergartens will
have to teach their children how to count, how to hold a pencil, and how to write their names at least. Teaching hours will have to be extended. In the last term of kindergarten training, two lessons are given daily at present. One or two lessons must be added to them so as to develop the children’s power of attention.

It is very important to define the school system properly in introducing universal ten-year compulsory education.

At yesterday’s consultative meeting, three different suggestions were made: the first for a system consisting of a five-year primary course and a five-year secondary course; the second for a system composed of a four-year primary course, a four-year middle-school course and a two-year senior middle-school course; and the third for a system comprising a four-year primary course, a three-year middle-school course and a three-year senior middle-school course.

Some capitalist countries have a system of six-year primary-school course, and this is aimed at teaching pupils how to use an abacus, how to draft a paper, how to write a letter, and how to send a cable so that they can manage to do business. In other words, they are given six years of primary-school training so that they can earn a living even if they do not receive secondary education.

In our country, child labour is prohibited by law, so no children are allowed to give up schooling halfway unless disabled by illness. Every child must receive a secondary education at least. So any of these three ideas will do in our country. The Ministry of General Education should hold wide discussions with educationists on how to work out a rational school system.

It is a very heavy task to provide universal ten-year compulsory education.

We shall need a large number of additional schoolrooms if we are to accommodate all the six-year-old children whose number will increase by hundreds of thousands every year. We have some 4,300 primary schools in all in our country, and each of them will have to build several schoolrooms at least. An enormous number of textbooks will have to be printed. The textbooks on our language, arithmetic, and
communist morality which are needed for the children in the first year of the primary course alone will amount to millions of copies, and an enormous amount of paper will be required to print them. The new school system will also require us to compile all the textbooks over again. If it is to do all this at once, the state will have to bear a very heavy burden.

I am of the opinion, therefore, that universal ten-year compulsory education should be introduced gradually as the necessary preparations are made rather than adopted at the same time in all parts of the country. In other words, the new system of education should be started in cities and workers’ districts, and then extended to rural communities, first of all to those in the plains and then to those in the mountains. Since the children in mountainous areas will have to be provided with the facilities for travelling to and from their schools, these areas will have to be the last to adopt the new system.

We must set this year as a year of preparation for the new education system and make further experiments on ten per cent of the children of school age in 400 schools. The Science and Education Department of the Party Central Committee and the provincial Party committees must carry out further studies on whether it is feasible to teach the six-year-olds at school.

The experiment in 400 schools will need additional accommodation, but some schools will be able to do it without building extra facilities. At present, some of the rural schools teach their pupils on a single shift. If these schools teach senior pupils in the afternoon and juniors in the morning, they will be able to use the classrooms rationally and dispense with additional facilities. We must discuss this problem a little more and work out detailed measures.

After a little further experimentation this year, we shall apply the new system with 20 per cent of the total number of children of school age every year by 1974, and then with the remaining 30 per cent in 1975, moving towards a goal to finish the project during the Six-Year Plan.

I think it advisable to draw up a detailed plan for the introduction of ten-year compulsory education which includes senior middle-school
training, and then make it a law and publish it at a Supreme People’s Assembly session in 1972 or 1973.

Whether or not we establish the system of universal ten-year compulsory education quickly depends on how we organize classrooms, how we train teachers and how we prepare textbooks.

In order to introduce this education satisfactorily, it is necessary, first of all, to construct a large number of school buildings.

The new system requires the construction of a great many classrooms every year, and we shall have to build more than 10,000 of them to make up for the present shortage alone. In spite of this, officials neglect school construction appallingly. So I am considering criticizing them sharply for this neglect.

We must build school buildings in terms of a long-term plan for the introduction of ten-year education, and, at the same time, concentrate on building classrooms which are needed to overcome the present shortage.

I have heard that some schools in Pyongyang are now teaching in three shifts because of the shortage of accommodation. It is intolerable that they should do this in the capital city, the seat of the Central Committee of the Party and the Government of the Republic. We can accept a two-shift system which is used in urban communities, but not, on any account, the three-shift system. The best thing to do is to teach on a single-shift system, even in cities. Because of the shortage of school buildings, however, we cannot do so at once.

The school construction force is available in Pyongyang at present, but timber is in short supply, so that we cannot build school buildings. The Ministry of Forestry must supply Pyongyang rapidly with the timber needed for the construction of school buildings.

I was told that a three-shift teaching system is also used in provincial capitals. Provinces must construct classrooms quickly by means of a shock-brigade action so as to overcome this shortage, and abolish three-shift teaching.

Since there are concrete panel works and other building materials production centres in the provinces, school construction can go ahead quickly from next year provided they are set the task.
The schools which are to be built should not be too large, but of a moderate size. Two or three-storeyed brick buildings will be suitable for the purpose. They need not be higher than a three-storey building. It is advisable to build three-storey buildings of a moderate size, and teach the pupils of senior classes on the upper floors and those of junior classes on the lower floors. Build brick walls and support the roofs with reinforced concrete trusses if these are available or use wooden trusses if they are not available, and you will be able to construct as many schools as you need.

You suggested that you would build small primary school buildings in back streets so that the schoolchildren do not have to cross main streets to go to school. That is not a bad idea.

In order to give effect to universal ten-year compulsory education successfully, it is also necessary to train a large number of teachers.

It will be fairly difficult to train so many teachers at once in view of the acute manpower shortage in our country. So the problem of teachers will have to be solved in two ways.

For the present, from among the people who will be removed from Party and government bodies as a result of the forthcoming reduction of their organizational structures, those who are capable of teaching should be selected to supplement the teachers’ ranks. If approximately 5,000 people are selected and given a six-month teacher training course at universities of education, the shortage of teachers will be eased considerably. In addition, the people who are qualified as teachers but are working in other sectors should be sought out and reassigned as teachers.

Under a long-term plan, we shall have to establish more universities of education and teachers training colleges so as to produce teachers on a large scale.

If a large number of primary school teachers are to be trained, more teachers training colleges will have to be set up in the provinces. I think it would be a good idea to reorganize the existing kindergarten teachers training colleges in the provinces into teachers training colleges, each of which will consist of a kindergarten teachers faculty and a primary
school teachers faculty, and let them produce both kindergarten and primary school teachers. If they do this, they will not have to build new college buildings because they can extend those of the existing kindergarten teachers training colleges, nor will they have to increase the size of the staffs of the colleges.

Ways of increasing the number of teachers training colleges and universities of education need further study.

One of the most serious defects in education at present is that teachers are not good at giving object lessons. This is mainly because they do not know what is really happening around them.

A teacher who has never been to Mt. Paektu or Mt. Kumgang will find it really difficult to explain about these mountains when he deals with them in the textbook. I have heard that many of our teachers have never visited Pyongyang. At yesterday’s consultative meeting, a teacher said that she had come on her first visit to Pyongyang thanks to my concern as Premier. Such teachers can hardly have given an effective description of Chollima Street and the Chollima Statue in the textbooks.

It is necessary to organize teachers’ field trips widely. This is important in broadening their mental horizon.

I have also proposed the idea of field trips for the pupils, who are receiving general education, because they have to acquire first-hand knowledge. In the past, children in Pyongyang did not really know what an ox was like, although they had a notion that it was a yellow animal with horns, nor did they have a clear picture of the sea in their minds. Pupils in mountainous places like Kapsan did not know what Chollima Street in Pyongyang looked like or what a train was. Although it is not a long way from Kapsan to Hyesan, it was not easy for a local school to organize a field trip to Hyesan on its own sponsorship in order to show its pupils a train. So I have taken steps to organize children’s field trips lest they should be trained to be men who do not know what an ox or a train is like.

Education is not something that requires only school buildings and textbooks. The state will have to bear a heavy burden and undertake a complicated task of dealing with large numbers of travellers; it must take
steps to organize teachers’ field trips and improve the pupils’ practical education. The senior officials of the State Planning Commission and of the Ministry of General Education must remember the experience of their own school days and pay serious attention to this matter.

Field trips must be widely organized for the students of universities of education and teachers training colleges as well as teachers who are already working. These students, at least, although not all other students, must have opportunities to visit Pyongyang and other major cities, climb Mt. Paektu and Mt. Kumgang and inspect major factories, enterprises and harbours in their university days. In this way, they will acquire first-hand knowledge of the world before they become teachers.

Hotels for the teachers and pupils and students who are on field trips should be built in Pyongyang and provincial capitals. Chief secretaries of provincial Party committees must take the responsibility for this work and press ahead with the project. In Pyongyang two hotels will have to be constructed, each capable of accommodating 500 to 600 people, one for teachers and students and the other for primary and middle school children.

Schoolchildren’s hotels should serve simple food. Since these hotels do not accommodate travellers in general, they need not serve a variety of food. Rice and soup for breakfast, and a bowl of rice hash or rice served in soup for lunch will suit the schoolchildren on field trips.

There has been a suggestion to start a children’s passenger train service. The Ministry of Railways must organize their trains separately and run them. This will facilitate Pyongyang children’s journeys to Mt. Paektu and to the seaside as well as children’s field trips from the provinces to Pyongyang. These trains must serve only the schoolchildren on field trips.

If we construct these hotels and operate children’s trains, we shall be able to organize their field trips regularly.

 Teachers will have to be provided with the facilities to watch television and read newspapers and other publications regularly.

At yesterday’s consultative meeting, a teacher from Songnim said in her speech that her pupils, watching television at home, talked about
new machines which had been produced, the arrival of foreign delegations in Pyongyang, football games in Pyongyang and their scores and other news items and even about matters related to Party’s policies which they had heard from their fathers. She said that teachers had not known about these matters until they heard them from their pupils. She meant that teachers were lagging behind their students. Indeed, little attention has been paid to them. In future, we must improve the social treatment of teachers in the field of general education. They must be provided with television sets and newspapers.

If we are to implement universal ten-year compulsory education, we must also see that textbooks are compiled well.

As matters now stand, textbooks are not edited properly. It is a principle that the level of their contents should rise step by step in keeping with the pupils’ promotion to higher classes. But they are not compiled in this way at present. Textbooks for some school years grow difficult suddenly, and teachers say that they find it very hard to teach. This shortcoming in the textbooks is due to the fact that these books were compiled without necessary preparations when universal nine-year compulsory technical education was introduced, and that the compilers, who were not experienced in teaching and knew nothing of child psychology, compiled the textbooks, motivated by their subjective views.

It seems to me that there are many issues which deserve attention.

Yesterday, I talked to teachers who are in charge of the first-year classes at primary schools, and they said that the words *oi* (cucumber–Tr.) and *au* in the vernacular textbooks had not been understood in the same degree. The word *au* which means younger brother and which is not widely used was difficult for the pupils to pronounce and write. But the word meaning cucumber which they eat at home and see frequently was understood quickly and was easy to write. This seems a simple question but this and other similar issues deserve the attention of the textbook compilers.

It is desirable that textbooks which have been compiled should be discussed by teachers. Teachers also know how to teach them easily.
At yesterday’s consultative meeting, a woman teacher from the Aewon Middle School in Ryonggang County who had been teaching pupils in the first year of the primary course for more than 10 years took the floor, and her speech was convincing. When teaching little children how to count, she wrote figures on the blackboard and let her pupils read them after her, and the result was not very good. So she took the children outdoors. They stood under a tree, and the teacher picked off one leaf and said that it was one leaf, and then picked off two leaves, saying these were two. She taught them how to count in this manner, and the pupils learned it quickly. In order to stimulate the pupils’ enthusiasm for their school work, the teacher took them by bus to Pyongyang. While looking around the city, she stopped the bus in front of a twenty-storeyed building, explained that one line of windows represented one storey, and let the pupils count how many storeys the building had. The curious pupils counted from one to twenty. This was how they learned to count up to twenty and they did not forget it.

A teacher from the primary school attached to the Sinuiju Teachers Training College used to take the pupils of the first-year class fresh from kindergartens to a harbour to see off the ships which were going to fish on the high seas. She also used to take her pupils aboard large fishing boats when they were in port and explained about the fish, teaching the names of the fish one by one. These activities were intended to give them a knowledge of fish, and they understood easily.

From now onwards, many copies must be made of the textbooks which have been drafted and subjected to teachers’ consultation, instead of such consultation being confined, as it is now, to deliberation within the textbook compiling commission. This is a way to improve the quality of textbooks as much as possible.

The textbooks on the language, arithmetic, communist morality and other similar subjects for the primary course in particular must be edited well by obtaining many teachers’ opinions.

The Central Committee of the Party and the Cabinet will have to pay serious attention to the compilation of textbooks.
ON SOME PROBLEMS IN RAISING
THE PEOPLE’S STANDARD OF LIVING

Speech Delivered to Officials from the Sectors
of Commerce, Distribution and Light Industry

October 1, 1971

Today, I am going to talk about some of the problems in raising the
people’s standard of living.

Raising the people’s standard of living is the highest principle of
our Party’s activities and the most important task of our officials. In
particular, we can say that this is the basic revolutionary task of the
officials working in the fields of commerce, procurement and light
industry which are directly related to the people’s lives.

At present, conditions and possibilities exist for us to raise the
people’s living standards much higher than they are now, if our
officials pay a little attention and make an effort. But we are unable to
improve the supply of quite a few items of consumer goods to the
people, although we could do so because our officials do not work with
a high sense of responsibility and a high degree of enthusiasm.

I always say that, if supply is well organized, the present production
of vegetables and fish, for instance, will be enough to meet the demand
all the year round. If well organized, the supply of cooking oil and eggs
can also be smooth, and sugar can be supplied to the people, without
running out of stock, since 150,000 to 200,000 tons of it are imported
every year.

The problem of pork, chicken and other kinds of meat has not yet
been solved, but this is not an absolutely insoluble problem, either. Our estimates show that meat production is likely to increase gradually in future. If we produce a large number of small lorries and supply them to the rural communities and use the draught cattle as beef cattle, then they will breed much more and produce more meat, grazing in the mountains. I was told that, if cattle are allowed to graze in the mountains, each of them increases in weight by 70 kilogrammes in one summer. The problem of meat can, therefore, be solved if work is organized well. It is by no means an impossible task.

We must end the lack of concern for the people’s living standards once and for all, and work hard to raise them to a generally higher level.

We must first improve the distribution of foodstuffs and supply non-staple foodstuffs to the people properly.

The main thing in the distribution of foodstuffs is to solve the problem of non-staple foodstuffs for the people. This is the way to improve the people’s diet and save food grain. Our level of food grain supply is one of the highest in the world.

We must improve the supply of vegetables.

In the past, we were not good at vegetable cultivation and failed to meet the people’s needs for vegetables. But this problem has been resolved as a result of the introduction of the spray irrigation system in vegetable fields. Therefore, if the distribution workers well organize and improve the supply services, they will be able to provide the people with an adequate amount of vegetables.

The workers in the commercial and distribution sector must first improve the supply of vegetables in the districts where they are produced, so that they are available to the inhabitants all the year round. At the same time, vegetable cultivation should be widely encouraged in the districts where they can be produced in early spring, and work should be organized to supply them to Kanggye, Chongjin and other places where they are produced later.

Spring comes more than half a month later in Kanggye and Chongjin than in Kaesong or Haeju. So vegetables are not available to the
inhabitants of the former when the people of the latter begin to receive
supplies of spring vegetables. If the people in Kaesong and Haeju
districts cultivate rather more vegetables than will meet their own needs,
the surplus can be shipped and supplied to the inhabitants of Kanggye
and Chongjin without difficulty since all these cities are accessible by
rail. If the supply of vegetables is organized in this way, the cooperative
farms which produce them will benefit because they can earn a higher
cash income, and the people living in Kanggye and Chongjin will
welcome it because they can eat vegetables earlier than usual.

Fruit, too, should be supplied from the districts where it thrives and
ripens earlier to places like Tokchon, Kanggye, Sakju, Kusong and so
on where it does not thrive and ripens later.

But the workers of the commercial sector do not organize this work.
They are just sitting with folded arms, supplying goods when these are
delivered to them, and doing nothing when nothing is delivered to
them.

In a socialist society, the people’s standard of living can improve
and they can live comfortably only when state commercial institutions
work hard and efficiently. In this society commodities are supplied
through the state commercial agencies, not through private channels.
The people can get the necessary supplies from no other source than
the state commercial institutions. Therefore, if these institutions do not
supply goods properly, the people will suffer hardship. That is why I
stress, at every available opportunity, that officials must look after the
people’s living conditions in a responsible manner.

If commercial workers organize work well, a large amount of dried
vegetables can be produced and supplied.

In many areas of our country a large amount of radishes can be
produced as a later crop after the reaping of grain crops.

On my visit to Nyongbyon County, North Phyongan Province, last
year, I instructed that radishes should be cultivated as a later crop on an
experimental basis after the harvest of early-ripening maize. The
radish cultivation was reported to have been successful. When I had
visited the county, the local farmers’ living standards were not high. So
I told them to cultivate early-ripening maize or wheat as an early crop, and then grow radishes as a later crop and process them into dried slices for the market. This is one way to earn a large cash income while producing three to four tons of cereals per hectare.

If farmers produce dried radish slices in large quantities, these can be purchased for supply to North Hamgyong Province or to fishing enterprises so that the people in the province or the fishing workers can get a regular supply of vegetables.

Dried radish slices are a good non-staple food item. During the anti-Japanese armed struggle, the guerrillas liked them. They liked them because they were light and convenient to carry and because they could be cooked in various dishes. Put them into water, and they will swell and can be pickled as kimchi, boiled into soup, stewed, or seasoned with meat and cooked into buns.

Not only radishes, but also large amounts of other vegetables should be dried and stored so that they can be supplied over a long period. Now that cooperative farms have been equipped with drying furnaces, the drying of vegetables is not a difficult problem. It all depends on how officials organize work.

There are many things that can be dried and used for non-staple foodstuffs. Bracken, mushrooms and other wild vegetables can be dried in large quantities. Sweet potato leafstalks are also edible if they are dried, and red-pepper leaves, pickled or dried, can be a good non-staple food.

Sweet potatoes are difficult to store raw, but sliced and dried ones can be kept in storage for a long time to be supplied to the children at nurseries and kindergartens. I think that there are many other items that can be dried and kept in storage before they are supplied. Commercial workers and all other officials must work hard to increase vegetable supplies for the people.

We must improve the supply of fish.

The size of the fish catch in our country at present is large enough to permit a daily supply of 100 grammes per head of the population. But the people are not supplied with fish as they should be. This is entirely
because the commercial and transport sectors are not working efficiently.

Because the Ministry of Commerce is not supplying non-staple food properly, ministries in charge of production are suggesting that they should organize shops for direct sale. In a socialist society, those ministries which are in charge of production are supposed, as a matter of principle, to assume the responsibility for production; and the Ministry of Commerce must be responsible for supply. They must perform different functions. The Ministry of Fisheries ought to assume the responsibility to catch fish and put them into refrigerator plants, and the Ministry of Commerce must be responsible for the delivery of the fish from the refrigerator plants to the provinces, cities and counties. In a socialist society, the establishment of direct sales shops by productive ministries is not very important.

Because the Ministry of Commerce cannot perform its functions properly, the Ministry of Fisheries has set up direct sales shops. But these shops are not being run satisfactorily. The ministry is not supplying fish to these shops regularly.

The present state of affairs is such that fish are supplied to the places for which I specified the amount of supply on my tour of inspection to these places, but other places are not supplied with them. It is obvious to everyone that lumbermen’s villages in Jagang or Ryanggang Province and the workers in Sakju, Tokchon and Pukchang, which are far from the sea, are not supplied with fish. The supply of fish is the commercial workers’ job which can be done very well by their own efforts, but they do not do so.

There is a saying that if you let a cliff roar, the whole land will echo. If we give one instruction, the officials ought to implement it by taking a hundred things into account. But they implement it only when we say a hundred things. The officials in charge of the commercial sector must work as befitting faithful servants of the people.

If the supply of fish is to be improved, not only must the commercial workers have a higher sense of responsibility, but the commercial, transport and fishery sectors must also get rid of
self-centredness and cooperate with one another. 

Institutional self-centredness has nothing in common with communist ideology; they contradict each other. Institutional self-centredness is a variant of individuals’ selfishness.

Lack of cooperation between officials, because of their institutional self-centredness, is now the cause of the failure to increase our catch of fish, which would otherwise increase. This year, the fishing boats working on the high seas were unable to catch as many fish as they could have caught, and this was because the fish which had been caught were not shipped off quickly. The fish should have been unloaded as soon as the carriers arrived in port so that they could leave for work immediately, but they were not unloaded promptly. The Ministry of Railways did not carry away the fish, and the Ministry of Commerce did not supply them, so that there was no space where fish could be unloaded, and the carriers had to stay in port for a long time acting as though they were storehouses. I was told that, therefore, the fishing boats on the high seas were unable to dispose of the caught fish and, for this reason alone, had to suspend their operations for as many as 25 days. At the rate of 1,000 tons of fish caught daily, it means a loss of 25,000 tons of fish. Not only the Ministry of Fisheries, but the Ministries of Commerce and Railways should be jointly held responsible for the loss of fish which could have been caught. Until now, the Cabinet Secretariat has not controlled the work in this sector nor have the Party Central Committee departments concerned supervised it properly.

Shrimps and other kinds of sea food should be dried in large quantities and supplied to the people.

Drying of these foodstuffs requires drying facilities. The Taephyong-style dryer, of simple construction, is ideal for this purpose. The fish which are dried for export should be of good colour and processed with care, but those for domestic consumption will do, even if their colour is a little inferior. The Taephyong-style dryer should be built at every place where it is needed for the drying of more fish.
The commercial workers must supply the four items of non-staple foodstuffs—vegetables, fish, eggs and cooking oil—to the working people regularly by making every possible effort.

We must also increase the amount of soya sauce and bean paste supplied.

We must also pay due attention to the supply of persimmons, chestnuts, and other choice fruits as well as pickled fish.

Not much of these items is now on sale in urban shops. Old people whom I have talked to say that even chestnuts for altars are not available. I am not sure whether in Hamgyong Provinces chestnuts are offered on an altar or not, but in Phyongan Provinces it is customary to put them on an altar. Of course, such old customs as ancestral worship will gradually die out in the future, but this will not happen overnight. There should be no instances of making people’s life tedious because of the absence of a few kinds of fruits like chestnuts from the market.

If we are to ensure a regular sale of choice fruit in the shops, we must fix their purchasing prices correctly. Chestnuts, for instance, should be priced differently according to the season. Those which are put on sale in autumn should be priced low, and those which are brought to the market in spring after being stored underground should be priced higher. If they are priced in this way, they will not run out of stock and can be in regular supply.

The commercial and light-industry sectors will have to study how to store chestnuts. Farmers say that chestnuts which are buried underground without being buried can endure long storage and that otherwise they cannot be stored for long because they quickly go bad. Storing them underground while in their burrs is an old and backward practice which was applicable when storing a small amount. If you are to buy and store a large amount of them, you have to work out a scientific method, or a method of chemical processing. In this way you can buy a large amount and store it for a long time before it is supplied to the people.

Baked sweet potatoes should also be sold.

They are delicious, and children like them. Some 50,000 tons of
sweet potatoes should be put aside from the amount appropriated as a food item, and should be baked for sale. The problem of producing syrup from sweet potatoes and supplying it should be solved.

Cigarettes should be supplied regularly to the working people. During the past anti-Japanese armed struggle, we made sure of a regular supply of cigarettes even in the most difficult circumstances. Cigarettes were needed during breaks in battle or when there was time to spare. When they ran out of stock, we managed to buy leaf tobacco at least and supplied it to the men. There can be no excuse for the fact that cigarettes are not regularly supplied in today’s favourable conditions.

In future we must increase the production of cigarettes and improve their supply. If cigarette paper is not available, we shall have to import it and increase the production of cigarettes so that they will be on sale everywhere.

We must improve procurement. Procurement is very important in raising the people’s standard of living and in increasing the sources of commodities. If we improve this work, we shall be able to stimulate the productive enthusiasm of the farmers and improve their living standards. Only when the pigs and chickens which farmers have raised are bought promptly will they raise more of them.

The workers of the Ministry of Procurement and Food Administration are only concerned about buying cereals, but not other farm products and local products.

At present, not many chestnuts are on sale in the shops, and this is due mainly to inefficient procurement. Procurement workers are over-critical and only try to buy chestnuts cheaply. That is why farmers do not care about producing them. I enquired about their prices and found that the price of the first grade chestnuts was fairly reasonable, but in fact procurement workers seldom buy them from the producers at this price. Some of the buyers assess even the best chestnuts as lower-grade and pay accordingly. Therefore, farmers do not take good care of chestnut trees nor do they even try to gather fallen chestnuts.

Farmers can make baskets, for instance, in winter for the market,
but they are reluctant to do so because the buyers do not pay reasonable prices and are over-critical.

Once I met a workteam leader in Yaksu-ri, Changsong County. In my talk to him, I said that the district was rich in bush clover and willows and how good it would be if they were to cut them and make large baskets with them and sell them so that the baskets could be used as substitutes for wooden boxes! Then the logs which had been used for making the boxes could be used to build houses or doors and windows. I told them to make a large number of baskets and sell them. The workteam leader replied that it was a good idea, but he added that basketmaking was not better than doing other work because baskets were very cheap, and, worse still, the buyers were hard to please, finding fault with the corners of the baskets, complaining that they were too coarse, and so on. So I asked what the people in his village did in winter. He answered that they did a little study and carried compost to their fields and did nothing else in particular. It is the procurement workers who dampen the productive zeal of the farmers at present.

The Ministry of Procurement and Food Administration is responsible for the careless work attitude of the procurement workers. Until now, this ministry has neglected education, political work, among the procurement workers. It has never called a meeting of these workers for the purpose of political work.

Without political work, nothing can be successful. Efficient political work, work among the people, is the secret of success in any undertaking.

The success in this year’s farming can be attributed to efficient work with tractor drivers at their conference which was held at the beginning of this year. This year work with tractor drivers was effective, so that they worked enthusiastically, raised the rate of tractor operations, and harrowed the fields in time so as to ensure that rice transplanting was finished by May 25. No matter how well you raise rice seedlings, the crop will not provide a good yield unless the seedlings are bedded out at the right time.

In South Hwanghae Province, a girl shop assistant worked well
with tractor drivers and encouraged them to work with enthusiasm. One night, she learned that a tractor driver was having a hard time in the paddy field, repairing his machine which had broken down. Carrying a torch, she went to him and encouraged him, offering him biscuits, cigarettes and hot water. Moved by her kindness, the driver repaired the tractor as quickly as he could and did the field work throughout the night. The more effective the supply services are, the more enthusiastically the workers will work. That is why we have already said that the supply services, the provision of necessities, mean political work precisely.

If the supply services, political work, are inefficient, nothing will be successful. At present, the Kusong Machine-Tool Factory is working hard to produce 10,000 machine tools. At first, things did not go smoothly there. So I sent an official there on a mission to find out what the supply situation was. He learned that fish, cooking oil, and even cigarettes were not being supplied in sufficient quantities, although egg supply was a little better. The work was not successful because the management simply urged the men to produce 10,000 machine tools without improving the supply service, political work. So we took the necessary steps, and since then things have been going well.

During the past anti-Japanese armed struggle, too, the unit which had fed the men well, let them have a sound sleep, and conducted political work among them efficiently when they were going into battle, won the battle with few casualties. But the unit which had neglected political work before battle always produced some stragglers or suffered one trouble or another.

Today, all the people are rushing ahead in the spirit of Chollima, and are working enthusiastically in order to reach a higher eminence. In step with their Chollima spirit, the workers in the procurement and commercial sectors and all other services must improve the supply service for them. If the industrial workers and farmers ride Chollima by increasing production, the service people must do the same by inspiring them with higher spirits through efficient service, efficient supply work.
As matters now stand, the officials in charge of the service sector are not ensuring supply work in keeping with the soaring spirits of the people, nor have they any regret that supply work is inefficient. How can they be called Party members? Our officials who are Party members must not work in this manner.

We must conduct political work amongst the procurement workers well, so as to give them a clear understanding of the importance of their duty and encourage them to make innovations in procurement.

If we are to bring about a change in procurement, we must not only improve political work amongst the procurement workers, but also provide them with sufficient material foundations. We must see that lorries to be used in procurement work are produced for all the counties. Some 200 small lorries should be manufactured using car engines and supplied to the procurement sector within this year. If we supply them with cars, instead of small lorries, every county official will try to use them, and this will hinder procurement work from being done smoothly.

We have to build up the ranks of procurement workers.

I think that it is preferable to assign as many women to this work as possible rather than men. Women are painstaking and industrious in everything, but men are not. It is desirable, therefore, that many of the men now on procurement work should be replaced by women.

Many people who have committed mistakes are now among the ranks of the procurement workers. It is necessary to help them well to rectify their errors. If we do this work well, we shall be able to educate and encourage many people to work faithfully. The Ministry of Procurement and Food Administration should convene a meeting of procurement workers after building up their ranks.

We must improve public catering.

The public catering sector must advance towards providing specialist restaurants and simplifying their operations.

If restaurants are specialized and their operations are simplified, they will be able to improve the quality of cooking and serve delicious food and prevent waste. Some of them should, therefore, specialize as
noodle restaurants, and some as rice-served-in-soup restaurants.

Restaurants should not produce too many kinds of dishes for a meal, but simplify them. Pyongyang *onban* has been celebrated for a long time, but it is only rice served in soup. As for side dishes, one or two items which have been well cooked are better than pickles and other sundries.

Hostels and eating houses should also serve one kind of palatable food for each meal—rice served in soup for breakfast, rice hash for lunch, and so on—so that people can eat all of them, without wasting a morsel. Restaurants in all parts of the country should specialize and their operations must be simplified.

We must improve food grain supply for the people.

When it is difficult to maintain the balance between food items to be supplied, the Ministry of Procurement and Food Administration seems to think of supplying ground wheat without sifting the bran. It must not do so. We could do so if we were not going to develop livestock farming, but it is unnecessary to do so since we are engaged in this undertaking. Since we have to provide feed for livestock farming, it is more profitable to sift bran for the animals and supply white flour to the people than to feed the animals with the grain. Then, the biscuits and bread made from the flour will be good to eat and good to look at. From now onwards, wheat must be well ground, and the people should be supplied with white flour.

Rice, too, must not be supplied, unpolished. It should be polished white before it is supplied, and the bran which is obtained in the process should be supplied as an item of grain feed for domestic animals. In this way we shall be able to solve the problem of animal feed and also supply polished rice to the people.

If we are to maintain a balance in the supply of food items, we must produce white flour and polished rice as food items, and use the bran from wheat and rice as animal feed so as to increase the production of meat for the people rather than supply unsifted flour and unpolished rice. In future, wheat and rice bran which are supplied for domestic animals should be counted as a grain feed item.
If the chicken plants in Pyongyang receive a regular supply of feed, they will be able to produce 7,000 tons of chicken a year. The new 10,000-ton-capacity pig farm in Pyongyang will also work on a steady basis if it is supplied with an adequate amount of feed. If things go successfully, Pyongyang will be able to produce 7,000 tons of chicken, 3,000 tons of duck, and 10,000 tons of pork annually. If, at some time in the future, we ensure a daily supply of 100 grammes of pork and chicken, 100 grammes of fish, and half an egg per head of the city’s population, and a regular supply of cooking oil and vegetables, the present amount of cereals used as food will be reduced considerably. If we supply meat and other highly nutritious non-staple foodstuffs liberally, we shall not have to supply as much food grain as we do now.

The procurement and food administration sector must, in future, collect all the bran so that it can be used as grain feed. But the bran obtained from the farmers’ cereals cleaned by the mills of cooperative farms should not be collected but allowed to be used by the owners for their own domestic animals. In addition, rice husks should be allowed to be used by the farmers as fuel. The state cannot afford to supply coal to the people in Jaeryong, Sinchon, South Hwanghae Province, and other lowland areas for winter use. So they have no other sources of fuel than rice husks.

Chicken plants must try to decrease the rate of feed consumption.

Specialists in poultry farming say that in foreign countries the rates of feed consumption per egg are 120 to 150 grammes or so. But in our country they are higher than those in other countries. This is because feed of full nutritious value is not supplied in sufficient quantities.

We envisage producing at least 1,000 million eggs from all our chicken plants annually during the Six-Year Plan, and in this context a few dozen grammes more feed per egg means an excessive use of tens of thousands of tons of grain. If the chicken plants decrease the rates of feed consumption by 60 grammes per egg, it means saving 60,000 tons of grain, and this is an enormous amount. This is enough to enable the restaurants in Pyongyang to serve as much noodles as required.

In future, the chicken plants must try hard to provide fully nutritious
feed and decrease the rates of its consumption.

If chicken plants are to do this, the Ministry of Fisheries will have to produce a large amount of fish meal for them. In processing the fish caught on the high seas at present, factory ships cut off their heads and tails and remove their entrails and throw them all away. They must not throw them away, but process them into fish meal. Feed chickens with a complete variety of feed including fish meal, and you will be able to reduce the use of grain feed.

The light industry sector must concentrate on solving the problems of clothing and shoes completely.

As I said yesterday at the consultative meeting of the departmental heads of the Party Central Committee and of the chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees, we cannot yet consider that these problems have been solved completely.

We must, first of all, solve the problem of clothing more satisfactorily.

The quickest way of doing this is to develop the production of knitwear.

Knitted goods are more economical, better-looking and easier to take care of than textile clothes. Knitted clothes are good for both women and men.

Some officials say that knitwear must be made of yarn which contains a considerable proportion of wool, but it need not necessarily contain wool. Some time ago, I met an official’s children who had returned from Japan. Most of them were wearing clothes knitted from thick twisted cotton yarn which contained not a gramme of woolen fibre.

Since we can manufacture knitting machines in our country, we must organize a vigorous campaign to construct knitwear factories, large, medium and small ones, in all parts of the country. In other words, we must undertake large, medium, and small-scale knitwear production simultaneously.

The provinces must vie with one another in the construction of knitwear factories. There are large numbers of housewives who have no jobs in towns, workers’ districts and in miners’ villages. In South
Phyongan Province, for instance, there are many of them in the Songhung Mine area, the Songchon Mine area and in Phyongsong, and in the areas where the People’s Army units are stationed there is a large number of officers’ dependents who do not work. Knitwear factories must be built in these areas, instead of being concentrated only in large cities like Pyongyang and Hamhung. These factories need not be large; small two-storey brick buildings in the back yards of multi-storey apartment houses will meet the purpose.

If we are to construct large numbers of these factories, we have to build a knitwear machine factory. Whether to build it in Pyongyang or to have it as an extension to an existing machine factory will have to be decided through consultation with the chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees. There will be nothing particularly difficult in building a knitwear machine factory. Since the manufacture of knitwear machines does not require an overhead crane, you can build the factory through a mass campaign by erecting walls, roofing it, equipping it with heating facilities, and then installing machine tools in it. The state must, without reserve, ensure the supply of machine tools needed for the construction of this factory. Special grinders and other machines and equipment which are not produced in our country will have to be imported.

The textile industry must strive to increase its spinning capacity to one million spindles. The spinning equipment needed for this project should be obtained through both imports and domestic production. It is desirable that 30,000 spindles should be produced in our country next year, and then 40,000 every year until the number totals 150,000, and the another 150,000 spindles should be imported. The spinning equipment to be imported should be capable of producing yarn from vinalon, staple fibre and other kinds of chemical fibre. The imported equipment should be used in factories like those in Phyongsong, and the equipment produced in our country should be used in factories like those in Haeju, Wonsan, and Chongjin.

In addition to increasing the number of spindles, we must build up spare parts factories. Imported spinning equipment is of different
specifications, so it is necessary to have good repair and maintenance shops and good spare parts factories.

The light industry sector, like others, needs to build up its own spare parts factories and plants which produce its own machinery and other equipment. The textile industry must plan the construction of a factory capable of manufacturing not only the spinning machinery but also knitwear equipment. If the light industry sector is to equip these factories, it will need as many machine tools as the rural economy does.

In view of the fact that, at present, machine-tool factories are working hard, resolved to increase the production of machine tools, we expect that a considerable number of them will be manufactured by April 15 next year. We intend to supply many of them, which are of good quality, to the sector which is related to the people’s standard of living. If we supply the light industry sector with approximately 3,000 machine tools, I think many problems can be solved.

It would be impossible, of course, for us to manufacture all of the different kinds of machine tools which are needed for light industry. We have to equip the factory which will produce machinery and spare parts for light industry, even by importing those machine tools which we cannot manufacture ourselves.

There has been a suggestion that a textile mill should be constructed in Tokchon. But there is no large source of labour there, so it is impossible to have a large textile mill there. If we start a commuter train service between Pukchang and Tokchon, women who live in Pukchang and in the coal-miners’ villages in its vicinity will be able to work in the mill, and this will solve the problem of labour. But this is not a very good solution.

Single-storey buildings are better for the textile mill than multi-storey buildings. The size of the new textile mill should be determined so as to facilitate management and operation.

The textile mill which has been built in Kanggye is designed to produce fabrics from cotton, which will be available at all times, even in wartime. This mill has been equipped with spinning machines which
are fed with cotton wool, and the additional equipment must consist of the same type of spinning machines. The mill should thus have a system of production process fed with cotton wool.

Providing the people with adequate winter clothes is important in solving the clothing problem.

Good winter clothes for the people are necessary for providing against possible war. War is not something which only breaks out in summer. If the people have enough winter clothes, they will be able to deal with war, and manage to get along without a further supply of them for a few years.

The people’s standard of living in the Soviet Union was high in the years before the Second World War. At that time they were all provided with overcoats, fur-lined boots and fur caps. Although not many clothes were on sale in shops during the war, the Soviet people could manage to get along with their existing winter clothes for four to five years.

We must make an effort to provide good winter clothing for the people even though we might be unable to supply them with as good summer clothes.

We must produce thick cotton-padded coats of our own style for the pupils and other children. Old people, too, should be provided with good winter clothes. Neat coats made from blended fabrics will be desirable for men. But women must be provided with overcoats as far as possible by using cloth economically. If people are dressed in warm winter clothes, fur caps and scarves and wear winter shoes, the streets will appear more attractive.

The prices of winter clothes for children and students will have to be reduced.

At present, a fairly large number of families of factory and office workers have five or six children each. The wages such a family now earns will not be enough to buy all the winter clothes for five or six children. If we reduce the prices of fabrics and raise the wages of factory and office workers to 90 won on the average at some time in the future, then the cost of clothing for their children will, of course, cease
to be a serious problem. But it will be difficult to attain that level in the next few years.

As matters stand now, a family in which both husband and wife work earns a fairly large monthly income, but other families cannot earn so much. In a miners’ village, for instance, the monthly income for each family is not high because no job is available for housewives. We must consider how to provide jobs for them and take the necessary measures. If housewives take jobs, it will benefit them both by revolutionizing them and increasing their family incomes.

Since we are fighting to provide all the people with equally good clothing and with equally happy lives, we must assess the prices of winter clothes properly so that every family can afford to buy them for their children and students. The prices of winter clothes for the children of nurseries and kindergartens should be reduced by about a half, and part of the payment for those for primary schoolchildren up to university students should be made by the state at a rate to be decided according to the number of pupils and students per household as it has been the practice so far that these winter clothes can be obtained cheaply.

We must produce a reasonable variety of fabrics.

I have heard that, at present, thick vinalon blends are used for both coating and lining at the Wonsan Clothing Factory and at some others. What a waste it is to use such suiting for lining! If other lining materials are really unavailable, we shall have to have at least thin vinalon blends manufactured for lining. Even in the old days when no artificial silk was available, thick cloth was used for the outside and thin fabrics for the lining.

The waste of a large amount of fabric through the use of thick material for lining is due to an irresponsible work attitude of the officials in charge of the textile industry and the commercial sector. When they produce vinalon blends, the textile workers go on producing this item alone. They must not do so; they should produce a reasonable variety of fabrics. The textile industry must produce a range of goods, both thick and thin knitwear, for instance, so as to meet seasonal needs.
The footwear industry must produce different kinds of shoes and boots in large quantities lest they should run out of stock in shops.

Recently, footwear factories have neglected the production of canvas shoes, in an effort to change over to the manufacture of plastic shoes. They must not do this. The quality of canvas shoes produced in our country is very high, and foreign demands for these shoes are great.

The executives of the footwear industry are going from one extreme to the other; when they are told to do this, they give up that, and vice versa. This is the way they work. If they are told to produce plastic shoes, they only produce plastic shoes, and no other kinds. That is why shoes are out of stock in shops when the production of plastic shoes does not go smoothly because of the shortage of vinyl chloride. The footwear industry must produce not only plastic shoes but also other kinds of shoes such as canvas shoes and leather shoes. Footwear must be produced by both centrally and locally run industries.

We must build a tannery as soon as possible, so that we can process the large amount of hides produced in our country and operate the leather shoe factory. We shall also have to import an artificial leather factory.

We must develop foreign trade.

In this regard it is important to conclude effective trade contracts, observe them strictly and preserve our good reputation in trade.

But we are not good at making trade contracts with other countries. The State Planning Commission and the Ministry of Foreign Trade are well aware of our own export capacity, but they are careless enough to sign export contracts which are beyond our capacity. That is why these contracts are not implemented properly, and this damages our reputation.

If we are not efficient in concluding trade contracts, we may greatly hamper our economic progress. A certain country which has a contract with our country does not deliver all the prescribed amount of goods to us at one time, but in instalments, each instalment corresponding to the one received from our country. Even then, it delivers secondary items first, instead of badly needed ones. If we are not good at concluding
trade contracts and fail to implement them, we shall be unable to import all the goods under contract and, in particular, the items which we need urgently. If we cannot receive the goods we have contracted for, the consequences will be worse than if we had not signed the contract.

Trade workers must sign guaranteed contracts for foreign trade, of which they can be certain. For example, if our country can export an item which is worth ten million won, we ought to conclude a contract for obtaining an amount of goods worth exactly that sum of money. By doing this, we must deliver the goods which we are obliged to do by the contract, and must unfailingly receive the items due from the other party. If you contract for an exchange of goods worth 16 million now instead, when you are capable of exporting only 10 million won worth of goods, you will be unable to import urgently needed goods, and the amount we receive will not exceed the 10 million won in monetary value.

The foreign trade sector must not keep an excessive amount of goods in stock. As things stand now, it keeps an excessive amount of imported goods, and this practice prevents us from importing an equivalent amount of badly needed goods.

We must conduct trading transactions with many foreign countries. This is how we can obtain all the items which we need. Production in the light industry sector is not going smoothly at present because of the shortage of plasticizer and other minor items. We must not try to buy such things from any one country. We must put an end to the tendency towards biased foreign trade once and for all, a tendency to trade with any one particular country, instead of dealing with many countries.

Next year, we must keep the balance of foreign currency lest our country should incur debts to other countries. The Trade and Financial Department of the Party Central Committee must carefully examine the foreign trade sector and establish strict discipline so that it can conclude effective trade contracts and implement them to the letter. We intend to consider the matter of foreign trade separately at the
Political Committee of the Party Central Committee at some time in the future.

It would be a good idea to organize a few delegations which will deal exclusively with economic affairs with other countries. If we have two to three delegations of experts in chemical and light industries and in other industrial techniques, we shall be able to send them to any countries whenever we want to.

I hope that you comrades will understand clearly the importance of your duties and raise the people’s standard of living to a higher level by working hard, displaying all your talents and creativity.
Comrades,

On behalf of the Party Central Committee and on my own behalf, I should like, first of all, to extend warm greetings to you delegates to this congress and, through you, to the entire membership of the Women’s Union and all working women in our country.

Specific tasks confronting the Women’s Union organizations and women have been proposed in the congratulatory message from the Party Central Committee and in the report to this congress, so I shall just touch briefly on a few matters.

The most important task before the Women’s Union today is to revolutionize and working-classize all women.

If we are to build socialism and communism successfully, we must occupy two fortresses, that is, the material and ideological fortresses. Certain people consider that communism will have been built once the strong material foundations of society are laid and the people live in prosperity. That is wrong. Even if a society attains material wealth and the people are prosperous, communism cannot be built successfully so long as outdated ideas survive in the minds of the people. Nor can the people who retain these ideas be regarded as communists.

Some countries now have comparatively solid material foundations
of society and the people’s living standards are high. Yet they have a long way to go before building communism, for they have neglected the ideological revolution. Because of their failure to give their people a proper ideological education, certain countries even found themselves in danger of losing the revolutionary gains which had already been won. This shows that unless the ideological revolution is carried out, it is impossible to build socialism and communism successfully and consolidate the revolutionary achievements already gained.

Building a powerful material basis of society through successful economic construction and arming all the people with communist ideology through an increased ideological revolution is the demand of the law that governs the building of socialism and communism; it is a cardinal task which has to be carried out by the working-class party and state during the transitional period. That is why our Party consolidated the nation’s material and technical foundations through successful economic construction and, at the same time, paid particular attention to the ideological education of the people. Firmly carrying on both socialist economic construction and the ideological revolution is a revolutionary principle to which our Party has consistently adhered.

Our Party considers it a particularly important task to intensify the ideological revolution and revolutionize and working-classize the whole of society. The Party Conference held in 1966 set forth this task and the Fifth Party Congress last year raised the question in a more profound way. Following the Party’s policy, we must accelerate the ideological revolution to eradicate the survivals of bourgeois ideas, feudal-Confucian ideas, individualism, selfishness, revisionism and other outdated ideas from people’s minds and equip all working people with communist ideology, thus accelerating the revolutionization and working-classization of all society.

For this process to be implemented it is very important to revolutionize and working-classize women.

Women make up one half of our population. Accordingly, whether the women develop soundly or not, whether they are revolutionized or
not, greatly affects the process of revolutionizing and working-classizing the whole of society.

If a society is to run normally, women, who account for one half of the population, must play their role satisfactorily; if we are to revolutionize and working-classize the whole of society, we must also revolutionize and working-classize women. Just as a wagon cannot run smoothly when only one of its wheels functions, so a society cannot develop on a sound basis when only men fulfil their duties. It is only when men and women are revolutionized and working-classized and play an active part in the revolution and construction, that the whole of society can be revolutionized and working-classized and socialism and communism be built with credit.

The revolutionization and working-classization of women is of great importance, not only in revolutionizing and working-classizing half the population, but also in revolutionizing their homes.

Women play a very important role in their homes, and their temperament as housewives greatly affects their families. At home even men are influenced by their wives to a large extent, to say nothing of the fact that children are influenced by their mothers. If women with obsolete ideas grumble about food and dresses at home, asking their husbands to buy them this or that, the men even become disturbed by these things and gradually become greedy. If women are not revolutionized and retain backward ideas, they will bring about their own ruin and, in the long run, that of their husbands and children.

There are quite a few cases where men have degenerated because their wives were not revolutionized. Some men, badly affected by their wives, committed errors and were demoted or dismissed. And some men who had long engaged in revolutionary fighting degenerated into taking the wrong path under the influence of their wives.

Still greater is the influence which women exert on their children. Whether children grow up to be good or bad depends on their upbringing by parents, and their mothers in particular. As I said previously at the National Meeting of Mothers, in order to bring up their sons and daughters to be communists, mothers themselves must
become communists first. Otherwise, they cannot raise their children to be communists or revolutionize their homes.

There are some delinquent children nowadays, but their families are largely to blame for this. According to the analysis made by the Ministry of Social Security, they are mostly the children of mothers who are not revolutionized. There are instances, it is said, especially amongst children who are discriminated against and are ill-treated by their stepmothers infected with feudalistic ideas, where they cease to have any attachment to their families and leave home to wander from place to place and in the end commit criminal acts. However, when they are brought back to settle under the care of the state and given proper education, they become reformed, good children. This shows how greatly women affect their children.

As you see, revolutionizing and working-classizing women assumes immense importance in revolutionizing their homes and revolutionizing and working-classizing the whole of society. It is precisely for this reason that our Party has made the task of revolutionizing and working-classizing women an essential revolutionary task and has been devoting particular attention to this. However, quite a few defects have been revealed in this work. We must make this Women’s Union congress a new turning point in our attempt to revolutionize and working-classize the whole of society by working more energetically for the revolutionization and working-classization of women.

In order to do this the organizational lives of women must first be strengthened.

Formerly the Women’s Union had only a leadership structure but no definite organizations at grass-roots. Accordingly, the organizational lives of the Women’s Union members lacked a proper system. The Party was quick to see this shortcoming in the work of the Women’s Union and made sure that a well-functioning organizational system was established from the Central Committee of the Women’s Union down to the primary organizations and that a proper system was created to organize the lives of the members.
Every woman in our country now belongs to her organization and is leading an organized life. Henceforth, the Women’s Union organizations must strengthen the organizational lives of the members and lead all women to train themselves politically and ideologically through their revolutionary organizational lives.

For women to be revolutionized and working-classized they must also be encouraged to go out into society and lead public lives.

If women confine themselves up at home, without leading public lives, they cannot revolutionize and working-classize themselves. If they confine themselves to their homes, they will have nothing to do but rummage about in their wardrobes and take care of their husbands and children. If they only lead a family life, shut off from the outside world, they will not experience real life where great things are happening, nor will they have any idea of the value of rice or how fabrics and footwear are produced. They will gradually become lazy and slack, be captivated by selfishness, that is, the idea of only seeking their own comfort, and, in the end, degenerate into parasites who live at the expense of their country and community.

The education and revolutionization of women by their husbands at home are not very practical. Moreover, husbands are busy with their work and have little time to educate their wives.

So, if women are to be revolutionized and working-classized, they must be brought out into society so that they can participate in public activities. Only when women come out into the world can they lead better organized, political lives and steadily temper themselves through actual revolutionary work.

We do not draw women into society because we are short of manpower. To be frank, at present women engaged in public activity do not bring as much benefit to the state as it bestows on them.

In order to have women work in society, creches and kindergartens have to be built at considerable state expense. They have now been built in all our towns and villages. Probably, few countries in the world have as many creches and kindergartens as our country has. Foreign women who visit our country envy us very much because we have so many.
In addition, we have built many schools everywhere and provide schoolchildren with clothing and school things at low prices so that the women may work without worrying about the education of their sons and daughters. Some foreigners who visit our country for the first time wonder whether we supply clothes and school things to the pupils at low prices because we are not good at trading. But they are mistaken. We make it our deliberate policy to do so in order to lighten the burden on parents with many children and to have all schoolchildren equally well dressed and educated.

Working women are also provided by the state with paid maternity leave and with adequate welfare service facilities. The state even ensures them time for feeding their babies.

Therefore, in order to let women launch forth into society and take up employment, the state and public bear heavy burdens and have to provide a great deal for them. Why, then, are we actively encouraging them to participate in society? Because our chief aim is to revolutionize and working-classize women through their public lives. Despite the tremendous state expense, in order to achieve this, our Party encourages women to launch out into society and urges many more of them to take up work.

The Women’s Union organizations should launch a powerful movement for women to take part in social activity so that all of them, if possible, may participate in social affairs.

As for the women going out into the world, it does not necessarily follow that they are revolutionized and working-classized simply because they engage in manual labour at factories. No matter where they may work they can lead political and organized lives and undergo revolutionary training, because in our country any field of work is an important revolutionary post and any work is a revolutionary struggle.

So, they must come into society and take jobs that suit their skills and abilities. Women who can work in local industry factories should work there, those who can teach should be teachers at schools and those with medical knowledge should work at hospitals. As for women in rural areas, they may work on cooperative farms. Wherever they
work, once in society they can all revolutionize and working-classize themselves.

If we are to draw many women into society, we must guarantee more satisfactory conditions for them to work without worries. We must first of all build more creches and kindergartens and provide them with better welfare service facilities. We must also increase our efforts for the fulfilment of the three major tasks of the technical revolution and produce very many processed foodstuffs and kitchen utensils of good quality so as to relieve them of a great deal of their heavy burden of household work.

The Women’s Union organizations must bring about a fresh upturn in the revolutionization and working-classization of women following the Fourth Congress of the Women’s Union so that this congress can be called a congress for revolutionizing women.

Next, efforts should be made to increase the proportion of women cadres.

We have a very small number of women cadres today considering the large number of working women. An analysis of the cadres indicates that at present the overwhelming majority, both at national and local levels, are men; there are not many women cadres. And even this small number works mainly in fields of secondary importance. Most of those who hold a post of “chief” of some sort or go about with briefcases under their arms, especially in the rural areas, are men.

Many women are working just as efficiently as men for society. So why should all the senior posts be held by men? If working women account for one half of the total working population, women cadres should obviously make up one half of the total number of cadres.

We must improve the training of women cadres so as to increase their proportion in the makeup of our cadres systematically.

We must provide women with conditions for carrying on their studies while working at their speciality after their graduation from school. For their part, women must endeavour to learn more and work more for the Party and the revolution even if their marriage is delayed a little, rather than be tied down to family life as soon as they finish
school. In this way we shall ensure that many women become cadres who are intelligent, versed in theory and tempered in practical experience.

We are now preparing for compulsory ten-year education. When this is fully implemented in years to come, highly favourable conditions will be created to train women to be cadres.

With compulsory ten-year education the teaching programme covering primary school through to high school will be completed in ten years. The new system envisages the enrolment of schoolchildren one year earlier than at present. At some schools six-year-old children are now being educated on a trial basis; if kindergarten training is given properly, six-year-olds can be taught at schools. Recently we talked to the teachers of a school where six-year-old children are being educated; they said that those children who came to school after training at kindergarten were good at learning and presented no problems at all, whereas those who had been brought up by their grandmothers, not at kindergarten, failed to digest properly what was taught at school and caused trouble for some time. If we abolish the senior grade of kindergarten and fully prepare children for primary school education during the last six months of the middle grade, six-year-olds will be well able to attend school. Experience shows that in most countries where there is compulsory ten-year education six-year-olds go to school.

Of course, it would be impossible to enrol all the six-year-olds for school education immediately. To do this, we should have to have a larger number of teachers, build many schools and make many other preparations. We shall not be able to do all this in a year or two. So we will introduce compulsory ten-year education completely during the Six-Year Plan period by increasing the rate of enrolment of the six-year-olds year by year, starting from next year.

When this is done, women will be able to go out to work for five to six years before getting married, because they will graduate from university at the age of 21, even if they take the five-year university course after the ten-year period of education. Then, they will be able to
learn and study more before they start housekeeping so that many of them will become masters, doctors, engineers, journalists, competent public and political workers or cadres proficient in administrative and economic affairs.

The introduction of compulsory ten-year education will enable all women to carry on their lives in the community until they are married, so that very favourable conditions will be created for their revolutionization and working-classification. If they lead their collective lives first at creches and kindergartens, then during compulsory ten-year education and at colleges and universities, and also while working or during their service in appropriate branches of the People’s Army, they will lead collective lives for 20 to 30 consecutive years before marriage. This will enable them to revolutionize and working-classify themselves fully through their uninterrupted collective and political lives prior to marriage and housekeeping, to develop equally with men and play an important role in the building of socialism.

If we are to increase women’s share in the composition of cadres, women must be provided with all necessary conditions for carrying out public activities free from care and worry.

At present, many women who are active in public life have many difficulties in bringing up their children. Women cadres especially have great difficulties in this respect. Therefore, we must set up weekly and monthly creches, weekly kindergartens and the like for the children of women cadres, women journalists and actresses, who have to attend many meetings and make many journeys. Only then will women cadres work without worries and participate in the revolutionary work as whole heartedly as men.

Party organizations must strive to train large numbers of women cadres and, at the same time, boldly promote them in every field. Some officials consider women cadres inefficient, but this is by no means true. On the contrary, some of them are more efficient at their work than men. For instance, many women chairmen of management boards run cooperative farms more skilfully and assiduously than men. We
must appoint many women to senior posts in light industry and other branches of the national economy. By doing this we shall considerably increase the proportion of women cadres as soon as practicable.

Next, the Women’s Union organizations must see to it that women’s qualifications are improved rapidly and their role in socialist construction enhanced.

In our country women are now playing a very important part in many areas of socialist construction. In industry alone women account for 45.5 per cent of the work force. In light industry, in particular, the bulk of the workers are women, and the daily necessities and other consumer goods are manufactured mostly by women. We can say, therefore, that whether or not the quality of our light industrial goods is improved depends mainly on how women work. If they try to make every product attractive and serviceable, the quality of consumer goods will be improved and if they do not do so, the quality will not improve.

Many working women are now doing a splendid job. In factories and other enterprises and on cooperative farms many women are working with enthusiasm, to the best of their abilities and talents. Not a few women, however, fail to work properly.

You have, no doubt, seen the feature films Girls of a Fishing Port and When We Pick Apples. In these films young people, brought up in our era, criticize the behaviour of those who are infected with outdated ideas and do not work with the attitude of a master. At present, many women are working in a careless manner without the attitude of a master, as has been criticized in these films.

Furthermore, some of the women who worked well as girls do not do so once they get married and drop behind. Our women must not take this attitude. If they worked well in their girlhood, they must continue to do so even after their marriage. As I always say, if one does one’s revolutionary work well for just a definite period, that is of no use. Flowers should keep on blooming. If flowers in a vase do not keep on blooming but wither away instantly, this vase becomes useless and must be removed. Likewise, even if a woman works hard at one time
and becomes a model worker and a hero of labour, she will be of no use if she does not continue to work hard and drops behind the others. Our women should feel greatly honoured and proud as builders of socialism and work hard constantly until the end of their lives.

In order to work well in public life, women must improve their qualifications, otherwise they will not be able to do their work well, however hard they try. At present the quality of consumer goods, fabrics in particular, is not good enough; this is mainly because the technical skill of women workers in this field is low. It is true that there are other reasons for the low quality of fabrics. But if the technical skill of the women working in the textile industry is raised the quality of fabrics can be markedly improved even under present conditions.

Quite a number of working women in different fields of socialist construction at present do not work hard to improve their technical and professional qualifications. Some of them make no effort to improve their qualifications on the excuse that they are the daughters of dead revolutionaries and that as such they need not work or study hard. This is wrong. If their fathers were revolutionaries, the daughters should also endeavour to become revolutionaries. Only then will they be able to keep their honour as daughters of revolutionary martyrs and make themselves true revolutionaries. That a father engaged in the revolution does not mean that his daughter will automatically become a revolutionary; even if a father belongs to the working class his daughter will not be destined to be so. However famous a doctor may be, his sons and daughters will never become doctors unless they make the effort. It is a matter of how hard one works. All women must remember the great importance of the tasks entrusted to them by the Party and the revolution and strive to be proficient in their work and improve their technical and professional qualifications.

In order to raise their qualifications women should study hard and learn with diligence. Learning is not a disgrace by any means. If you become complacent and do not learn modestly, you cannot improve your qualifications and develop at all. Women should improve their technical and professional levels quickly by patiently studying and
learning from others what they do not know. By doing this, all of them will keep working dependably at their revolutionary posts.

The Women’s Union organizations must launch a campaign for women to raise their technical and professional levels quickly and take the place of the men’s work force in light labour.

In our society great distinctions still exist between heavy and light labour and between agricultural and industrial labour. We are attempting to eliminate these distinctions but they cannot be done away within a day or two. All distinctions in labour will finally disappear in a communist society where the productive forces will be highly developed. So it is inevitable that the distinctions in labour will remain for some time to come. In these circumstances we should replace men with women in light work so as to let the women do easy work and the men do the harder jobs.

Much of the work which men are doing now can be done by women. However, some officials keep men doing work which could easily be done by women, because women have no skill. For example, water pumps can be operated by women without difficulty once they are taught some technical skill. However, until recently water pumps were operated by men in many places. Once we called at a village pumping station and found a brawny man operating the pump. So I summoned the management board chairman of the cooperative farm and asked him why he let such a strong man do this easy work, while women were engaged in backbreaking farm work. He answered that women were incapable of doing such work because they lacked the technical knowledge. How can women acquire techniques when they are not taught? Later we took steps to give women technical training and had all the men pump-operators replaced by women. In this way a large number of men pump-operators were gained and moved to harder work.

Textile machines can be easily repaired by women. There is no heavy lifting involved in this kind of work; there is no technical difficulty either. They just have to walk around with spanners in hand, replacing worn-out parts with new ones. That’s all. Why is it that this
kind of work is done only by men and not by women? The answer is that the leadership personnel, enslaved by wrong attitudes, do not train women to repair textile machines. Women can fix these machines without difficulty once they are given technical training. There are so many other jobs which can be undertaken by women.

Women should make the greatest efforts to raise their technical level and should not be diffident but take the place of men in whatever job they are capable of doing. And the men who are now doing light work should give place to women and take up jobs in fields where the work is difficult and arduous such as in ore and coal mines, iron works, steel plants, construction sites and the like.

Next, the Women’s Union organizations must carry out an effective campaign amongst the women to take care of state property and to use it economically.

In our society all state and communal property is under the joint ownership of the people. It is a valuable asset for the happy lives of posterity as well as our own generation. It is, therefore, the sacred duty of all our women and working people to treasure state property and work hard to increase it.

Nevertheless, in many parts of the country we still find cases where state and communal property is treated carelessly and wasted.

Let me cite a few examples. On construction sites vast quantities of cement are blown away by the wind and spoilt by rain, and many windowpanes are broken during building work because the glass is fixed before the projects are finished. There is also excessive waste in orchards and in docks. In apple orchards windfalls are left on the ground to rot, and in the docks a great deal of fish which has been caught out at high sea is scattered about and left to go bad. If all our officials had the attitude of masters in running the national economy, not an apple, not a fish would rot or be wasted but would be processed and supplied to the people. How good it would be if we gathered the fallen apples before it is too late and sliced and dried them or made them into jam for the children at kindergartens and creches. However, some officials are not only reluctant to organize this work, but do not
even care about fruit or fish going bad; they do not feel regretful to see the nation’s valuable assets being damaged and wasted everywhere. If things go on like this, we cannot make our country rich and strong and our people prosperous, or succeed in building socialism and communism, no matter how much we may build or produce.

The Women’s Union organizations must intensify the ideological education of women so that all of them carry on an active fight against waste.

The main reason for state and communal property still being treated carelessly is that the ideological transformation of the people lags behind our socialist construction which is proceeding quickly. Our Party has always given priority over all other work to our people’s revolutionization and working-classization through an intensified ideological revolution. But the remnants of obsolete ideas are so deep-rooted in the minds of the people that their ideological reformation lags behind changing conditions and the old ideas as well as the habit of treating communal property carelessly have not yet been totally eliminated.

The Women’s Union organizations must wage a powerful ideological struggle against the careless treatment and waste of state property and must educate all women properly, so that they will adopt a responsible attitude towards the nation’s economy. In this way all the women will be persuaded to value and economize on even a thread, a grain of rice, a nail and a sheet of paper so as to benefit the state as much as possible.

The Women’s Union organizations must work hard for economy among the women and, at the same time, spread the flames of this campaign to all spheres of society.

Women are working in every field of socialist construction in our country. The Women’s Union organizations must ensure that all the women become exemplary in running the nation’s economy and that they conduct an honourable campaign at their posts against working in a careless manner or wasting state property. This will accelerate the struggle for economy in all fields of the national economy, improve the
quality of manufactured goods, increase production with existing manpower and materials, and thereby provide our children and people with better food and clothing.

Next, the Women’s Union must make good preparations for the great revolutionary event of national reunification.

As you all know, the preliminary talks between the Red Cross organizations of north and south Korea are now being held at Panmunjom. The south Korean puppet clique which had stubbornly rejected our repeated proposals for north-south negotiations agreed, though belatedly, to hold preliminary talks. There are various reasons for this.

The main reason is that they can no longer check the daily mounting trend amongst the south Korean people towards peaceful reunification.

This year the south Korean people have put up a strong fight for the country’s peaceful reunification. Since last spring the south Korean young people and students have been fighting almost every day against compulsory military training, and this struggle is still going on. The press reported that yesterday the young students of Seoul University and other universities and colleges in south Korea issued letters of protest against military training and held demonstrations. Their opposition to military training means, in effect, that they are against “reunification by prevailing over communism” which is so loudly advocated by the south Korean puppet clique.

The south Korean people’s militant will to attain peaceful reunification was also clearly demonstrated in the “presidential election” held this spring. At present, there are five legal opposition parties in south Korea including the New Democratic Party. In the last “election” these opposition parties formed a coalition and campaigned against Park Chung Hee. In Seoul alone the candidate from the New Democratic Party won more than 60 per cent of the votes, much more than those for Park Chung Hee. This means that Park Chung Hee is not supported by many people even in Seoul where he is entrenched.

The New Democratic Party candidate won so many votes in the “election” not because he was popular but because he put forward a
few reasonable slogans. He said that if he came to power he would achieve peaceful reunification. He also declared that he would abolish the “homeland reserve forces” forcibly set up by the south Korean puppets and do away with rule by secret police. These slogans won him many supporters in south Korea. In the last “election” the south Korean people manifested their desire for the earliest possible peaceful reunification of the country.

The people’s pressure for peaceful reunification forced the south Korean puppet clique to agree to holding the preliminary talks between the north and south Korean Red Cross organizations.

Another reason for their agreement is that US imperialism, their master, is hard pressed.

US imperialism, whose decline started in the Korean war, is now being battered and chased out of Viet Nam and many other parts of the world. In the past the US imperialists made every possible effort to blockade our country and the People’s Republic of China but in vain. Each of their military provocations against our country also proved futile. At the time of the Pueblo incident they brought large vessels and huge armed forces of aggression to the waters off our east coast and threatened to attack us but they could not scare our people. They are also undergoing a grave crisis in their own country. At present the anti-war movement in the US is spreading daily and the economic crisis is also becoming extremely serious. All this shows that the US imperialists are not only going downhill but find themselves on the brink of ruin.

Floundering on the edge of collapse, US imperialism has now advocated “peace” to gain a breathing space. Of course, this does not mean that its aggressive nature has changed. Whenever they are in difficulties, the imperialists use double-dealing tactics, advocating “peace” on the one hand and continuing with their war preparations on the other.

In conditions where their master, US imperialism, driven into a predicament, is calling for “peace”, just for form’s sake, and where the tide of peaceful reunification is quickly mounting amongst the south
Korean people, it has become evident that the south Korean puppet clique will be ousted unless they, too, enunciate the slogan of “peaceful reunification”. That is why they could only accept our proposal for north-south negotiations.

Although they agreed to hold preliminary talks between the two Red Cross organizations, the south Korean puppets are using delaying tactics. At the last session of the talks, I was told, the south Korean side could not give an answer to our fair proposal and made absurd allegations only to be rebuked by our delegate. Then they proposed adjourning the meeting, saying that they could reply only after inquiries were made back in Seoul.

Being unable to answer the just proposal of our side, the delegate of the south Korean Red Cross society has had a hard time. This is not because he is foolish but because he has no policy. Having no policy to make the talks a success, our enemies are impeding the talks, deliberately delaying the discussion. As for the date of the next session, they are trying to postpone that too, on purpose. They may be trying to frustrate the talks with delaying tactics, but they will never be able to do so, if the south Korean people increase the pressure and we make an effort to bring the talks to an early and successful conclusion.

The present situation indicates that the day of national reunification is coming nearer and nearer.

To hasten the country’s peaceful reunification, we must further strengthen our revolutionary forces and actively support and encourage the revolutionary struggle of the south Korean people. The greater our strength grows and the more the south Korean people’s revolutionary fight is increased, the sooner will our country be reunified.

The women in the northern half of Korea must always be diligent and militant in work and life, with a firm revolutionary resolve to rescue the miserable south Korean people languishing in colonial slavery as early as possible. Every woman in every sphere of economic and defence construction must dedicate her knowledge and talents to the struggle to build the northern half of Korea, the powerful base of
the Korean revolution, as firm as a rock.

At the same time, the Women’s Union organizations must train women from south Korea properly to be cadres.

At present, in the northern half of Korea there are many people from the south. They are our Party’s priceless asset and treasure to carry out the south Korean revolution. The south Korean revolution must, in any case, be carried out by the south Korean people themselves. People in Hamgyong or Phyongan Province cannot make the south Korean revolution for south Koreans.

Ever since the armistice, therefore, we have always emphasized the importance of training the comrades from the south properly to be cadres for the south Korean revolution rather than appointing them to high posts. Our Party established the Songdo University of Political Science and Economics and established a communist university in each province, in order to make them cadres. Thanks to these steps taken by the Party and under its care, a large number of people from south Korea have graduated from institutes of higher learning and become competent cadres.

We have been informed recently, however, that quite a few people from the south still need further education. In Kaechon County, South Phyongan Province, for instance, there are many from south Korea and some of them are said to have not yet received a university education. We must quickly rectify the shortcomings revealed in our work with those from south Korea and train many more to be cadres.

The Women’s Union organizations should select suitable comrades from amongst the women from the south and educate them properly so that they can carry on the union work back in south Korea some day. You must teach them well how we built the Party, set up the people’s government, formed social organizations, carried out agrarian and other democratic reforms and wiped out illiteracy in the difficult situation immediately after liberation, and how we carried out the socialist revolution; you must also give them detailed instruction in how to do Women’s Union work.

The situation in south Korea is appalling today. Large numbers of
people are jobless and wander about the streets; young people have been deprived of their right to education. Comrades from south Korea say that the south Korean country areas today are literally a land of darkness. They say all sorts of backward practices are to be seen there: some people mourning over their fate still go to fortunetellers or physiognomists to have their fortunes told; some sterile women offer up prayers at Buddhist temples in an endeavour to have children. Many women, unable to earn a living, sell their bodies to the Yankees or capitalists. There is no electric light in many parts of south Korea.

It is the comrades from the south who must assume the heavy responsibility of changing this dark south Korean society into a new developed society. Therefore, we must train them properly so that they can be sent to south Korea to become builders of a new society some day when people can travel between the north and south, or when a people’s government will be set up there and the country reunified.

Next, the Women’s Union organizations should work well with the masses in all walks of life and unite all women closely around the Party.

We can only accelerate the revolution and construction in the northern half of Korea and get completely ready for the great revolutionary event of national reunification when the masses of all levels are rallied closely around the Party. At present, however, the Women’s Union organizations are not doing a good job with various sections of the people, especially with those who have complicated backgrounds. The Women’s Union organizations ought to have worked well with women of this kind and united them closely around the Party, but they have not done so.

It is not correct to judge people on the basis of the origins of their fathers or grandfathers, irrespective of their class awareness and work results. As we always say, a man’s origin forms a component part of his ideology, but it is not unchangeable. It changes according to the education he receives. Even if a man was a revolutionary, his son might become a reactionary under evil influence. On the other hand, the son of a bad father can become a revolutionary loyal to the Party if
he undergoes revolutionary education and is tempered in practical work. Accordingly, in judging a man the main criterion must always be his ideology and the origin of his father or grandfather must be considered only as a reference to see what ideological influence it has had on him. In other words, a man must be judged by whether or not he is playing an active role in the current revolutionary work, and whether or not he is working devotedly for our Party and the revolution.

Nowadays, in appraising a person, some officials are particular about the ancestry of his family, instead of attaching importance to his ideological makeup. This is not correct. We must ensure that people who support our Party and work zealously are not discriminated against or shunned because of the origins of their fathers or grandfathers.

It is 26 years since our country was liberated from the colonial rule of Japanese imperialism. During these years many people with complicated backgrounds joined us in the building of the Party, the people’s government and people’s armed forces, in carrying out the democratic and socialist revolutions, in the great Fatherland Liberation War and in the struggle to establish the Party’s monolithic ideological system. These difficult and complex trials have trained and re-educated them in a revolutionary way and clearly proved their loyalty to the Party. There is no need to question the family backgrounds and origins of those who have fought on our side for 20 years and more, especially of those people who have been brought up and educated in our Party’s ideas, and who are now working faithfully for the Party and the revolution. It is necessary, of course, to examine the family backgrounds and origins of those who have not undergone difficult and complex trials or who are not familiar to us. But this is not designed to blame them for crimes committed by their fathers or grandfathers; it is aimed at finding out what ideological influence they have received in their family surroundings, what ideas they have in their minds and how important those ideas are, and how steadfast they will be in the class struggle, so that appropriate measures may be taken to educate them.
From now onwards, the Women’s Union organizations must consider the work with different sections of the masses, with the women with complicated backgrounds in particular, to be an important aspect of the union activity and work hard at it.

Some people are reluctant to work well with people with complicated origins because they think it will weaken the class struggle. But they are gravely mistaken. A good job with them will not weaken but strengthen the class struggle. If you work properly with these people and rally people in all walks of life closely around the Party, hostile elements will be thoroughly isolated and they will not be able to gain a foothold. On the other hand, if we fail to work well with different sections of the masses and win them over, the enemy will draw them into his fold. Then we shall lose many people.

The Women’s Union organizations and staff should work more closely with the people who have complicated origins and educate them well. In this way we will solidly unite all women around our Party and prepare them fully for the great revolutionary event of national reunification.

I firmly believe that the Women’s Union, our Party’s transmission belt, will faithfully implement its revolutionary tasks so as to meet the Party’s expectations with credit.
Originally, I intended to bring the Mansudae Art Troupe here on this tour, and to spend the anniversary of the founding of the Party by attending a meeting to commemorate that event as well as an art performance with the workers of Huichon. But I was told that this city has no suitable house of culture because construction is still under way. So I changed my intention and am only holding this consultative meeting this time. Instead, I am planning to celebrate, with the Huichon workers, the anniversary which will be chosen from amongst those celebrating the founding of the Party, the September 9 holiday, and May Day, after the fulfilment of your quota in the Six-Year Plan. This city will have to build a good house of culture by then.

The Huichon Machine-Tool Factory scored a great success in producing 1,000 machine tools last month.

For this, I should like first to express thanks, on behalf of the Central Committee of the Party and the Government of the Republic, to the senior officials, the Party committee, all the workers, technicians, and clerks of this factory and their families, and to all those who gave assistance to the production of machine tools, among
them the medical workers from the Red Cross Hospital, artists and journalists.

On the occasion of the anniversary of the Party’s foundation, I also express gratitude, in the name of the Party Central Committee and the Government of the Republic, to the builders of Huichon and to the workers, technicians and office workers of the Huichon Youth Electrical Appliances Plant and the Huichon Precision Machine Factory.

As everyone knows, the Central Committee of the Party attaches great importance to the production of machine tools today.

This aims, above all, at carrying out the three major tasks of the technical revolution, which were put forward by our Party at its Fifth Congress, successfully.

These tasks are: firstly, to narrow the difference between heavy and light labour considerably in the industrial sector; secondly, to bring farm work closer to industrial work in the agricultural sector. In other words, they are to carry out the technical revolution, in both the industrial and agricultural branches, to reduce the distinctions between heavy and light labour, between farm and industrial labour to a considerable degree. In addition, we have to accomplish the technical revolution to relieve women of the heavy burden of household chores.

It is very important to free women, who make up half of the population, from heavy housekeeping duties. Women’s problems have not been fully solved just because they have equal rights with men, thanks to the Law on Sex Equality. We can only say that these questions have been solved for good and all when they are freed from these burdens so that they can take part in social activities with no worries, as the men are doing.

In order to relieve women of these burdens we must build large numbers of creches and kindergartens to bring up children under state and public care and, at the same time, develop the food industry and increase the number of laundries and other service facilities to enable women to do their housework easily. In this way we ought to provide them with conditions for working, as free from anxiety as the men, in
political, economic, cultural and all other fields of social life.

The three major tasks of the technical revolution which were set at the Fifth Congress of the Party are the revolutionary ones which are very important in building socialism and moving forward to communism.

For the building of socialism and communism it is essential to do away with class distinctions between the workers and the peasants and to eliminate the disparities between mental and physical labour, as well as to lay the material and technological foundations which allow everyone to work according to his ability and receive his share according to his needs. The development of such a solid material and technological basis requires the fulfilment of the three major tasks of the technical revolution. This was why our Party put forward these three major tasks as the strategic tasks of socialist construction which face us after the accomplishment of socialist industrialization.

With the introduction by our Party of the three major tasks of the technical revolution the targets to be reached in socialist economic construction have been defined. No target has ever been set as clearly as this; the need of the technical revolution has only been pointed out in general terms.

People of many countries the world over are now expressing support for and sympathy with the three major tasks of the technical revolution which were put forward at the Fifth Congress of our Party. As soon as these tasks were announced, a number of countries reported them by means of newspapers and the radio and published books about them.

Because our Party announced new theories on different subjects–including the stratagems of the anti-imperialist, anti-US struggle, the theory on the socialist economy–one after another, people are coming to visit our country from many nations at the moment.

Recently, the managing editor of the Japanese newspaper Asahi Shim bun who was on a visit to our country asked me to meet him, so I received him and had a talk lasting for many hours. Even Americans are now saying that they will visit our country. Some time ago the managing editor of the US newspaper New York Times sent me a letter
asking me to meet him. Recently many people have come to this country, particularly from newly independent nations.

At the present moment the whole world concerns about how the three major tasks of the technical revolution are carried out in our country.

The successful fulfilment of these tasks, which were advanced by our Party at its Fifth Congress, requires a large number of machine tools. Only then is it possible to produce and provide up-to-date machines and equipment in greater numbers, so as to accelerate the carrying out of the tasks for the technical revolution and boost production considerably. Increasing the production of machine tools is the main link in the whole chain for hastening the accomplishment of these tasks and for completing the Six-Year Plan ahead of schedule. The Central Committee of the Party, therefore, has shown a great interest in the production of machine tools since the early period of the first year of the Six-Year Plan.

In order to fulfil these three major tasks we need large numbers of machine tools and other up-to-date machines and equipment in the agricultural sector alone.

We attended a plenary meeting of the Party Committee of South Hwanghae Province last year and gave this province personal guidance this year. It is said that the province envisages the production of 1,230,000 tons of grain this year. It could not produce even one million tons of grain last year, but it has made a great leap forward this year. This year the province has suffered a little from blight and harmful insects caused by the use of too small a quantity of phosphatic fertilizer; if it had not suffered this damage it would have produced 1.3 million tons without difficulty.

The main factors for an increase in the production of grain in South Hwanghae Province this year are: firstly, efficiency in its work with people; secondly, an improvement in farming methods. This province converted Party work into work with people and worked efficiently amongst tractor drivers and cooperative farmers, with the result that the drivers carried out the ploughing and harrowing of paddy fields in
the right season. So they were able to finish rice-transplanting before May 25. If timely ploughing and harrowing are neglected, rice seedlings cannot be transplanted in the best season, no matter how early their seeds are sown in the cold beds.

Not long ago we attended a plenary meeting of the Party Committee of North Phyongan Province, where I learned that the province anticipated a grain production of 950,000 tons this year. Last year it produced 690,000 tons; so the yield of 950,000 tons is remarkable.

However, the agricultural sector still has great reserves for increasing grain production. If more tractors and farm machines are provided to this sector, greater quantities of grain than now will be produced.

South Hwanghae Province at present is asking for more Phungnyon tractors than Chollima tractors. I am told that because Phungnyon tractors plough the fields deep and more efficiently, when they have them, they will be able to produce 10 to 15 per cent more grain than they do now. Therefore, the manufacture of tractors of this model must be increased.

The recent meeting of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee adopted a decision to manufacture 10,000 Chollima tractors, 5,000 Phungnyon tractors, 5,000 Jonjin tractors annually in the near future.

The Jonjin tractors are suitable for rice reaping. They are appropriate for this operation because they do not get caught in paddies.

I am told that this year North Phyongan Province has lost more than 500 tons of grain because of hail. If rice harvesters are manufactured to help hasten harvesting, farmers will not suffer damage caused by hail, nor will it be necessary to mobilize a large number of work hands for rice harvesting. If rice harvesters are manufactured, farmers can do the operation rapidly by themselves.

In addition to providing the rural communities with greater numbers of different types of farm machines to increase grain production, it is important to establish repair works and spare parts plants so that the existing tractors and lorries will operate as they
should. With a view to sending more tractors and other farm machines to country areas and to building plants to repair the existing tractors and lorries, we need a large amount of machine tools. It is reported that in order to build tractor and lorry repair shops in South Hwanghae Province alone hundreds of machine tools are needed.

The industrial sector also needs machine tools and other machinery and equipment in vast quantities.

Because we do not, at present, manufacture mine cars, loading machines, excavators, lorries and other machinery and spare parts satisfactorily for the coal and ore mines, they are unable to produce the necessary quantities of coal and minerals. If they are provided with machinery and equipment for the mechanization of operations, their workers can work with ease and produce large amounts of coal and minerals with a smaller work force than now. However, our officials do not think about the provision of machinery and equipment for mines to mechanize operations, but merely try to increase manpower—a simple means. This cannot solve the problem in our country where the manpower situation is strained.

The mining industry should accelerate the technical revolution to bring about mechanization by intensive efforts in the production of coal and minerals. To this end, we must strengthen the repair and power-supply shops of coal and ore mines so as to put the machines and equipment they now have into proper operation, and reconstruct and expand the factories producing mining machinery and equipment so that they will manufacture larger quantities of machinery which are required for the production of coal and minerals.

As well as boosting the production of coal and minerals at mines, it is important to solve the problem of transporting them. Transport as a whole, including railway and road transport, is a restraining factor at the moment, making it impossible to produce many things which would otherwise be possible. The failure to produce the necessary quantities of pig iron is mainly due to the fact that the iron ore and limestone which have been mined are not transported promptly because of the lack of lorries. Mines have many unserviceable lorries
at present, but they do not repair them promptly so that they can be used. Even if they do try to repair the lorries which cannot be used because of mechanical defects, there are no places which make the necessary spare parts for them.

If we are to solve the transport problem at coal and ore mines, we must establish repair plants so that they can repair the existing unserviceable lorries promptly, and expand the motor works so as to increase the production of lorries.

The technical equipment of local industry factories must be improved.

At present, almost all the food factories in local areas do not even have a single efficient machine to make sweets or cakes. This being the case, we cannot process imported sugar quickly to supply the people with as many sweets as they want, although we have abundant stockpiles of this sugar.

Fruit-processing factories should be well built. At the moment fruit is rotting in Kwail County but people in northern regions, such as Huichon, cannot get enough of it. Therefore, these factories should be well equipped so that they can process fruit for supply. We must ensure that fruit slicing and drying factories are built so that all the fallen fruit will be collected and processed. If we do this, an enormous amount of dried fruit will be produced for the children at creches and kindergartens.

Because of the shortage of processing facilities, a large quantity of fish is now being wasted.

Meat-processing facilities must also be provided extensively in local areas. I am told that because these facilities do not exist, Huichon now has to bring live cattle from Songwon to supply beef to its workers. Cattle become thin and emaciated on the way from Songwon to Huichon. This is tantamount to wasting beef. This kind of thing will not happen if Songwon County is provided with machinery and equipment to build an abattoir and refrigerated plant where cattle can be slaughtered and beef kept in cold store before being taken away in refrigerated vans.

Many clothing factories should be built.
Although a considerable amount of cloth is produced in our country at present, the people are not provided with fine clothes. Therefore, sewing machines have to be mass-produced to equip clothing factories properly. For this purpose, it is necessary to provide the sewing machine factories with more machine tools.

A number of medical appliances factories should also be established.

If we are to build a hospital in each ri in future in accordance with the decision adopted at the Fifth Party Congress, we need many medical appliances. I gave the Hyangsan branch factory of the Unsan Tool Factory a task of manufacturing medical instruments. The workers and technicians of this factory have skilfully made the complicated medical instruments to be used in dental surgery and the treatment of ear, nose and throat complaints in the hospitals. If medical appliances factories are built in many places, there will be no need to import medical instruments. The question of building these factories will, in the last analysis, only be settled when we have machine tools.

At the moment machine tools and other machinery and equipment are needed everywhere.

Increasing the production of machine tools is also very important for strengthening our defences.

Since we stand face to face with the enemy, we must carry out economic and defence construction successfully. By doing this we shall always be thoroughly prepared to contend with war.

Needless to say, the present situation as a whole favours our revolution. US imperialism, which started on the downward path in the Korean war, is now facing a more serious crisis at home and abroad.

In the United States the economic crisis is growing acute, the people’s anti-war movement is mounting daily, and the young people are becoming increasingly weary of the war. It is said that most of the US soldiers now in South Viet Nam are suffering from drug addiction and are preoccupied only with how to complete their military service without fighting any battles. If the US imperialists continue with the war and, as a result, the numbers of the wounded and of degenerate
drug addicts increase, their ruin will be further accelerated.

The days have already gone when the US imperialists threatened other countries with atomic bombs. Today the US imperialists do not have the monopoly of these bombs; other countries also possess them. When the US imperialists alone had them, they could use them to threaten other countries, but now they are unable to do so.

As history shows the imperialists tried to solve their political and economic crises by means of war. However, now that the economic crisis is serious, their policy of atomic-bomb blackmail cannot be used and war-weary thinking is evident amongst the American people and soldiers, the US imperialists cannot win a war even if they ignite one. The US imperialists who are in the toils of serious political and economic crises, are resorting to more insidious schemes in an attempt to find a way out of the present crises.

In addition to the international situation, the situation in our country is also favourable.

As a result of our Party’s determined efforts, the south Korean authorities recently came to dialogue against their will. As a result, a preliminary meeting of representatives of Red Cross organizations from north and south Korea is now under way. If this meeting proceeds successfully, it will bring about some progress for the reunification of the country. Contacts and dialogue between the north and the south will give great encouragement to the south Korean people in their battle for national reunification.

Nowadays, a new campaign is going on amongst the young people and students in south Korea. The students of Koryo and Seoul Universities and other young people and students there are waging a forceful struggle against the introduction of military training in the universities.

In achieving the peaceful reunification of the country it is very important to democratize south Korean society and bring about unrestricted travel between north and south. At present all our people want these unobstructed visits. If people from the northern half visit south Korea and those from south Korea come to see the northern half,
it will bring about good results in the effort to reunify the country.

Everyone in the northern half of Korea leads an equally prosperous life. However, in south Korea the rich lead a flourishing life while the poor are in great need. South Korea is a society of inequality where there is a noticeable distinction between the rich and the poor. If workers and peasants from south Korea visit the northern half of Korea, they will understand that our socialist system is a social system which truly works in the interests of the people.

At present the south Korean puppet regime is preserved under the patronage of the US imperialists and Japanese militarists. Therefore, if the Americans are forced to withdraw from south Korea and the Japanese militarists are prevented from invading our country again, the south Korean people’s fight against fascism and for democracy will have no difficulty in triumphing. If the south Korean people overthrow the puppet regime and establish a democratic government, a bright future will be opened on the way to national reunification.

We must not allow ourselves to be captivated by a pacifist mood just because the general situation is now in favour of our revolution and the US imperialists have put forward the slogan of “peace”. The aggressive nature of US imperialism will not change. Imperialism is always accompanied by war.

The experiences of history show that a war may soon be started between a socialist country and an imperialist state following the conclusion of a nonaggression pact and a temporary improvement of relations between them. At one time in the past a nonaggression pact was concluded between Hitlerite Germany and the Soviet Union. However, war broke out one year after its conclusion.

At the moment the US imperialists are pursuing double-dealing tactics, holding a bayonet in one hand and an olive branch in the other. We must sharpen our vigilance against this.

We have to speed up the three major tasks of the technical revolution energetically by turning the favourable revolutionary situation to good account, and thus carry on both economic and defence construction effectively. In this way we shall consolidate the revolutionary base in the
northern half of Korea still more firmly in all the fields of politics, the economy, culture and military affairs. The stronger our political, economic and military might becomes, the sooner will the independent and peaceful reunification of the country be achieved.

To increase the production of machine tools is a very urgent problem today, not only in carrying out the three major tasks of the technical revolution put forward by our Party at its Fifth Congress successfully, but also under the circumstances where our country is standing face to face with the enemy.

Therefore, when the workers of the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory initiated the drive to produce 10,000 machine tools in response to the call of the Party, I considered this to be a great example and gave it my full support. By working hard, they passed the stage where they could produce 10,000 machine tools a year. Their success is a very great one which is winning the admiration of the people of the world.

The workers of the Kusong Machine-Tool Factory produced 920 machine tools last month, and have reached the stage of producing 10,000 of them annually.

The Huichon and Kusong Machine-Tool Factories must not rest content with the success they have already made, but must maintain their production level of 10,000 machine tools.

The workers of the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory have expressed their determination to begin a drive to manufacture 10,000 machine tools by February 20 next year, the first anniversary of my personal guidance. It is advisable that they should not be in such a great hurry, but that they should produce that many by next April 15. Even this will be a great achievement.

If the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory keeps the present monthly production level of 1,000 machine tools, it will quite easily be able to attain the target of 10,000. It is important for this factory to maintain the monthly production level of 1,000 machine tools. It must not fall short of this mark, nor is it necessary for it to try to exceed this figure by very many.

The Huichon Machine-Tool Factory must concentrate its efforts on
maintaining the level of 1,000 machine tools which it has already attained. This is the main task facing its workers.

To this end, we must make up for the shortage of manpower. This is the way to put production on a normal basis. It is impossible to consolidate the success which has already been attained continually if highly-skilled workers rush their work, receiving labour assistance from the public, as they do now. Man cannot continue working if he does not rest when necessary, because he is not a piece of iron. Additional manpower must be provided so that the workers will have adequate rest while working on shifts.

At present the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory is said to be short of 600 work hands. You must provide it with 400 discharged soldiers and 200 others who will be obtained within the province through the economical use of manpower. The best way is to ensure that the government workers and other office workers who are now at this factory to render labour assistance, remain here resolved to take part in the production of machine tools which is the most important factor in the successful implementation of the three major tasks of the technical revolution. If they do so, it will suffice to send only 400 discharged soldiers.

Improving the quality of machine tools is an important task facing the workers of the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory.

For success in the rural technical revolution, we shall have to expand the tractor and motor vehicle factories. All the machine tools to be supplied to tractor and motor vehicle factories, construction machine factories, munitions factories and other large machine factories must be efficient, high-precision machines.

In particular, the quality of machine tools which are to be exported, must be improved. It is only possible to establish a good reputation in foreign trade and carry out the export plan as we should when the quality of export goods is high. We must not lose our reputation in trade because of low-quality export goods.

In order to increase the quality of machine tools, we must improve their design to suit the trend of development of modern science and
technology, and also guarantee a high level of precision and cleanliness in their processing. In addition, we must provide high-quality, standard structural steel. We must promptly supply those kinds of calibrated steel which we cannot produce domestically, even if we have to import them.

The variety of machine tools must be increased.

We cannot maintain a balance between different kinds of machines if we confine ourselves only to the production of some kinds of machine tools without increasing their variety. At present in many cases our officials ask for imported equipment when they are told to build a particular factory. This is because the variety of machine tools we produce is limited.

Of course, our country can specialize in the production of some kinds of machine tools and sell them to other countries so as to buy, or obtain in exchange, those which we need. However, for our own use, we must produce all the machine tools which we can manufacture at home. We must buy, or obtain in exchange for our machines, only those which we cannot make on our own.

Now we must direct our efforts not only to increasing the quantity of machine tools but also to extending their variety. In this way we shall be able to build even large machine factories such as tractor and motor vehicle factories, without importing machine tools.

In future the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory must work hard to increase the variety of its products while maintaining its monthly production level of 1,000 machine tools.

Early in September this year I visited the Kusong Machine-Tool Factory and gave them the task of increasing the kinds of gear cutters. It is desirable for the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory to expand the variety of grinders. It is said that this factory will, before long, be able to add about three kinds to its present production range. It must add at least that number very quickly.

Not only the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory, but each of the machine factories throughout the country must endeavour to produce one particular kind of machine tool. It is a good idea if the specialized
machine-tool factories produce important and precision machine tools and other machine factories each manufacture one other kind of machine tool in addition to implementing their basic assignment. This is the way to increase the variety of machine tools quickly.

The Commission of Machine Industry must hold a meeting and give an assignment to each machine factory to produce one specific kind of machine tool. They must examine in detail the kinds of machine tools which can be produced by each factory and ensure that each produces a different kind of machine tool.

The Ministry of Machine Industry No. 2 must also work to increase the variety of machine tools. Those factories which are under production pressure will not be able to produce machine tools, but other factories will be able to do so. If the Ministry of Machine Industry No. 2 produces machine tools, this will assist it to increase the factories in its charge.

From now onwards, a nationwide movement must be launched to increase the variety of machine tools. This is similar to the let-one-machine-tool-make-another movement. Machine factories should each set up a separate workshop and produce one specific kind of machine tool. Only when the variety of machine tools is increased in this way will it be possible to keep a balance between different kinds of machines, make effective use of them and build many more machinery factories next year.

In order to expand the variety of machine tools, the problem of designing must be solved. Machine designers who are now working at different factories should be gathered in one place and given the task of producing the blueprints for new machine tools. Those designs which our country does not have must be bought from other countries.

A large machine-tool shop must be set up at the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory.

At present many branches of the national economy are asking for quantities of large machine tools. But we cannot provide them with these machines because there is still no factory producing large machine tools in our country. Unless we produce them, we will not be
able to develop the country’s industry to a higher stage.

We must establish a large machine-tool shop at the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory so that we can produce them. It will be a good thing to be able to meet domestic requirements for these machine tools, even though we cannot export them immediately. You must work out how many kinds of large machine tools will be needed.

The construction of the large machine-tool shop must be undertaken by the construction work force at the disposal of this factory. This shop must not be built at a distance from the factory; it is desirable that it should adjoin the factory.

A new casting shop must also be built. The manpower needed for the construction of this shop should either be from Huichon through consultation with its authorities, or be composed of the new discharged soldiers to be sent to you.

Supply and service for the workers has to be improved.

Today on my way here to Huichon I saw many houses under construction, but many of them have not yet been completed. They say this is due to the shortage of glass and some other materials. You have to provide the necessary materials so that the dwellings under construction will be completed soon and the workers will move to new houses. In the construction of Huichon it is important to give priority to the speedy building of houses.

You must not only complete the houses under construction speedily but continue to build many dwellings. In this way you will be able to overcome the shortage of houses satisfactorily.

More dormitories, nurseries and kindergartens must be built. More dormitories must be built if discharged soldiers are to be allocated for the factories. You must provide the materials needed for the construction of dormitories, nurseries and kindergartens.

The roads in Huichon must be paved. This year only the road leading from the Huichon Railway Station to the Onjong Bridge should be paved; other roads should be surfaced next year. You need not hurry with the paving of other roads because traffic is not heavy there.

At the moment roads are being paved with cement in most cases.
This is more expensive and less convenient than surfacing them with asphalt. The road between Sariwon and Haeju is now being paved. They say that this project will need 35,000 tons of cement, but only 7,000 tons of asphalt. This shows that it is better to sell cement to buy asphalt for paving. Roads paved with cement are difficult to repair, but asphalted ones are easy to mend. Even if asphalted roads break up, it is sufficient to spread asphalt on them and roll it. For this reason, we do not encourage paving roads with cement. Cement must be used for the construction of factories, power stations, schools and houses.

The oil refinery will be operating from April 15 next year. When this is done, a large quantity of asphalt will be obtained. If we pave roads with this asphalt, we shall be able to asphalt nearly all the major roads of our country within about three years. This kind of asphalt must be used for road pavement; it is not much use for any other purposes. In future we must work towards paving roads with asphalt.

You must improve the administration of Huichon.

This city must start a drive to end the selfish attitude of the factories, so as to prevent large factories and enterprises from dividing different districts of the city between themselves and adopting this attitude, in the same way as Hamhung once did. In the past, large factories and enterprises in Hamhung adopted a selfish attitude, and each built up its own area. As a consequence, the Ryongsong Machine Factory, the Hungnam Fertilizer Factory and the Pongung Chemical Factory each controlled one area and ruled the roost there. Although the city had a large hospital, each factory had its own hospital. So we criticized them for this and got them to rectify it.

Here in Huichon, too, I find that three big factories each control one region and adopt a selfish attitude. It would be enough for the city to have one large settling reservoir. However, each factory built a small one of its own, with the result that a large amount of manpower and materials has been wasted. If factories and enterprises act individually from selfishness, it will be impossible to administer the city properly because there will be many masters in the city.

In former days it was impossible to administer Huichon well
because it hardly had the appearance of a town. However, now that it has virtually become a town, it must be administered accordingly.

For instance, it is advisable for the city authorities to take charge of the supply of vegetables, coal and meat and similar things for the inhabitants of the city and to do this work in a uniform way. At present in Pyongyang vegetables, coal and suchlike are supplied to the factory and office workers by the city establishment concerned in a uniform way instead of by individual factories and enterprises.

If the city takes charge of the supply work for the factory workers and office employees uniformly, the managers of factories will be able to do a better job without being under pressure of work.

So, what measures have to be adopted in order to put an end to the selfish attitude of factories in Huichon and administer the city well?

First of all, the city establishment concerned must set up a system to manage lorries in a uniform way instead of giving them to each factory. In future, you must not give lorries to factories when they ask for them to manage their dormitories.

From now onwards the city motor vehicle station must take charge of transporting the materials needed for production from the railway station, and vegetables to be supplied to the workers. Factories must only carry materials for special production.

Huichon must pool all the lorries, which are now at the disposal of factories, in the city motor vehicle station with the exception of those needed to transport materials for special production, and use them rationally. In addition, commuter buses should not be allocated to factories, but a system must be worked out whereby they are run by the city on a common basis.

In Huichon a system must gradually be developed for administering the city properly. In this way, the city management department of this city’s people’s committee will, in future, take complete charge of the city administration as they do in Pyongyang. However, you must not attempt to do this immediately. City management is not a simple matter. At present the administration of Pyongyang is on sound lines. But this has not been achieved easily. This is because we personally received
reports on the administration of the city every day, criticized the defects so that they were rectified, and solved whatever difficulties there might be, at the right time.

Huichon has not yet been developed as it should be, and it has no officials who are experienced in city administration. Therefore, if the city authorities take complete charge of its management immediately, their burden will be too heavy and this work will not be done as it should be, with the result that the inhabitants will suffer inconvenience.

Therefore, the city authorities should take over the function of city administration from the factories and enterprises gradually over a period of 18 months or two years and accumulate experience in this work. Only when the city administration system has been completely established should they undertake this function in full.

Huichon must first establish the system of supplying vegetables to the dormitories through the network of shops. The city must build greengroceries near the dormitories and sell vegetables to them. This will dispense with the practice of factory managers’ asking for lorries to carry the vegetables to be used for the dormitories.

To continue. The houses now under construction must not be transferred to the factories, but should be managed by the city. In future when the capacity of the city people’s committee to repair and manage buildings has increased, it should take over all the houses now at the disposal of factories and manage them.

The Huichon People’s Committee must staff the city management department with good people and get them to acquire the habit of administering the city faithfully.

Huichon must be developed well as a communist city. Because this city has only good factories engaged in the production of precision machinery, it can be built as a cultured city. The new street now under construction in Huichon is very attractive. If you continue to develop the city for a few more years, it will become a pleasant one. In future you must install the central heating system in this city and build it in an attractive and modern way.
The prices of vegetables will have to be fixed properly in Huichon. At present the prices of greens and some other kinds of food are fixed in accordance with the specific features of each region, instead of the state fixing a single price for them. The Huichon City People’s Committee raised the prices of greens to be supplied to dormitories without due consideration on the pretext that they were fixing their prices to suit the situation of their locality. If they do this, it will interfere with the lives of those who live in dormitories.

Needless to say, if the prices of greens are raised, the peasants will benefit by this. However, their prices should not be raised too high so that the peasants benefit, while you cause the workers difficulties, as you are doing now. You were wrong in raising the prices of greens to make things difficult for the workers. People’s committee chairmen are masters who are in charge of providing good living conditions for the people. Therefore, even when they fix the prices of greens, they should do it properly after considering the matter in detail. The local authorities will not be able to raise the price of eggs without authority because it is fixed by the Price Assessment Commission.

Jagang Province must complete the construction of the mixed feed factory as soon as possible. Only when they do this, will it be possible to operate the chicken plants in the province properly. I hear that they cannot complete the factory because of the shortage of materials. Such things as silos can be built of wood.

Commendations must be given to the comrades of the machine-tool factories and those who came to assist them, who have set an example in the production of machine tools, as well as to the best workers of the precision machine factory and other factories and enterprises who took part in the production of the goods for the joint operations.

Those workers, technicians and office workers who participated in the construction of Huichon have also done a great deal of work this year. Commendations for them should be given by the end of the year when all the projects to be constructed this year are completed.
**ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS RAISED BY THE IRAQI JOURNALISTS’ DELEGATION**

*October 11, 1971*

**Question:** We should like to tell you of our admiration and wonder at the experience acquired by the Workers’ Party of Korea under your wise leadership.

Would you please tell us what you consider to be the most important experience of the fighting people of Korea and what they have contributed to the treasure house of mankind in their struggle for socialism?

**Answer:** First of all, I should like to say how grateful I am for your high assessment of our experience.

As you know, our country was formerly a colonial, semi-feudal society. Our people inherited a backward economy and culture from the old society, and even these were totally destroyed during the three-year war started by the US imperialists. In addition, we faced the task of building a new society in a country divided into north and south, face to face with the US imperialist aggressors.

Although they were faced with many difficulties and ordeals as they advance, the Korean people, always deeply convinced of the justice of their cause, fought an unyielding battle. They thus put an end to age-old backwardness and poverty and rapidly built a new, decent socialist society. Today, an advanced socialist system under which all people work and live happily, helping each other, has been established.
in our country where exploitation and oppression once prevailed. Our country has become a socialist industrial state with modern industries and a developed agriculture.

Our people owe all their victories and achievements in socialist revolution and construction to the wise leadership of the Workers’ Party of Korea.

The most important characteristic of the Workers’ Party of Korea’s guidance of our people’s revolutionary struggle and work of construction is that it has thoroughly established Juche.

We have consistently followed the principle of solving all problems of revolution and construction independently, in the context of the conditions prevailing in our country, by relying mainly on our own efforts. We have creatively applied the universal principles of Marxism-Leninism and experiences gained by other countries in a way which suits our own country’s historical conditions and national peculiarities. Thus we have made ourselves responsible for solving our own problems, whatever the circumstances, rejecting the spirit of dependence on others and displaying a spirit of self-reliance. The word Juche, widely known to the world, is a term which expresses this creative and independent principle and position adhered to by our Party in revolutionary struggle and work of construction.

Experience has proved to the full the correctness of the Juche idea.

By working hard to establish Juche in our ideology we have brought about the complete emancipation of our people from the shackles of flunkeyism, dogmatism and other archaic notions which had long been corroding our spirit of national independence. Our people’s tendency to thoughtlessly discard things Korean in favour of accepting foreign ways without question, has disappeared. Our national pride and spirit of independence has been further awakened and our people have been increasingly encouraged to rely on their own efforts.

While establishing Juche in ideology, our Party has thoroughly embodied the Juche idea in all fields of revolution and construction.

Our Party’s line of independence is the embodiment of the Juche idea in the political context.
In shaping its guidelines and policies for revolution and construction our Party has opposed any tendency to cling only to the existing formulae of Marxism-Leninism or accept all the experiences of other countries. It has used its own initiative to map out original lines and policies suited to Korea’s specific conditions, and has implemented them by organizing and mobilizing the masses. On the question of the country’s reunification we also maintain an independent position: the issue must be settled by our own people, without the interference of any outside forces, with the condition that the aggressive army of US imperialism be withdrawn from south Korea.

In external spheres, too, our Party has steadfastly maintained its independence. We have developed friendly and cooperative relations with other countries, both large and small, on the principles of complete equality and mutual respect. We have also continued to wage the anti-imperialist, anti-US struggle and the fight against opportunism of all hues, in conformity with our own conditions, basing our actions strictly on our own judgement and beliefs.

Our Party’s line of building an independent national economy is the embodiment of the Juche idea in economic construction.

By relying largely upon our own technical skills and resources, and using our own cadres and people, we have maintained the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance. This has been our principle in developing the country’s economy. Our Party’s line of building an independent national economy illustrates our people’s real hope for complete national independence and prosperity, and it has been behind the startling achievements in the socialist construction of our country.

Our country’s economy is now independent, equipped with modern techniques and has developed all round. As a result of this, we have been able to develop the national economy at a steady, high rate and to improve the people’s living conditions through our own efforts. Our independent national economy serves as a solid material guarantee for the political independence of the country and for the increase of our defence capacity.

Although implementing Juche and relying on our own efforts we do
not intend to build socialism in isolation. We fully recognize that it is necessary for states to supply each other’s needs and cooperate with each other, and we are working hard to expand and develop such relations. We believe that mutual cooperation between states should be conducted with a view to building an independent national economy in each country. This factor alone makes it possible to expand and develop economic cooperation between states on the principles of complete equality and mutual benefit.

We have maintained a policy of self-defence in the development of our nation’s defences. As a result of the implementation of the Party’s self-reliant military line, our country has today come to possess its own defence forces, which are strong enough to crush all aggressors and enemies.

As I have explained, all the lines and policies of our Party proceed from, and are imbued with, the Juche idea. Juche in ideology, independence in politics, self-support in economy and self-defence in guarding the nation represent the revolutionary stand consistently adhered to by our Party.

Under the revolutionary banner of the Juche idea, our country has become a developed socialist country which has complete political sovereignty, a powerful independent national economy, strong defence potential and a brilliant national culture. As a result of the implementation of Juche, and reliance on our own efforts, we are now able to cooperate with other countries on the principle of complete equality, and make a better contribution to the cause of international revolution.

In guiding the revolution and construction, our Party has striven to carry through the revolutionary mass line, while establishing Juche.

Socialism can only be built with the willing and creative labour of millions of people. Our Party, therefore, found the basic guarantee for the promotion of socialist construction in giving the major role to the revolutionary zeal and creative activity of the masses.

In our country, revolutionary struggle and the work of construction have been conducted in all fields as a mass, popular movement. We have succeeded in all the huge and difficult tasks of revolution and
construction by relying on the high degree of revolutionary zeal and creative energy of the people. An important key to the rapid progress of our socialist construction lies precisely in the fact that we have solved all our problems by the revolutionary method of relying on the masses and rousing them to action.

When we met major difficulties and trials in socialist construction, we placed faith in the masses of the people, went amongst them, and had serious discussions with them on means of solving problems and effecting innovations. Through this, the working masses came to understand the Party’s intention and started a movement for collective innovation, carrying through the Party’s lines and policies. This developed into the well-known Chollima Movement of Korea.

The Chollima Movement is our people’s mass innovation movement to accelerate socialist construction to the maximum. It is the most brilliant embodiment of our Party’s mass line in socialist construction, and through this very movement all the wisdom, enthusiasm and creative energy of our people have been brought into full play. With the spread of the Chollima Movement, innovations have taken place in all spheres of our economy, culture, ideology, and morality, and splendid achievements have been accomplished in our socialist construction.

All our victories are the great victories of our Party’s Juche idea and, at the same time, the brilliant victories of its revolutionary mass line.

Our experience shows that when Juche is firmly established as an ideology and is thoroughly embodied in all domains of revolution and construction and when the creative zeal and talents of the masses are brought into full play, it is possible, in any country, however backward it was in the past, to build a new, rich and strong society rapidly, rout any imperialist aggressors and defend national independence and the dignity of the people and achieve prosperity for the country and the people.

You have expressed your admiration for our experience, and we consider this to be an encouragement in our work.

We have already done a great deal, but we have much to do in the
future. We have not yet reunified the country. The US imperialists continue to occupy the southern half of our country, maintaining a brutal colonial fascist rule.

The greatest national task confronting the Korean people is to drive the US imperialist aggressors out of south Korea, accomplish the national-liberation revolution and bring about the reunification of the country. In order to accomplish this task, we are striving to reinforce the revolutionary base of the northern half of Korea politically, economically and militarily, increase the revolutionary forces in south Korea in every way and, at the same time, strengthen solidarity with international revolutionary forces.

**Question:** The relations between the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea and the Republic of Iraq were established long ago. However, it was only after the July 17, 1968 Revolution that the relations took a decisive turn. What is your opinion of the successes achieved by the Iraqi people in the two years since the revolution and, particularly, the solution of the Kurd national problem on a peaceful and democratic basis and of its influence upon the strengthening of the anti-imperialist popular front?

**Answer:** The Iraqi people attained national independence through their protracted and arduous struggle against the domination of foreign imperialism and took the road to new development particularly after the July 17, 1968 Revolution. This was not only a great victory for the Iraqi people but a common victory for all those who have risen in the anti-imperialist national-liberation struggle. It was a heavy blow to the imperialists and colonialists.

Since the revolution, the Iraqi people, holding aloft the banner of anti-imperialism and independence, have waged a devoted struggle to consolidate national independence and to build a new, prosperous Iraq. They have achieved great success in a short space of time.

Many difficulties confronted the Iraqi people at the outset of their fight to build a new life. The US and other imperialists, the Israeli aggressors and their accomplices, the local reactionary forces, all
resorted to every underhand trick to remove the Iraqi people from the anti-imperialist front.

Despite their sinister plots, however, the imperialists and their lackeys could not crush the fighting spirit of the Iraqi people. The Iraqi people have developed the national economy and national culture through their creative labour, resolutely frustrating all the subversive plots and activities of the enemy and vigilantly defending their revolutionary gains.

As for the successful solution of the Kurd national problem in Iraq, we commend it as one of the greatest achievements made by the Iraqi people in bringing about national unity.

Antagonism and discord between races are a product of imperialist rule; they are advantageous only to the imperialists and are totally detrimental to the people.

The peaceful, democratic settlement of the Kurd national problem is a telling blow to the imperialists and an important step in strengthening the anti-imperialist popular front, thus further concentrating the anti-US, anti-Israeli struggle in Iraq. It will also consolidate Iraq internally and provide favourable conditions for the progressive development of the country.

The Government and people of the Republic of Iraq stand firm in the ranks of the fight against imperialism and colonialism and actively support the Asian, African and Latin-American peoples in their struggle for freedom and liberation.

This righteous struggle of the Iraqi people contributes to the anti-imperialist revolutionary cause of people all over the world.

**Question:** The aggressive actions of US imperialism against the Indochinese peoples have been escalated through US military intervention in Cambodia.

What do you think the consequences of this latest US aggression in this already inflamed region will be?

**Answer:** As is well known, the US imperialists’ aggression against
Cambodia is a link in the whole chain of their premeditated scheme to extend the war into wider areas of Indochina and Asia. Through their armed invasion of Cambodia, the US imperialists have set the stage for a naked, criminal war of aggression not only in Viet Nam and Laos but throughout Indochina.

This US imperialist policy of war escalation has made the tense situation of the Indochinese peninsula still more acute. It is seriously threatening peace in Asia and the world as a whole.

However, this expansion of the aggressive war in Indochina places the US imperialists in an increasingly difficult position and hastens the aggressors’ defeat. The US imperialist aggressors have stretched out their crooked hands to the whole area of Indochina, thereby incurring the indignant denunciation and resistance of all the Indochinese peoples and peace-loving people throughout the world. This new aggression bands all the peoples of Indochina in a single common front against US imperialism and draws more and more people into the joint anti-US struggle.

Now the Vietnamese, Laotian and Cambodian peoples, united closely, are fighting courageously against the US imperialist aggressors, their common enemy. They are scoring successive serious political and military reverses against the aggressors and driving the US imperialists into hopeless confusion. Contrary to the expectations of the US imperialists, the whole of Indochina has become a graveyard for the aggressors. The distracted flounderings of the US imperialists cannot bring the heroic Indochinese people to their knees.

The US imperialist aggressors will certainly drink the bitter cup of crushing defeat after this expansion of the war in Indochina. The total defeat of the US imperialists in Indochina is inevitable. The militant solidarity of the Indochinese people and all the fighting peoples in Asia is being strengthened every day in the course of the joint struggle against US imperialist aggression. With the support of the Asian peoples and the progressive people of the whole world, the Indochinese peoples will strike a harder blow at US imperialism and its lackeys and will thus throw out the aggressors, win liberation and
independence for their countries and bring them to new prosperity.

The Korean people see the aggression of US imperialism against the Indochinese peoples as aggression against themselves. We regard the fight of the Indochinese peoples as our own. Our people will fight more resolutely against US imperialism, the common enemy, and will do everything in their power to assist the fighting peoples of Viet Nam, Laos and Cambodia.

**Question:** There are many points of similarity between your people’s experience in the revolutionary struggle under the leadership of the Workers’ Party of Korea and the experience of the Arab nation in the struggle for unity, freedom and socialism which has continued for over 20 years under the leadership of the Arab Baath Socialist Party.

Would you please tell us of the prospects of developing relations between these two progressive movements and the influence they will exert upon the world revolutionary movement?

**Answer:** The Korean people value the experience accumulated by the Iraqi people in their struggle against imperialism and the Israeli aggressors and for unity, freedom and socialism under the leadership of the Arab Baath Socialist Party.

The Korean and Iraqi peoples are close comrades-in-arms fighting against the common enemy. Our two peoples understand each other’s position well and sympathize with each other; they cooperate closely with each other on the principle of genuine equality and mutual benefit, as they were both humiliated and oppressed in the past.

Today the friendly and cooperative relations between our people and the Iraqi people, between the Government of the DPRK and the Government of the Republic of Iraq are being steadily expanded and developed. The ties between our Party and the Arab Baath Socialist Party are also being strengthened further. The Parties and the peoples of our two countries make frequent mutual visits and also exchange many useful experiences. This is very good.

This reciprocal support, encouragement and exchange of
experiences between our nations is a great help in deepening our mutual understanding, strengthening our unity and enabling us to learn a great deal from each other.

We are very satisfied with the development of relations between the Korean and Arab peoples, and in the future, too, we shall strive to strengthen and develop this unity and cooperation. If we make a concerted effort, this unity and cooperation will expand and show even greater vitality from day to day, in all spheres of politics, the economy and culture.

The friendship and solidarity of the Korean and Arab peoples is part of the great unity of the Asian and African peoples against imperialism and colonialism. Strengthening unity and cooperation between our two countries not only serves the interests of our two peoples but also contributes greatly to the unity of the progressive people throughout the world and to their common cause.

**Question:*** The armed revolution in our Arab country aims to end the concessions of imperialism in the area, and to end the existence of Israel, as a military base of US imperialism.

You waged a similar struggle and accumulated rich experience in the people’s armed warfare against imperialist aggression, so what support and encouragement could you give to the revolution of the Arab people?

**Answer:*** The Arab people are conducting a strenuous armed struggle against US imperialism and the Israeli aggressors. It is quite natural that the gallant Arab people should resist the armed aggressors with arms. As long as the people are violently plundered and oppressed by the imperialists, they can only win freedom and independence and regain their rights when they fight the aggressors with arms. This is a self-evident truth which is proved by the history of the anti-imperialist liberation struggle.

The armed struggle of the Arab people against US imperialism and the Israeli aggressors is a just war to defend national independence and dignity, restore the occupied Arab territories and achieve liberation of
the Palestinian people. This revolutionary struggle enlists the active support and encouragement of progressive people the world over.

Our people are consistent in this solidarity with, and support and encouragement for the Arab people’s revolutionary struggle. The Korean people will resolutely continue to support the Palestinian people’s valiant fight to liberate their country. They will also firmly support the struggle of the entire Arab people against Zionism and imperialist aggression and will always remain close comrades-in-arms of the Arab people in the fight against the common enemy. Our people will always give active support and encouragement to the legitimate struggle of the Arab people.

Taking advantage of this opportunity, I sincerely wish the Arab people greater successes in their just struggle against US imperialism and the Israeli aggressors.
We have visited your studio many times before, but have had no chance to meet so many of you personally as we do today. Taking advantage of this opportunity when all officials of the February 8 Film Studio are present, I should like to speak about some problems.

Our cinematic art has made rapid progress under the correct leadership of the Party Central Committee. People from many countries are united in their admiration of it.

The new films *A Worker’s Family, The Flourishing Village, When We Pick Apples, Girls of a Fishing Port* produced by the Korean Film Studio are very good. So is *The Story of a Nurse* made by your studio. You produced many good films showing anti-espionage activities. These are all good films which are of educational value and which help the people to establish the revolutionary world outlook and they contribute to carrying out our Party’s policy on revolutionizing and working-classizing the whole of society.

The chief merit of these new films is that they assist the working people to establish the revolutionary world outlook.

People will have a revolutionary view of the world from the time when they acknowledge the reactionary nature of the exploiting system and hate class enemies. When they possess a hatred of class enemies
and set out on the revolutionary road with the determination to defeat the enemy, they can be said to have established a revolutionary outlook on the world.

We can say that in our country people begin to have a revolutionary view of the world once they know the aggressive nature of US imperialism and Japanese militarism and the reactionary nature of south Korean society and hate the US and Japanese aggressors, landlords and capitalists. Films which have recently been produced eloquently show the aggressive nature of US imperialism and Japanese militarism and the viciousness of landlords and capitalists, and thereby help the working people to establish their revolutionary world outlook.

Another good point is that they give a penetrating presentation of how people are revolutionized.

As I always say, the social status of an individual is not immutable. As the physical and chemical composition of iron ore changes when it is melted in a furnace, so the social status of an individual changes in the course of his social life and revolutionary struggle. The view that anyone’s social status can change accords totally with dialectical materialism.

Of course, people may have different ways of changing their ideological status and it is true that their origins and family background have some effect on this. It takes a long time to produce molten iron from low grade ores and a short time when we use high grade ores. This also applies to the revolutionization of people. Those of worker origin who were subjected to exploitation and oppression in the past can be revolutionized in a fairly short time, but it may take a comparatively long time to revolutionize those who have grown up in a complicated home environment. What plays a decisive role in revolutionizing people, however, is not their origin or home environment but revolutionary education and practices. Our Party recognizes that all the working people can be educated and reformed irrespective of their origin and it is also endeavouring to transform all members of society on communist lines.

Many new films deal with the fact that under our system all people,
except a handful of hostile elements, can be educated and reformed regardless of their origin. This is very good.

The feature film *A Worker’s Family* eloquently confirms that the son of a worker, too, can only be working-classized through tireless ideological education and effort, not just automatically.

The son of a worker does not become a worker automatically, and the son of a revolutionary does not spontaneously become a revolutionary. It is also not true that the son of a man whose origin is bad will necessarily become an untrustworthy character. At present some Party officials show a tendency to discriminate against people with a complicated background, attaching too much importance to their origin. They must not do this. Our young people have all been educated by the Party as they grew up under the socialist system. It is nearly 30 years since our country was liberated and almost 20 years since the ceasefire. So why should we discriminate against them now, asking questions about their origins? As for those new generations trained by our Party, you must not take issue with their origins.

Many new films also deal with the idea that the new generation educates the old generation. This is also very good.

The feature film *When We Pick Apples* shows clearly how the ideological struggle is carried out between the new and the old generations, in other words, between the young men who have grown up and been educated under the socialist system and the people who had lived in the old society. As you can see in this film, people in our country are reformed through an ideological education and struggle, and in the process, the revolution and construction forge ahead.

The *Girls of a Fishing Port* is a good feature film, even though its story is simple. The plot need not necessarily be complicated to make an excellent film. The film shows how the new generation work hard to implement the Party’s policy on supplying the working people with processed fish without allowing even a single fish to rot. It also shows that the younger members of the new generation are more active than their elders. We can say that this film has a profound philosophical
content because it shows that as society develops, the people’s campaign against obsolete ideas becomes more thorough and, in the process of this, social progress continues and people are continually being reformed to become communists.

Amongst the films produced recently there are many which contribute to the education of armymen and working people in socialist patriotism. We can take as a typical example *The Story of a Nurse* produced by the February 8 Film Studio.

This particular film strikingly portrays the boundless loyalty to the Party and fervent love for the country shown by the People’s Armymen, which helps the working people to have a clear understanding of how precious their country and Party are. This film also contains examples of the strict discipline, organization, the firm belief in victory during war and the revolutionary optimism of the People’s Armymen. This kind of film will be very useful in making the People’s Armymen and working people carry out politico-ideological preparations to counter a war.

In a word, our cinema is now developing on a very sound basis and is contributing greatly to the fulfilment of the revolutionary cause of our Party and our people.

In a capitalist society, however, the ruling classes treat the film as an entertainment or amusement and use it as a means of paralyzing people’s revolutionary consciousness. At present, capitalist countries are distributing many films whose message is that people should lead a frivolous life, beat or kill and steal or deprive. Such films corrupt the people and young people and numb their class awareness. Some other capitalist films preach the principle of nonresistance. These films make the audience feel how miserable the living conditions of the hungry and ill-clad working people are, but fail to make them fight with determination to smash the anti-popular ruling system. These films, in the final analysis, accord with the interests of the exploiting classes who are afraid of the revolutionary advance of the oppressed working masses and wish to suppress it.

The basic purpose of revolutionary literature and arts is to
contribute to educating and reforming people into revolutionaries and to developing society.

Films as well as novels and other forms of literature, play a great part in stimulating people to turn out in a revolutionary struggle. Lu Xun’s works, which showed the sharp contradictions of an exploiting society and urged people to fight against that system once made a great contribution to mobilizing the Chinese people and young people into revolutionary struggle.

The cinema is very important in educating people in a cultured way. If a film clearly shows the high moral qualities of heroes who are well-educated and well-mannered by means of the dialogue and the acting, it will play a valuable part in raising the people’s level of cultured life. We cannot carry out the task of the cultural revolution satisfactorily by school education alone. The art of the cinema, as a means of social education, plays as important a role in raising the cultural standards of the working people as school education does. To see a good film is better than to read a novel.

We must see that our cinema strongly serves the work of educating the working people in accordance with the mission of revolutionary literature and arts.

Now some people have a “theory” that when the people are living in poverty, their revolutionary consciousness is high, but when they are prosperous it becomes lower. This is untrue. It is not because of their high standard of living that unsound people appear in some countries, but because of poor ideological education. As a society develops, the material and cultural standards of its people are naturally improved and, accordingly, their ideological consciousness should also be improved. It is a law that as socialist and communist construction advances, people’s ideological consciousness develops, the communist spirit is fully demonstrated, the revolutionary unity of society is further strengthened, and discipline and order are strictly observed. Things in our country where the more socialist construction advances, the more firmly the whole of society is united into a harmonious collective and higher revolutionary zeal is displayed by all the people in the
revolution and construction prove the fallacy of the “theory” that as the life of the people improves, their revolutionary spirit is weakened.

Life clearly proves the correctness of our Party’s policy on conquering the two fortresses of communism, the material and the ideological, simultaneously. In the future, we shall continue to press ahead with the campaign to conquer both fortresses, while firmly maintaining the policy of giving precedence to conquering the ideological fortress. Workers in literature and the arts must produce many more works which contribute to implementing this correct policy of our Party.

We must not be content with the great achievements in the development of our cinema.

The revolution in our country is not yet completed and it is still continuing. The US imperialists who occupy one half of our country are committing all kinds of barbarities in the south and their aggressive schemes against the northern half of Korea are becoming more blatant. What is worse, the vicious Japanese militarists are worming their way into south Korea again. We must sharpen our vigilance against the aggressive actions of the US and Japanese imperialists and thoroughly prepare the entire people politico-ideologically and with military technique to deal with possible invasion by the enemy.

If all the people are thoroughly prepared to fight the invader and know how to shoot, they can defeat any enemy.

At the time of Koguryo our country was stronger than at any other time. At that time everyone was trained at horse-riding and archery from their childhood. At the time of the Ri dynasty, however, the corrupt feudal rulers prohibited people from making swords or spears and made no preparations to defend the country. That is the reason why they failed to check the invasion of the Japanese imperialists and finally lost their country.

In order to defend the country from foreign aggressors all the people must be under arms. In the Fatherland Liberation War we had to retreat temporarily because we were short of guns. Of course, it is not easy to arm all the people. It is not so difficult to provide good clothes
or footwear for them. If we establish several more textile and footwear factories, we shall be able to solve the problems of clothes and shoes easily. But it is almost beyond one’s power to produce the arms which are needed to defend one’s country by one’s own efforts. No matter how difficult and burdensome it may be, we must arm all the people and fortify the whole country so that our life as slaves of the imperialists will not be repeated. What is the use of people wearing good clothes if they are deprived of their country? Even though we have to make our suits of vinalon blends, we must never become slaves of the imperialists.

Many quality movies must be produced which will contribute to the thorough revolutionization of the working people and soldiers and to the better implementation of the military line of our Party in accordance with the requirements of the situation.

The Korean Film Studio must continue to produce many films based on the revolutionary traditions and on revolutionization and working-classization. It should produce films based on revolutionization of teachers, doctors and other intellectuals, and on the workers’ struggle.

The February 8 Film Studio must make films which contribute to preparing the soldiers and the people fully, both politico-ideologically and with military technique to counter a war.

First of all, a large number of films which will assist with the class education of the soldiers and the people must be produced.

We always say that the aggressive nature of imperialists and the exploitive nature of landlords and capitalists cannot change. However, our young people and soldiers do not have a clear understanding of their aggressive and exploitive nature because they have not experienced the colonial rule of Japanese imperialism nor exploitation by landlords and capitalists. So it is an urgent task in our Party’s ideological work to intensify class education amongst the young people and armymen.

We must particularly increase our vigilance against the aggressive schemes of Japanese militarists and educate our working people and
young people well so that they hate them and are determined to defeat them at one blow if they attack us.

During an interview with Japanese journalists some time ago I told them that the Korea of today is not what it was in the 1910s, and that although our people lost their country once because of the feudal rulers who only recited poems, riding donkeys and wearing horse-hair hats, they are now able to defeat any invader. There is no reason why we cannot fight off the Japanese militarists just because our population is smaller than that of Japan. Japanese militarism is not really a formidable foe. If the people of north and south Korea fight with united effort, they can smash the Japanese militarists. People in the northern half of Korea are politico-ideologically awakened and united as one man. If the Japanese militarists invade our country, people in the south will also fight against them with the people of the north.

The February 8 Film Studio must produce many films which are helpful in educating the working people and armymen to hate US imperialism and Japanese militarism and the landlord and capitalist classes.

The studio must continue to produce films on the theme of the brilliant revolutionary traditions of our Party. At the same time, it must make films which contribute to teaching the armymen the experience in the Fatherland Liberation War and to carrying through the military line of our Party. This is the main purpose for which we established the February 8 Film Studio.

Many valuable experiences during the great Fatherland Liberation War and true stories of struggle of our people and the People’s Army are good themes for quality films. The February 8 Film Studio must produce many films about war based on these subjects. In this way it will contribute to preparing the army and the people ideologically and arming them all thoroughly so that they can rise up as one man in the fight to defend the socialist gains with revolutionary optimism if the enemy attacks them.

Just because they are films on the subject of war you must not only show battle scenes in the films. War is carried on by man and it is a part
of the life of the people. Therefore, even those films which deal with war ought to portray the people’s life and show how their revolutionary consciousness develops and how they are trained to be revolutionaries through the trials of war.

All forms of art should deal with the people’s life. If we portray a revolutionary, we should show, through the fact of his life, how he becomes a revolutionary. We can only exert a great influence on people when we truthfully depict the process through which a man, who did not know at first who his class enemy was and what the revolution was, is gradually awakened to class consciousness and trained to become a revolutionary through fight.

Those who took part in the anti-Japanese armed struggle are not the only revolutionaries. During the three-year Fatherland Liberation War a large number of revolutionaries grew up and our people were trained on revolutionary lines in the arduous trials of war. The February 8 Film Studio must successfully adapt for the screen the struggle of our people and the People’s Army who fought with noble patriotism and unparalleled mass heroism during the war.

When you make a film on the theme of war, you must not try to cover the whole period of the war in a single work. You can easily make a good film based upon the simple fact that they fought and overcame the harsh trials of war. You can make such movies as the feature film Scouts which was based upon the fighting experiences of the scouts.

The studio must produce films which deal with a number of subjects—the matter of unity between the army and the people, officers and men, the question of strengthening military discipline in the People’s Army, the matter of improving military training, the problem of instilling into soldiers’ minds bravery, boldness, fortitude, organization and mass heroism.

In addition, I should like to mention briefly the problem of conflicts in works of literature and art.

It is important to deal correctly with the problem of conflicts in producing either films or other kinds of works of art.
It is natural that there are both positive and negative sides as well as various kinds of contradictions in an ever-changing and developing society. As a work of literature or art represents social life, it cannot ignore such positive and negative facts and contradictions and this poses the problem of conflicts.

The character of conflict in works of literature and art differs according to the kind of social system being shown. The social contradiction in a capitalist society is one of antagonism. Hence, in literary and art works which deal with capitalist society, conflict between the positive and negative is shown as inimical and, accordingly, the conflict bears an antagonistic character. On the contrary, in works which represent the life of the working people in a socialist society, the conflict does not bear any antagonistic character because the character of a social contradiction in this society is not inimical. So such works of literature and art must not lead the conflict between the positive and negative to a breakdown of relations nor make it irreconcilable.

In recent feature films *When We Pick Apples* and *Girls of a Fishing Port* the artistic conflicts are revealed as a problem between the working people themselves, and here even a little inner contradiction is solved and negative characters are educated and reformed to create unity. This is very correct. If the films set the artistic conflict too severely and make masters of our era come to a breakdown of relations without achieving unity, it does not accord with the intention of class struggle in a socialist society and the objective reality of our country.

As we always say, under our system there are no inimical class relations, but unity and cooperation between workers, cooperative farmers and working intellectuals form the basis of social relations. Under a socialist society, the class struggle is carried out mainly in the form of ideological education and ideological struggle to eradicate the remnants of obsolete ideas in the minds of the working people and it aims at uniting all of them through education and leading them up to the communist society.

Film workers must write scripts and produce films in line with the
law of development of the socialist society and the principle of class struggle.

One of the important things in developing the cinema is to give priority to the writing of scripts and to carry it out by means of a mass movement.

You must not think that scripts can only be written by professional writers. Anyone who has the knowledge of a graduate of middle school or above can write scripts. A mass campaign to write scripts must be carried out so as to provide a constant supply of them.

Cooperation between the February 8 Film Studio and the Korean Film Studio must be well conducted. There should be no obstruction between them. If they combine their efforts, they can produce more and better films with their existing force alone.

A system should be established under which actors and actresses of the two studios can be exchanged, learning from and helping each other. They must often meet to share their experiences or criticize films jointly. A meeting for a combined review must be conducted in a critical way. Only by doing this can we produce good films in accordance with the Party’s requirements and thereby revolutionize film artists more quickly. If we are afraid of being criticized or suppress criticism, we cannot expect quality films.

Party organizations in film studios must intensify politico-ideological work among the artists.

Only then can you arm them thoroughly with our Party’s monolithic idea, the Juche idea, and produce better films. Studio Party organizations must carry out an efficient ideological education and ideological struggle among artists, even when making a film, and thereby convert film production into a process of establishing the Party’s monolithic ideological system among them.

Lastly I should like to speak briefly about the subject of our advance into the world’s film industry.

At present our films are becoming models of revolutionary films throughout the world. People of many countries in Asia, Africa and Latin America are asking for our films. If such feature films as When
We Pick Apples are sent to other countries, they will be acclaimed by their people.

If we are to send our films to foreign countries, we must dub them in foreign languages skilfully. But now we have few linguists who are specialized in foreign languages. We must train specialists as soon as possible so that we can dub our films in English, French, Spanish, Arabic and Swahili. Translation dubbing must be done by male and female speakers. We can type subtitles onto the film, but in this case the film will soon be worn out. So it is better to do dubbing, as far as possible.

If our revolutionary films are distributed in foreign countries in large numbers, the people of Asia, Africa and Latin America will gain strength and courage from them so that they can rise in the fight to construct a new society, without being deceived by the neocolonialist policy of the imperialists.

I hope you, actors and officials of the February 8 Film Studio, will produce larger numbers of excellent films in the future by working hard to carry through the Party’s policy on literature and the arts.
CONCLUDING REMARKS AT THE THIRD PLENARY MEETING OF THE FIFTH CENTRAL COMMITTEE OF THE WORKERS’ PARTY OF KOREA

November 18 and 23, 1971

We have considered very important questions for many days at this plenary meeting. This meeting has discussed the present situation and our Party’s policy on its external activities, the duties of the machine industry in carrying out the three major tasks of the technical revolution, and the question of increasing the production of consumer goods for the people.

Since I have already made the report and concluding remarks on the first item on the agenda, the present situation and our Party’s policy on its external activities, I shall not say anything further about that. My speech on this subject will be published in book form and circulated to the Party organizations at some time in the future.

I should like to stress several points on the second item on the agenda, the duties of the machine industry in carrying out the three major tasks of the technical revolution, and on the third item, the question of the production of consumer goods for the people.
1. ON THE DUTIES OF THE MACHINE INDUSTRY IN CARRYING OUT THE THREE MAJOR TASKS OF THE TECHNICAL REVOLUTION

The Fifth Congress of our Party defined the three major tasks of the technical revolution and published them.

Our Party has dealt with this subject for the first time, and evolved a new revolutionary theory of it.

If we are to build socialism and communism, we must carry out the technical revolution and relieve the working people from laborious work. Freeing them from burdensome work is a Juche-oriented policy which has been consistently followed by our Party in building socialism. The Fifth Congress of our Party put forward the three major tasks of the technical revolution—reducing the differences between heavy and light labour, those between agricultural and industrial labour, to a considerable degree, and relieving women from the heavy burdens of household chores so as to emancipate the people from backbreaking work.

The idea of these tasks has won everyone’s support because the content is clear and good. It enjoys the support not only of our people, but of Korean entrepreneurs in Japan and scientists in south Korea. It has also won the approval of many people around the world. Who will object to the idea of freeing people from hard work? Probably no one objects to the idea of narrowing the differences between heavy and light labour and between agricultural and industrial work and of relieving women from heavy burdens of household chores.

We must carry out the three major tasks of the technical revolution which enjoy everyone’s support and approval.

In order to carry them out, we must concentrate great efforts on the machine industry.
The meeting of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee which was held towards the end of last year discussed where to start implementing the three major tasks which had been proposed by the Fifth Party Congress, and resolved to give priority to the extractive industry, and the coal industry in particular.

If we are to give preference to a powerful stimulus to the technical revolution in the extractive industry while speeding up this revolution in general, it is necessary to increase the production of machine tools. That was why we put such a strong emphasis on the task of increasing the production of machine tools when considering the national economic plan for 1971 at the meeting of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee early this year.

In response to the call of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee, the men, technicians and office workers of the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory initiated a campaign to produce 10,000 machine tools. The Party gave active support to the excellent initiative of the workers of this factory and helped them in various ways to implement their resolve. As a result of their strenuous efforts to reach the target, they have attained the level where they can produce 10,000 machine tools every year. The workers of the Kusong Machine-Tool Factory have also reached the same level, and the Mangyongdae Machine-Tool Factory, too, has made a great innovation in the production of machine tools. This is a demonstration of the high degree of loyalty to our Party on the part of the workers of these machine-tool factories.

Today, on behalf of the plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee, I should like to offer warm thanks to the men, technicians and office workers of the Huichon, Kusong and Mangyongdae Machine-Tool Factories.

If machine-tool factories produce 30,000 machine tools every year by continuing to make innovations, we shall lay a strong foundation on which to carry out the three major tasks of the technical revolution given by the Fifth Party Congress. If we have large numbers of machine tools, we shall be able to bring about a radical change in
reducing the differences between heavy and light labour in the industrial sector, and in easing labour-consuming work so as to increase production in the extractive industry in particular, and also make big strides in narrowing the differences between agricultural and industrial work by accelerating the rural technical revolution and in developing light industry so as to relieve women from heavy household burdens. This will convince our officials that they can carry out the three major tasks of the technical revolution successfully.

The production of machine tools is so important that this plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee has discussed the duties of the machine industry in carrying out the three major tasks of the technical revolution.

The duties of the machine industry, which have been identified in the report to the plenary meeting, are all scientific and realistic. The provincial, ministerial and factory Party committees must discuss the measures to implement the tasks which the report has given the machine industry, and must implement them to the letter.

They must, in the first place, work hard to increase the number of machine tools.

The machine industry must make an all-out effort and produce 30,000 machine tools by April 15 next year. They must also strive to increase the variety of machine tools and improve their quality.

It is very important to increase the volume of machine tool production and their variety as well as to improve their quality. Increasing the volume of machine tool production alone is not enough to carry out the tasks of the technical revolution smoothly. We have to mass-produce different kinds of good-quality machine tools, and this is the way to carry out the tasks of the technical revolution successfully and solve the major problems in economic construction smoothly.

If we have large numbers and different varieties of good-quality machine tools, we shall be able to equip the tractor factory, tractor spare parts factories, trailer farm implement plants, local industry factories, and the machinery repair shops for local industry properly, and also gradually construct factories capable of manufacturing
high-precision machines and equipment. Then, our country will become a better qualified industrial state.

If we develop the machine industry by mass-producing a variety of high-quality machine tools, we shall be able to produce a large number of machines and export them. To be candid, exporting fabrics is not something that we can be proud of. We can say that a country is based on powerful industry and that it is rich and strong when it can export machines. Our country has inexhaustible deposits of iron ore, so it is much better to mass-produce steel and manufacture machines from it for the foreign market than export fabrics. As far as fabrics are concerned, it will do if we produce enough of them for our own people.

By producing a variety of high-quality machine tools in large numbers, we shall be able to produce different kinds of other machines for the development of underground and marine resources, and for various other undertakings.

Our Party’s attempt to increase the number and variety of machine tools, therefore, is a worthwhile struggle not only to carry out the immediate tasks of the technical revolution, but also to build up a large asset for the future development of our country.

All machine factories must follow the example of the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory and join the campaign to increase the variety of machine tools and improve their quality. They must do their share in this campaign. If machine-tool factories do not participate in this campaign, they will not be performing their duties in implementing the three major tasks of the technical revolution. I believe that all of them will take an active part in the project to increase the variety of machine tools and improve their quality and thus contribute their share to the fulfilment of the three major tasks of the technical revolution. The machine industry must lay particular stress on the production of tractors and lorries, in addition to increasing the production of machine tools.

The increased production of tractors and lorries is no less important than that of machine tools in carrying out the three major tasks of the technical revolution. It will enable us to press ahead with the technical revolution in the rural communities.
One of our major tasks in these areas at present is to increase the production of cereals. We shall have to increase grain production by hundreds of thousands of tons every year so as to reach the target of grain which was set by the Party under the Six-Year Plan. When this target has been attained, our country will be prosperous, our people will be better off, and everyone can live as happily as any other people, eating rice and meat soup.

It is a very difficult task to attain the grain target of the Six-Year Plan. If we are to carry out this difficult task, we must work hard for the rural technical revolution. Reserves for increased grain production exist in the rural technical revolution. Only by supplying the rural communities with a large number of tractors and lorries, can we accelerate the rural technical revolution, increase agricultural production, free farmers from burdensome work, and solve the acute shortage of rural manpower.

In the past, we worried about how to solve the problem of fuel for the growing number of tractors and lorries, but now we need not worry about this problem. The fuel problem will be solved when, during next year, we complete the construction of the crude-oil refinery now under way, and when we have built another at some time in the future. We must take the plunge and push forward the rural technical revolution, and the machine industry must produce large numbers of tractors and lorries for this work and supply them to the rural communities.

In order to develop the machine industry, the metal industry will have to ensure the supply of an adequate amount of materials needed for the production of machinery. Many comrades from the machine industry, who took the floor today, expressed their determination to carry out their tasks. Whether they do so or not depends on whether the metal industry produces sufficient materials for them. If it does this, then the machine industry will be able to perform its tasks without difficulty.

The ferrous and nonferrous metal industries must ensure the provision of different kinds of materials needed for the machine industry. This plenary meeting did not consider the task of providing
materials for the machine industry because the meeting would have to sit too long to discuss the matter. The Cabinet will have to make the appropriate arrangements and discuss it separately and take the necessary steps at some time in the future.

If we are to carry out the three major tasks of the technical revolution by developing the machine industry, we must increase the role of the Academy of Sciences and improve scientific research.

From next year onwards, large numbers of machine tools will be produced. Their variety will also have to be increased, including large, high-precision machine tools. Then, our machine industry will acquire an immense capability and will be able to manufacture aircraft and various other modern machines. In order to increase the capability of the machine industry to such an extent, we must intensify scientific research.

The Party Central Committee departments concerned and the Cabinet must give effective leadership to the Academy of Sciences and see that scientific research work makes a worthwhile contribution to the development of the machine industry.

Scientists and technicians must improve machinery design. Good designing is essential for the manufacture of highly efficient good-quality machines and for the rapid development of the machine industry.

Scientists and technicians must apply themselves to research work and design different kinds of high-quality machines and other equipment by pooling their talents. They must concentrate on designing a variety of high-quality machine tools in particular. The Party Central Committee departments concerned and the Cabinet must direct the institutes of designing well, the institutes which are under the jurisdiction of the Ministry of Machine Industry and other ministries, so that designers produce good machinery designs.

We must improve the training of scientists and technicians. The University of Mechanical Engineering and other institutions of higher learning must improve their education and produce a large number of talented and competent scientists and technicians as well as designers.
Large numbers of machinists and motor vehicle and tractor drivers will have to be trained to keep pace with the growing number of machines.

In our country schoolchildren are now being taught how to drive tractors and motor vehicles under the system of nine-year compulsory technical education. So the schools must be supplied with these machines for their practical training so that large numbers of drivers and other skilled machine operators are produced.

A large number of machinists is required by our national economy which is being equipped with modern technical means with the passage of time and is making rapid progress. In view of our present requirements, we have too few mechanical engineering colleges. The Science and Education Department of the Party Central Committee and the Ministry of General Education must consider the need to reorganize some of the colleges of agriculture and technology into those of mechanical engineering, and take the necessary measures.

It is important to develop mechanical engineering. We must develop mechanical engineering quickly so as to solve satisfactorily the scientific and technological problems in the manufacture of different kinds of machine tools and other modern types of machines.

We must also develop electronics.

As was pointed out in the report, electronics in our country is in an embryonic stage. In the past, the foundation of our industry was weak, so it was impossible to develop electronics. A considerable degree of industrial progress is required for the development of electronics. Without an industrial base, it would be impossible to develop this sector. Now that solid industrial foundations have been laid, this task is well within our capabilities. Although it seems that we are a little behindhand, we have to develop electronics quickly from now onwards.

We must concentrate on electronics and solve the scientific and technological problems arising in the development of that industry. In addition, we must produce, for ourselves, different kinds of rare metals and pure metals which are needed for the development of electronics.
and of the electronic industry. We must also construct small and medium branch factories in different places for the production of automation gauges and instruments by organizing a mass campaign. Just as we have built many small chemical plants by means of an all-people campaign, so we shall be able to establish many of these automation gauge and instrument factories by organizing home workteams in coal-miners’ villages and other places where a great deal of housewives’ labour is available.

If we are to succeed in carrying out the three major tasks of the technical revolution by developing the machine industry, we must conduct a powerful ideological struggle against all unsound practices which hamper the technical revolution.

This is an age of technology. Without developing technology it would be impossible for us to move a single step forward. Still less can we overtake developed countries, unless we apply ourselves to the technical revolution, because our industry is young. Industrial progress has been made over a few hundred years in some capitalist countries like England, but only for 26 years in our country if we take the year of our liberation as the starting point, and scarcely 20 years if we count it from the year of the armistice. We must, therefore, work hard for the technical revolution and catch up with the developed countries as soon as possible.

We have a strong industrial foundation for the technical revolution.

The political enthusiasm of our working class is very high. It has a high degree of revolutionary resolve to carry out any task given by the Party, no matter how difficult it is. It is not by chance that we say that the working class is the creator of the world. Recently, I have paid a few visits to Huichon, and this was not because I wanted to take a walk or to do some sightseeing. I am encouraged by the workers whom I meet there. Because I can derive courage and strength from the working class and other sections of the masses with whom I make contact, I like to visit factories and rural communities better than going over papers in my office.

The policy on the three major tasks of the technical revolution put
forward by the Party Congress is correct. The correctness of this policy has been proved clearly by the struggle over the past one year. These tasks can, therefore, be completed, without any shadow of doubt, if our officials are mobilized ideologically.

However, some officials are not participating in the struggle to implement these tasks wholeheartedly. At present, officials are good at making speeches that they should follow the torch raised in Huichon, but, in practice, they are not making any effort to follow it.

The Huichon Machine-Tool Factory has been able to increase its annual capacity to the level where it can produce 10,000 machine tools, and this was the result of the workers’ technical revolution. It was not because they had a particularly large number of machine tools or plenty of labour that the factory could attain such a high production capacity. By means of the technical revolution, the workers of this factory increased the capacity to produce machine tools many times over. This is a miraculous success. All sectors ought to get down to the technical revolution, following the example set by the workers of the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory, but some officials do not even have a plan for the technical revolution.

Not many of the managers and Party secretaries of factories and enterprises are performing their duties with their own plans—how to mechanize, semi-automate and automate the production processes of their factories and enterprises. If they mechanize and automate production processes, they will be able to save manpower, increase production and improve the quality of their products. But quite a few managers and Party secretaries simply ask for more manpower, instead of thinking of carrying out the technical revolution.

None of the ministers has a plan which specifies when to automate which factory, how to semi-automate which factory or what to mechanize in which factory. When there is a great strain on railway transport, the Minister of Railways ought to consider the manufacture of diesel engines and the electrification of railways so as to increase the volume and speed of goods traffic, but he is thinking the way he did in the old days when he was driving a Migaha locomotive.
Nor is there any chief secretary of the provincial Party committee who has a plan on how to mechanize, semi-automate and automate the factories in his province. Neither has any of the chief secretaries of county Party committees a plan for the mechanization of agriculture. Although they have many tractors and other machines at their disposal, some officials do not try to use them properly.

Because ministers, chief secretaries of provincial Party committees, managers and other executives of factories and enterprises have neither a firm resolve nor a detailed plan to carry out the technical revolution, it is natural that the tasks of the technical revolution are not progressing successfully.

The main reason for inefficiency in the implementation of these tasks is that our officials do not accept the Party’s decision unquestioningly and that they lack loyalty to the Party.

The comrades who are present at this plenary meeting are all members of the Central Committee of the Party or cadres holding important office. They all participated in the Party Congress. You, comrades, ought to accept the decision of the Party Congress wholeheartedly, study how to implement it, and make strenuous efforts to carry it out. Since the Party Congress adopted the resolution to carry out the technical revolution, every sector must work out a plan to implement it. But officials are neither making plans nor efforts to implement the Party decision. This shows that they have not accepted it ideologically and that they are not loyal to the Party. How can a man who does not implement Party policy be called a cadre and a member of our Party?

If you are to carry out the revolution, you must fight. No revolution can be successful automatically—without any fighting. A revolution without any struggle is not a revolution, and without fighting you cannot emerge victorious in a revolution. In the course of a revolution, undesirable practices stand in the way of the revolution. Only by combating these practices can you advance the revolution and develop society. This is a law of social progress.

Our experience of struggle for more than 40 years shows that a
revolution can only triumph through fighting. This meeting is being attended also by my comrades-in-arms in the anti-Japanese armed struggle, and we know that, in those years, no revolutionary trial was ever overcome without an ideological struggle.

Since the technical revolution is a revolution, it can only be carried out with success through the struggle against unsound practices which are detrimental to it. Nowadays, however, some officials do not conduct an ideological struggle against these practices, although they say that they will make the technical revolution. The chief secretaries of provincial Party committees do not wage an ideological struggle against the Party secretaries and managers of factories and enterprises who do not get down to the technical revolution, nor do the secretaries of ministerial Party committees oppose ministers who do not show concern for the technical revolution, and the secretaries of factory Party committees do not try to combat the ideas of the officials who neglect the technical revolution.

Since the Fifth Party Congress decided to introduce remote control in the production processes of the metal industry, the secretary of the Party committee of the Hwanghae Iron Works ought to implement the decision through an ideological struggle against practices which hinder the technical revolution. But, instead, he only asks the minister for more manpower. To be candid, if the Hwanghae Iron Works automates its major production processes, it will be perfectly able to operate even after dispensing with a great deal of its existing labour.

Party organizations must, first of all, fight uncompromisingly against those who reject the technical revolution.

Opposition groups may appear in the course of revolutionary advance. There were opposition groups when we were carrying out land reform and the socialist revolution, and also when we were implementing the Party’s basic line of economic construction in the postwar years. In 1956 the anti-Party factionalists challenged the Party by arguing that our Party was not paying attention to the people’s living conditions, and by finding fault with its policy on personnel affairs. If we had neglected the people’s living conditions as the
factionalists said, how could our people obtain food and get along in those years? Of course, they did not eat good food and live well in the postwar years, but none of them went hungry. The factionalists provoked our Party blatantly when they argued that it was indifferent to the people’s living standards. When they attacked us by accusing us of importing only machines, and not food, our Party firmly brushed aside their charge and imported machines and developed the economy. As a result, the power stations and factories are working, and our people are well off, as we can see today.

Ever since the days immediately after liberation, I have been fighting against the opposition who have appeared in the course of revolutionary advance. I think I shall have to fight similar people in the future, too.

We must fight the ideas of the cowards who stand in the way of the technical revolution.

Cowards reveal themselves when the revolution is advancing, and they degenerate into renegades in a difficult situation. The experience of the past revolutionary struggle shows that cowards become traitors, unable to endure trials when the revolution is undergoing difficulties. Even in the years of the anti-Japanese armed struggle, some people deserted the armed ranks. When the Soviet Union signed a neutrality treaty with Japan, one of our fellow fighters ran away while in a small-unit action. I shall not forget it all my life.

We must also wage an ideological struggle against passive elements.

Passive elements also make their appearance in the course of the revolutionary struggle. You cannot say that no passive elements will appear in carrying out the technical revolution just because it is undertaken in a period of peaceful construction. They are not special people. They are the people who do not fight to implement Party policy, who are not willing to advance, and who neither plan nor work to implement Party policy.

We must also develop an ideological struggle against those who neglect their duties. At present, quite a few people neglect the technical
revolution. These people state publicly that they will work for the technical revolution, but, behind the scenes, they do not make any effort to carry it out.

Conservatives and people who consider technology something beyond ordinary understanding will appear in the course of the technical revolution. When we were building chicken plants for the first time, some people regarded the project as unintelligible. We mechanized and automated the chicken plants, so that one tender takes care of 10,000 chickens. We were able to do this because we applied ourselves to the technical revolution, conducting an ideological struggle against the conservatives and those who regarded technology as something beyond understanding.

If we are to carry out the three major tasks of the technical revolution successfully, we must relentlessly combat the ideas of the conservatives and the people who consider technology something incomprehensible, people who obstruct the technical revolution.

The ideological struggle against the unsound tendency which interferes with the technical revolution must be intensified amongst senior officials more than any other people.

Passive elements, conservatives, and the people who overcomplicate technology, whoever they are, must be the target of an ideological struggle. The responsibility for the ideological struggle to overcome conservatism and passivity which are manifest among the chief secretaries of provincial Party committees must be undertaken by the Central Committee of the Party, and the ideological struggle to eliminate the undesirable practices of ministers who hinder the technical revolution must be conducted on the responsibility of the Cabinet and of the Party Central Committee departments in charge of economic affairs. The chief secretaries of provincial Party committees and other senior officials must set an example in the ideological struggle against unsound practices which obstruct the technical revolution.

The executives of machine factories must also undergo an ideological struggle. The Huichon, Kusong, and Mangyongdae
Machine-Tool Factories are carrying on the technical revolution, and there is no reason why other machine factories cannot do the same. The senior executives of these factories must criticize themselves for their neglect of the technical revolution and examine their own ideas.

Party organizations must mobilize the masses and strongly combat the ideological elements which interfere with the technical revolution.

The Party is a weapon with which to fight. Only when they intensify the ideological struggle by enlisting the masses in this campaign, can the Party organizations succeed in combating all kinds of unhealthy practices which stand in the way of the technical revolution.

I have often said that the masses are a searchlight which can spot “devils”. If you conduct the ideological struggle by depending on the masses, you can see all the unsound things which are detrimental to the technical revolution. Party organizations must stimulate their members and other people and wage a forceful ideological struggle so as to eradicate the unhealthy elements which obstruct the technical revolution.

In this ideological struggle, however, officials must not be relieved of office or dismissed at random.

Since an ideological struggle is an undertaking to reform people’s ideas, it must be conducted by means of criticism, not by dismissing people from office. Ousting people is not the method of the ideological struggle. We must conduct this struggle by combating outdated ideas uncompromisingly and using the method of explanation, persuasion and of awakening people.

But people who do not correct their shortcomings in spite of the ideological struggle will have to be weeded out. We must not be afraid of stragglers being weeded out in the course of the revolutionary struggle. Just as an organic being undergoes metabolism, so is it inevitable that stragglers are removed in the course of social progress and revolutionary advance. The people who advance will go ahead, and those who lag behind will drop from the
ranks. The people who refuse to rectify their mistakes and continue to obstruct the technical revolution in spite of the ideological struggle must be screened out.

We must improve the supply of consumer goods for the workers of machine factories.

The men and technicians and office workers of the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory and machine factories are working day and night to reach the target of 30,000 machine tools. The people who work well deserve good treatment in terms of material benefits.

The Secretariat of the Cabinet must keep the Ministries of Fisheries and Railways under its tight control and ensure the daily supply of 100 grammes of fish for each of the men and technicians and office workers of the machine factories. The workers and technicians who do difficult work and who work well ought each to be supplied with 150 to 200 grammes every day.

Vegetables, cooking oil, fruit and various other foodstuffs as well as fish should be supplied to them regularly. Sugar and cigarettes should also be supplied regularly.

Even in the most difficult circumstances during our anti-Japanese armed struggle, we made sure that the men received a regular supply of cigarettes. When we were cut off from any other source, we obtained them by attacking Japanese shops. I cannot understand why, under the present favourable situation, cigarettes run out of stock now and then. Cigarettes must not run short under any circumstances.

The living allowances of the long-service machine operators will have to be increased a little. I have heard that there is no real difference in the allowances for long-standing machinists and recruits. It is not easy to work with machines for ten and twenty years. Coal mining and ore mining are not the only difficult work. Machine operators, too, have to do difficult work, standing all day and every day. The allowances for the veteran machinists should be examined and increased, and the supply of consumer goods for them improved.
2. ON INCREASING THE PRODUCTION OF CONSUMER GOODS FOR THE PEOPLE

Our country has now developed the basis to increase the production of consumer goods and improve the people’s standard of living.

Take the clothing problem, for example. We have a foundation to provide the people with good clothing.

Our country has now an annual capacity to produce 60,000 tons of chemical fibre. We can feed our textile industry with 102,000 tons of fibre every year, an amount which includes domestically produced chemical fibre and imported cotton. This is enough to produce 500 million metres of fabric. If we produce 500 million metres every year, we shall be able to solve the clothing problem satisfactorily.

There are very large numbers of spindles in our country. Our spinning capacity is sizable, although it leaves a little still to be desired in that it lacks variety of spindles adapted for different kinds of chemical fibres. In the days immediately after liberation, we had only a little more than 10,000 spindles. But now we have 700,000 spindles, which can produce 80,000 tons of thread.

Most of our textile mills are modern ones which were built in the postwar years. None of them is more than 15 years old. The Pyongyang Textile Mill was the first to be built. It started operations in 1956, so it is only 15 years old.

Our country produces a fairly large amount of shoe-making plastic and leather and imports a great deal of crude rubber. This meeting has not discussed the details of footwear production, but we shall be able to produce a large number of shoes by making effective use of the leather alone which is produced in our country.

As you see, our country has built powerful chemical fibre production centres and created spinning and weaving capacities. If we
make good use of these alone, we shall be able to provide the people with good suits, overcoats and summer clothes.

In fact, the foundation of our light industry is solid. There is no problem in increasing the production of consumer goods. If we use it efficiently, we can produce large amounts of consumer goods and provide the people with a good life.

All members of our working class are fine people; they work well and are infinitely loyal to the Party. They are not working to make money; they are working devotedly for the sake of the Party and the revolution. They say that all that they need is food and clothing. They only ask for an adequate supply of materials so that they can work more.

The Party’s policy for the development of light industry is also correct. Our Party’s policy shows in every detail the tasks for increasing the production of consumer goods and the ways and means to carry them out.

The foundation of our light industry is powerful, and the Party’s policy is correct, but we are unable to improve the people’s standard of living because the production of consumer goods is not increased.

This is due, first of all, to the lack of Party spirit, working-class spirit, people-oriented spirit and concern for the people’s living conditions on the part of our officials.

Some of our officials have become bureaucratic after their appointment as cadres. They came from the working class and other sections of the people, but they have become bureaucratic since they became ministers, heads of bureaus and chairmen of provincial people’s committees. Some officials think that they were born to be cadres. Some cadres have forgotten that the Party, the working class and the people trained them in the hope that they would work well for the Party, for the working class and for the people.

At this meeting, ministers were criticized a great deal, and that was because they lacked Party spirit, working-class spirit, people-oriented spirit and concern for the people’s living conditions. They say that they are loyal to the Party, but, in fact, they are in the habit of the selfish
practice of expediency and do not work with all their hearts. This means that they lack loyalty to the Party.

Officials all say that they are sound in ideology, but mere words cannot convince people. A man’s idea can be understood through his words and deeds. His ideology is expressed through his day-to-day work and life, through his deeds. No matter how good a man may say that his ideology is, it cannot be judged as good unless it finds expression in his deeds.

At present, some officials have pledged loyalty to the Party, but they are not loyal in their deeds.

The Party secretaries of the Sinuiju Textile Mill and of the February 8 Vinalon Factory criticized the Minister of the Chemical Industry as untrustworthy, and this is because the minister does not work faithfully. He is not providing chemical fibre for the textile industry as he should; and even when he does, the quality of the material is not good. For this reason, the light industry sector cannot produce fabrics properly. Since the textile industry has only weaving and spinning machines at its disposal, it cannot weave a single metre of cloth unless the chemical industry supplies it with raw materials. The Minister of the Chemical Industry does not ensure a regular supply of raw materials to the vinalon factory, either.

The Minister of Labour also lacks loyalty to the Party. When he was once Minister of the Mining Industry, he did not supply graphite properly to the electrode factory, although our country is rich in deposits. This resulted in the suspension of electrode production; and, because of the shortage of electrodes, machine factories had to suspend the operation of their casting steel furnaces.

The Ministers of Railways and Electricity and Coal Industries do not show any concern for the people’s living conditions. I always stress that coal for people’s home use must not run out under any circumstances. Even if factories have to suspend operations because of the shortage of coal, people’s homes must be provided with regular supplies of coal. Since factories produce goods for the well-being of the people, it would be useless to produce cloth by supplying coal to
factories only, without supplying it to people’s homes because the coal situation is acute. Nevertheless, these ministers and some other officials do not bother about people’s sufferings from the shortage of coal for their home use.

Not only ministers but also chief secretaries of provincial Party committees are lacking in Party spirit, working-class spirit and people-oriented spirit.

Ministers and chief secretaries of provincial Party committees are responsible for production in the factories and other enterprises under their jurisdiction, the former assuming administrative responsibility with regard to economic and technical affairs such as providing technical guidance, the supply of raw materials and other necessities, and manpower for these industrial establishments, and the latter assuming Party responsibility with respect to the ideological mobilization of the Party members and other working people in production. Chief secretaries of provincial Party committees take responsibility for production in the factories and other enterprises in their provinces on a geographical basis, whereas ministers assume responsibility for production in the industrial establishments under their jurisdiction through the chain of administrative leadership. But some chief secretaries of provincial Party committees lack the attitude of being responsible for production in the factories and enterprises in their provinces.

Some of these chief secretaries, even when they know that factories in their provinces have to suspend production because raw materials are not available, do not organize work to solve the problem, but, instead, are occupied in shifting the blame to the ministries concerned. This shows that they lack Party spirit, working-class spirit and people-oriented spirit.

As matters now stand, some cadres lay the blame for their shortcomings on external conditions, instead of seeking the cause within themselves. Some officials say that they are unable to work well because they have to attend too many meetings, but this is only an excuse. No matter how often they are summoned to meetings, none of
them skips his meals. It cannot be accepted that they have no time to work when they have time to eat.

If we are to mobilize the masses in socialist construction, we have to hold meetings. The building of socialism is an undertaking for the people and of the people themselves. So you cannot build socialism single-handed; you can only build it successfully when you enlist the efforts of the masses of the people. At present, we have been meeting in council for many days, and this is for the purpose of organizing the masses for socialist construction by the method of one moving ten, ten moving a hundred, and a hundred moving a thousand. It is totally wrong to say that our officials cannot work efficiently because of too many meetings.

Another reason for the failure to increase the production of consumer goods at present is that officials are not well qualified for organizational leadership and are not painstaking in the management of economic life.

Because of their low qualifications, many of our officials neglect one thing when they are told to do another. We have built the vinalon factory and other excellent chemical fibre mills, but we are not operating them properly. This is due to the fact that our officials are not competent, and there is no other reason for that. Figuratively speaking, a man has obtained an excellent horse, but he does not know how to ride it.

No matter how good a horse is, it will be useless if the owner cannot ride it. Just as a good horse cannot prove its worth when a man of poor horsemanship rides it, so the economic foundation, no matter how strong, cannot demonstrate its value when managed by incompetent officials.

In order to increase the production of consumer goods and improve the people’s standard of living, it is important to increase the officials’ Party spirit, working-class spirit and people-oriented spirit and improve their qualifications for organizational leadership.

We must, first of all, endeavour to improve the officials’ Party spirit, working-class spirit and people-oriented spirit.
Party spirit means loyalty to the leader. The revolutionary party of the working class is its vanguard organization to put into practice the revolutionary thought of its leader. Loyalty to the Party means precisely loyalty to the leader, and loyalty to the leader means precisely loyalty to the Party.

Party spirit, working-class spirit and people-oriented spirit are closely related with one another. The cause of the Party is exactly the cause of the working class and the rest of the people, and vice versa.

Our officials must endeavour to be loyal to the Party. All of them must firmly equip themselves with the revolutionary thought of our Party and carry its policy through.

Our officials must have a resolve to provide the people with a good life and serve them faithfully. Nothing is more honourable for them than to serve the people. The officials who came from the working class must not forget their wretched past; they must think of making the people prosperous and work devotedly for their well-being. The officials who came from the petty bourgeois class must also discard selfishness and other outdated ideas, revolutionize and working-classize themselves and serve the people faithfully.

We must intensify the ideological struggle amongst officials against an attitude which lacks Party spirit, working-class spirit and people-oriented spirit.

When discussing the problem of the machine industry, I said that, in order to carry out the three major tasks of the technical revolution, we must combat passivity and conservatism. If we are to increase the production of consumer goods for the people and improve their standard of living, we must fight the practice which lacks Party spirit, working-class spirit and people-oriented spirit. Our officials have not yet become perfect communists; they still retain institutional self-centredness, selfishness, egoism and other outdated ideas. All the officials must intensify the ideological struggle against disloyalty to the Party and the people, disloyalty which is manifest in the practice of bureaucratism, institutional self-centredness, selfishness, egoism and expediency.
Officials must continue to increase their Party spirit, working-class spirit and people-oriented spirit through practical struggle.

Our officials’ revolutionary struggle today involves the building of socialism and socialist production. Officials who carry on these undertakings successfully can be regarded as having Party spirit, working-class spirit and people-oriented spirit. Officials who neglect socialist construction and socialist production and work carelessly are devoid of these spirits; and such people cannot be called revolutionaries. Our officials must work hard like masters for socialist construction and socialist production, and in this way they will continue to increase their Party spirit, working-class spirit and people-oriented spirit.

Officials must try hard to raise their level of organizational leadership.

There is nothing difficult about raising this level. Officials are now in the habit of saying that this is puzzling and that is perplexing. They must not say this. If a man is affected by this sort of malady, he is bound to become a fool. No man is born with organizing ability or with business efficiency or with special talents. I am against the “theory of genius”. As a matter of principle, it is unjust to say that there are people who are endowed with special talents or genius. People’s mental development may be quick or slow according to their environments and conditions, but there can be no born genius.

Koreans were not underdeveloped in the past because they were born backward, but because they were kept in ignorance by the Japanese imperialists and also because the feudal rulers of Korea had practiced flunkeyism and dogmatism.

Our Party has waged a strenuous struggle to oppose flunkeyism and dogmatism and establish Juche. It has established an advanced educational system under which everyone has access to education. A radical change has taken place in the ideological and spiritual characters of our people since liberation. Today our people are opposed to flunkeyism and dogmatism; they think and act in accordance with our Party’s ideas and will.
If they make up their minds and work hard, our officials can acquire technology and increase their ability to organize and direct work. Whether they increase this ability or not depends, in the final analysis, on their thinking.

If they are resolved to serve the people, to be loyal to the Party line, and to carry out Party policy, come what may, they can increase their organizing ability, improve their business qualifications and can do anything. We say this from our experience in the struggle.

There are comrades present here who have fought with us since the time we organized the guerrilla army at Wangqing. In the early days of our anti-Japanese armed struggle, we wrote a small manual on guerrilla warfare. Although we organized the guerrilla army, we did not know at that time how to fight the Japanese imperialists. In those days no book on the experience of guerrilla warfare was available, nor was there anyone from whom we could learn. We had nothing but the thought that we must defeat Japanese imperialism and liberate the country. Our most important task was to acquire the guerrilla tactics with which to destroy the Japanese imperialist aggressors. So we decided to write a manual on guerrilla warfare and evolved guerrilla tactics which suited our situation, step by step, by fighting in different ways. We crystallized the experiences which we had acquired one by one in the course of battles against the enemy and wrote a small manual, *Guerrilla Actions*. This manual included simple rules of guerrilla warfare, for instance, how to handle guns, how to fight in an ambush, and how to raid the enemy camp. This book became popular amongst the men as soon as it was published.

I have made painstaking efforts to provide the people with eggs ever since the days immediately after the armistice. But there was little success in my efforts to solve the egg problem. The small number of eggs produced in rural communities was far from meeting the needs of the people. In order to solve this problem, therefore, I studied production methods by reading foreign magazines and other publications a great deal in recent years. In this way I have learned how to raise chickens and ensured that the strains of chickens were
improved and that many modern chicken plants were built in different parts of the country. Conditions in our chicken plants are now fairly good.

Of course, we did not know everything when we were building them for the first time, so that we designed them on a vast scale and constructed enormous buildings equipped with heating systems and so on. But later we learned that we need not have done this. The ancestors of the imported birds had lived in a climate which is similar to that in our country, and the birds grew well in the open even in winter. So we removed all the heating facilities from the chicken plants, the facilities which had cost us an enormous amount of materials. At present, a campaign is going on in the rural communities for each household to raise five chickens, and those which have been distributed by chicken plants grow well in the open and lay eggs well.

We are not mechanical engineers, but we studied the machine industry with a determination to develop it. As a result, we were able to show the direction of its development clearly and also formulate the correct policy of giving priority to the production of machine tools, lorries and tractors so as to implement the three major tasks of the technical revolution.

Last spring, we gave an instruction that the rice seedlings which had been raised in cold beds should be transplanted by May 25. At first, however, many officials thought it something beyond comprehension, would not believe in it, nor did they accept it readily. It was only when they saw the result in the autumn that they admitted the correctness of the instruction. It is not a discovery of any scientists that transplanting rice seedlings by May 25 is a way to increase the rice harvest. We acquired this knowledge when we were working hard amongst farmers, discussing and studying the matter with them.

Some people consider coal-mining something puzzling, but there is nothing incomprehensible in this work. If you have drills, air compressors and hauling equipment, you can mine coal. If you make an effort, you can also acquire as much specialist knowledge of coal mining as you need.
During the Fatherland Liberation War we needed a great deal of lead. Developing lead mines in wartime was a difficult task, and, worse still, none of us was experienced in lead mining. When this task was raised, some officials expressed apprehension about how they could develop lead mines. At that time I said that lead was a mineral which was underground, that all that was needed was to bring it to the surface and smelt it, and that, therefore, there was nothing difficult about it. And then, I appointed an official as head of the lead-mining management bureau, and told him to develop lead mines by learning everything which he did not know. Of course, it is better if you have expert knowledge, but, even if you do not have it, you can do any work by studying it. The official who was appointed head of the lead-mining management bureau had no such knowledge. But he was firmly determined to carry out the task given by the Party, and solved the lead problem finally by learning one thing after another.

If you are firm in your belief that you are dedicated to the service for the Party and the people, you can learn as many techniques as you need while you work, and if you learn the techniques, you can do anything. I have told you that you should make factory management regulations and equipment management regulations, and there is nothing beyond your capabilities. If only you are resolved to serve the people faithfully, you can draft these regulations well. Every official must do away with mystification and work hard and make unremitting efforts to raise his technical and business qualifications.

The officials in charge of the light industry sector must increase their Party spirit, working-class spirit and people-oriented spirit, manage the economic life properly, and make effective use of the existing economic foundations so as to increase the production of consumer goods for the people.

The light industry sector must work hard to increase the variety of consumer goods and improve their quality.

The situation in our country at present is not what it was in 1958 when we started developing local industry in a handicraft manner by equipping each mill with several hand looms. At that time, our heavy
and light industries were based on weak foundations, but these foundations have now been equipped with modern machinery. Now we must increase the variety of consumer goods and improve their quality. Since the report to the Fifth Party Congress raised the matter of improving the quality of light-industry goods as an important task, we must get down to doing this, as well as increasing their variety.

If we are to implement these tasks, we have to make investments in light industry.

We were unable to make large investments in light industry during the Seven-Year Plan, but we must increase them during the Six-Year Plan. It is necessary to use foreign currency liberally for the importation of factory equipment, raw materials and other items needed for the production of consumer goods for the people. In a small country like ours, it is not economically rational to manufacture all kinds of machines and other equipment for ourselves, and particularly those items which are required in very small numbers, nor is it possible to produce all the tens of thousands of items for the people in our country.

We must produce those items for which our need is great and also those which we can manufacture ourselves. We have to import those items which we do not need in large quantities and those which we cannot make ourselves for the present. If we concentrate the investment of foreign currency on importing the necessities for the production of consumer goods for some years, we shall be able to improve the people’s standard of living considerably.

We have to import the equipment needed for treating fabric before and after weaving at textile mills.

At present, many of the clothes which people wear are not attractive, and this is because the textile mills do not have the processes for this treatment of fabrics. We have to import the equipment needed for this treatment so as to improve the quality of fabrics.

We must also import knitting machines.

In future, we are going to supply the people with a large number of knitted clothes. Knitted clothes require less yarn, and are simple to
make and wear. If you dress your children in knitted clothes, you will find it easy to take care of them. Knitted clothes are easy to wash and do not need pressing. They can be made of cotton, staple fibre and vinalon yarn, to say nothing of Orlon or nylon yarn. A large quantity of Orlon yarn will be produced in our country in a few years. We need a large number of knitting machines in order to provide the people with knitted clothes as soon as possible.

There has been a suggestion that we should make knitting equipment in our country, and it is a good thing to do so. We must make it ourselves and also import it. If we produce 40 to 50 million pieces of knitted clothing every year, we shall be able to provide all the people with knitwear, and the machines needed for the production of that many knitted clothes will cost us no more than several million pounds. So we shall have to spend some foreign currency on circular knitting machines, semi-automatic and automatic flat knitting machines.

The Kangso Knitwear Mill has now laid the necessary foundations and also trained skilled workers. If it is equipped with some more knitting machines, it will be able to produce millions of knitted clothes every year. So we need not build a new knitwear mill in Phyongsong, but should supply more knitting machines to the Kangso Knitwear Mill so as to increase its capacity.

We have to import some nylon and Orlon yarn. Orlon yarn can be obtained from abroad in whatever quantity we need in exchange for staple fibre.

We must also import machines for knitting tights. It will be better to produce a large number of machine tools and export them for tights knitting machines of which we do not need large numbers than to manufacture them ourselves. If we produce 30,000 machine tools every year, we shall not use them all ourselves. So we should sell some of them so as to buy the tights knitting machines. In this way every province will arrange the facilities for producing tights.

We shall have to import some 10,000 spindles which can spin netting thread from vinalon fibre. If we do this, we shall be able to
manufacture sweaters with the cotton yarn which has been allotted for the production of netting threads.

Our country now produces tens of thousands of tons of vinyl chloride every year. We should import simple machines for the light industry sector so that it can manufacture good-quality rexine and other imitation leather.

The Ministries of Textile and Local Industries should be allowed to use some of the foreign currency, which they have earned, for the importation of the items needed for the manufacture of consumer goods for the people. We shall have to put limits on the sum to be used not only by these ministries but by the Ministries of Machine Industries No. 1, No. 2 and No. 3 and the provincial people’s committees, out of the amounts of foreign currency they have earned.

The Ministry of Machine Industry No. 3, for instance, can export electron tubes, resistors and semiconductor elements in exchange for the items it needs. If they are allowed to do this, these ministries and provincial people’s committees will be able to import and use the equipment, raw materials and other necessities when these are required. As matters now stand, all imported goods have to come in through the single channel of the Ministry of Foreign Trade, so that some goods needed for the ministries in charge of production are occasionally late. If these ministries can import minor items for their own use, light industry factories will not have to suspend production because of the shortage of plasticizers, adhesives and reagents, for instance. In order to guarantee the importation of such items, these ministries and people’s committees will have to set up their own export and import companies which are vested with authority to have some dealings with foreign companies.

We must develop small and medium-scale chemical industries.

This is necessary to ensure that light industry factories continue to produce consumer goods on a steady basis. Since, at present, all the local industry factories depend on the Ministry of Chemical Industry for the chemical goods they need, they frequently find themselves faced with obstacles in the production of consumer goods. If we are to
eliminate their total dependence on that ministry, we have to develop small and medium-scale chemical industries. If we depend exclusively on a few large chemical plants for all chemical items, instead of developing small and medium-scale chemical industries, the light industry factories throughout the country may experience great disadvantages.

During the period of transition from capitalism to socialism, capitalist and feudal ideas and various other outdated ideas of all kinds remain in people’s minds. So long as the Minister of the Chemical Industry and the managers of the factories under this ministry work well with sound ideas, there will be no problem. But, if they degenerate ideologically and do not work faithfully, the factories which use chemicals will suffer severely. At present, senior officials of the Ministry of Chemical Industry are not working well, so that the light industry factories which are fed with chemical fibre are not operating smoothly; senior officials of the Ministry of Metal Industry are not working properly, so the machine factories which use steel are experiencing difficulties.

For the purpose of overcoming this undesirable situation, we have already given the Ministry of Local Industry and the provincial people’s committees the task of producing raw materials and other necessities for the production of consumer goods to meet their own needs. Provinces should build small ammonium factories, small sodium carbonate factories, small caustic soda factories, and small glass factories, by their own efforts. Sodium carbonate, for example, is needed by the glass industry, the food industry and many other industries. Ammonium is also an important chemical product which is indispensable for refrigerator plants.

If we build small and medium chemical plants and develop small and medium-scale chemical industries, we shall be able to overcome possible obstructions in the production of chemical goods, which may result from inefficient work on the part of a few people. In spite of this, the Ministry of Local Industry and provincial people’s committees still do not take steps to produce the chemicals which they need.
We must construct small and medium-scale chemical factories in many parts of the country. The construction of a large number of these factories in different places will, of course, cost us more money and labour than building a few large ones. But it is not bad to build small and medium-scale factories in all parts of the country. We shall have to duplicate the production of chemical goods in this way so as to meet the requirements for the manufacture of consumer goods for the people.

We must mobilize and use local reserves by means of a mass campaign so as to increase the production of consumer goods.

If some surplus labour is available from the rural communities at some time in the future, we shall be able to supplement the work forces of local industry factories and increase the production of consumer goods. A mass campaign can be organized to mine precious metal for the production of consumer goods. Mica and gold dust can also be obtained from local sources. A large amount of local reserves of timber can also be explored. Local reserves must be tapped and used to the maximum so as to increase the production of consumer goods.

We must build steel tube and wire-rope works.

Steel tubes are required by many sectors of the national economy. They are needed for the development of mines, for coal mining, for shipbuilding, for the construction of pig farms, and for the building of dwellings. Apartment houses for thousands of families have been constructed in Chollima Street, but they have not been completed because of the shortage of steel tubes. This year we have constructed refrigerator plants in many parts of the country, and this has caused an acute strain on the supply of steel tubes. Unless we solve this problem, we shall be unable to build local industry factories and food-processing factories, or improve the people’s standard of living.

We equipped the Kangson Steel Plant with facilities for drawing steel tubes after the war, and since then we have been producing steel tubes. But this alone was not enough to meet the growing demand for these items, so we have recently installed the equipment for forge-welding tubes at this steel plant. But this does not mean that the
tube problem has been solved completely. The demand for tubes will continue to increase in the future. If we are to meet the growing need, we have to build more steel tube works.

We have to build one in Pyongyang and one in each province, by our own efforts.

There is nothing particularly difficult in building steel tube works. If they follow the example of the equipment installed in the Kangson Steel Plant, provinces will be perfectly able to build these works. You comrades had better visit the steel plant and see the equipment for forge-welding tubes. Machinists, managers of machine factories, and chief secretaries of provincial Party committees should all go and see the equipment.

The supply of materials will be sufficient for all these steel tube works to be built in the provinces. The sheet steel needed for the tube works can be supplied by provincial steel works. In our country, the problem of sheet steel will be solved completely in two to three years. When the project for the extension of the Kim Chaek Iron Works is finished at some time in the future, we shall produce more sheet steel than we need. We are now studying how to use all that sheet steel. If we are to use the enormous amount, we shall have to develop the shipbuilding industry and build many large vessels. Provinces must build steel tube works by their own efforts and meet their own requirements for steel tubes.

We must also build a wire-rope works.

At present, there is an acute shortage of wire ropes. Wire ropes are required everywhere. So I gave the Minister of the Metal Industry the task of building another wire-rope works.

After the war, we called on the workers and technicians of the Kangson Steel Plant to make machines to manufacture wire ropes by themselves. In hearty response to the Party’s call, they designed the equipment and made it. Now there is no great difficulty in making such equipment. I was told that a building has been erected in the city of Kim Chaek. Wire-rope production equipment should be made and installed in that building so that we can have another wire-rope works.
During the past year we have worked hard to implement the very important tasks put forward by the Fifth Party Congress. As a result, we have reached a firm conclusion that we can carry out the three major tasks of the technical revolution, raise the people’s standard of living to a higher level and implement the policy of peaceful national reunification successfully.

In order to carry out the programme of the Party Congress, it is necessary for all the officials to equip themselves firmly with our Party’s revolutionary thought, its policies, root out the outdated ideas of all kinds and increase their Party spirit, working-class spirit and people-oriented spirit. In addition, we must continue to consolidate the politico-ideological unity and solidarity of the masses, intensify the struggle against the US imperialists, give support to the revolutionary struggle of the south Korean people in every way and further strengthen friendship and solidarity with the revolutionary people and the peace-loving people throughout the world.

The policy formulated by the Fifth Party Congress is absolutely correct. Our officials must, without any hesitation, work hard to implement the very important tasks put forward by the Party Congress and achieve a brilliant success.

In conclusion, I am going to speak about the task of improving the role of the members of the Party Central Committee.

At present, some of these members are not carrying out their duties properly.

The members of the Party Central Committee are responsible to all the Party members. Our Party members elected you to the Central Committee of the Party and entrusted you with the responsibility to decide Party policy and give leadership to the Party members and the people. The members of the Party Central Committee ought to make every effort to fulfil their heavy responsibility, but some of them are not doing so. Some people who formerly took part in the revolutionary struggle seem to think, although they are not very old, that they can get along without working well now that they have rendered some service to the revolution; and some young officials seem to think that, now that
they are members of the Party Central Committee, they can be tolerated even if they work without prudence. Both these attitudes are wrong.

A revolutionary ought to fight devotedly for the Party and the revolution, and for the working class and the rest of the people until his heart ceases to beat. Even a revolutionary veteran must work faithfully until the last moment of his life. A revolutionary must live all his life honourably. If a man dies a dishonourable death, he will end by being a dishonourable man, no matter what good things he might have done during his lifetime. He who fights single-heartedly for the revolution all his life is an excellent revolutionary.

I always say that a flower must keep blooming. The flower vase in this conference room can have its place only when the flower keeps blooming. If it withers and becomes ugly, it will have no place here. If a flower fades and loses its beauty today, however beautiful it was yesterday, no one will keep it in his house. He will throw it away.

The same thing applies to a revolutionary. If he worked well for the revolution yesterday, he ought to do the same today, tomorrow, and to the last moment of his life. Then, he will be loved and respected by the people. If he only boasts of a small service he has done for the revolution in the past, but does not work well today, he is bound to be discarded. It is a shame for a revolutionary to be weeded out. That is why I always tell disabled soldiers and revolutionary veterans that revolutionaries ought to continue to work for the revolution just as flowers ought to keep blooming.

Young officials who have been trained by the Party since liberation must also work faithfully. You have become ministers, vice-ministers, heads of the departments of the Party Central Committee, and members of this committee because you are all trusted by the Party. Since you are highly trusted by the Party, you ought to work faithfully for the Party.

You must not tarnish your names as honourable members of the Central Committee of the Party. How precious it is to be entitled to the membership of the Central Committee of the Party! It is a great,
lifelong honour to be a member of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea which is revolutionary. You must cherish this honour. To be a member of our Party Central Committee means enjoying the full confidence of the Party.

Members of the Party Central Committee, heads of its departments, ministers, managers and other Party officials and administrative and economic executives are all trusted by the Party and hold important posts. So they must know how to perform their duties. Officials must not be idle on the job, but work with a higher sense of responsibility.

The members of the Party Central Committee must have a firm resolve to fight for the revolution to the end, to work faithfully for the Party as long as their hearts beat. This is the first thing that I want to emphasize to you today.

The second thing that I should like to stress is that all cadres, young and veteran revolutionaries, have to continue to revolutionize themselves.

This means that officials must root out outdated ideas from their minds and establish a revolutionary outlook on the world. They must continue to do this to the end of their lives.

If they are to revolutionize themselves, they must not be afraid of criticism.

Criticism is a powerful weapon to educate and temper cadres and Party members in a revolutionary way. People who dislike criticism will degenerate. The history of the international communist movement and our experience of more than 40 years of the revolutionary struggle show that people who dislike criticism, who are in the habit of making excuses, take revenge on their comrades for their criticism, and assume an air of importance as though they alone were wise, are bound to degenerate. Conversely, those who, unafraid of criticism, repent of their own mistakes before it is too late, will never become corrupt.

Of course, it is not a good thing to make mistakes and to be criticized. But, when you have committed an error, you must correct it after being criticized. It will be all right if you correct it through criticism.
A man who, in spite of having made a mistake, tries to avoid criticism or defies it, will be unable to correct his mistake. There is no room for such a man in our Party.

There was an old-line intellectual who was once a member of the Party Central Committee. He had come from the family of a landlord, and, from the point of view of class origin, he was not entitled to membership of the Party Central Committee. However, our Party trusted him, elected him a member of this committee and appointed him president of the Academy of Sciences, according him good treatment. But he did not feel the Party’s trust wholeheartedly and he would not accept advice from his comrades. When his comrades advised him to work harder, he defied them with animosity and even went so far as to betray the Party. People like him who betray the Party’s confidence, refuse to accept principled advice from their comrades and come out against criticism are doomed to corruption without exception.

A man who dislikes criticism and an ideological struggle cannot revolutionize himself, so he is not at all useful to our Party. Even if he leaves, we shall carry on the revolution, and there is no reason why we cannot. As the revolution advances, cowards and ideologically corrupt elements will drop away from the revolutionary ranks, but those who advance will advance.

The Party’s embrace is always like that of a mother. It educates all its members and cadres with warm care and unremittingly trains them to be revolutionaries through an ideological struggle.

In future, Party meetings should proceed in an atmosphere of sharp criticism. Party organizations must intensify the ideological struggle and criticism so as to give revolutionary training to the officials and hasten their revolutionization.

If we are to revolutionize officials, we must reject the bourgeois way of life and establish a socialist way of life.

This task is all the more important at the present time.

At Panmunjom preliminary talks are now under way between the delegates from the north and south Korean Red Cross Societies, and
the possibilities for future visits between the two parts of Korea are increasing. If our officials do not revolutionize themselves in these circumstances, they may be affected by the bourgeois way of life or fall victim to the temptation of the bourgeoisie.

An official who attended the preliminary talks said that south Korean delegates had felt the shirts of our delegates and that our delegates should, therefore, be dressed in fashionable, high-quality shirts. This is a mistaken idea. The south Korean delegates belong to the bourgeoisie, whereas our officials belong to the working class. We must live in our own way. If our officials adopt bourgeois fashions, what difference is there between them and us? Our officials ought to take pride in going about in clothes which are made from our own cloth and tailored to our own style.

Bourgeois people frequently change their shoe fashions, for instance, in order to make money. That is why, although they formerly produced shoes with pointed toes, they are now making stub-toed shoes again. In a capitalist society a shoe-maker who always makes shoes of the same style, cannot make a living, so he changes the shapes of shoes in different ways. Our officials must not be fooled by tricks of this kind.

Revolutionaries must not try to follow the bourgeois way of life. Our officials must live in our way, in a revolutionary way, instead of trying to imitate the luxurious way of life of a handful of the bourgeoisie. We must not follow their example, but let them follow our example; we must get the people who are used to the bourgeois way of life to become imbued with the working-class way of life.

Our officials must clearly realize how fine and honourable it is to live like the working class. The working-class way of life is not the “proletarian” way of life which was mentioned by O Ki Sop. We must live as required by the way of life of the working class, the most advanced and cultured class, by the socialist way of life.

The Fifth Party Congress put forward the task of establishing a socialist way of life. A way of life is not something that can be changed or established overnight. Party officials and cadres will have to take the
lead in creating the socialist way of life step by step.

I emphasize once again that you comrades must devote everything to the fight for the revolution by cherishing a sense of honour as members of the Party Central Committee, a sense of honour as Party workers, and a sense of honour in carrying out the revolutionary duty given by the Party. Nothing is more honourable than dedicating one’s life to the revolution.

I hope that the members of the Party Central Committee and all our cadres will devote all their lives to the fight for the noble cause of the Party and the revolution, the working class and the rest of the people.
Comrades,

Today I should like to talk about some problems which arise in the training of Party cadres.

Our Party has a very solid base for training cadres today. When founding the Central Party School, we began with a two-month course. This has since been developed into three-month, six-month, one-year, two-year and three-year courses, thus becoming our Party’s dependable base for training Party cadres. The capital now has the Central Party School, the Marxist-Leninist School, the University of National Economy, the University of International Affairs and other establishments which train Party cadres. As for the districts, each province has a communist university and each county a county Party school. These cadre-training centres turn out a large number of competent officials for the Party, state and economic organs and for the working people’s organizations, as well as diplomatic personnel.

In addition to the system of training reserve cadres, our Party has set up a regular system of study for cadres on the job to educate them and raise their qualifications consistently.

Our Party has also established systems of all cadres studying more
than two hours daily, of collective study on Saturdays and of attendance at lectures on Wednesdays. In addition, we have introduced a system under which all cadres are sent to training institutions at various levels to study for a month every year. Under these systems all our cadres have made it a habit of studying, upholding the Party’s slogan, “The Party, the people and the army must all study.” We can safely say that a really revolutionary atmosphere of studying has been created throughout the Party and country.

With the creation of this revolutionary atmosphere of studying over the whole country, our Party is able to promote the energetic revolutionization and working-classization of the working people—which is an important task in the period of transition from capitalism to socialism and, in particular, to raise the qualifications of the cadres, the commanding staff of the revolution, rapidly.

This represents a great success in our Party work and it is our pride that we have laid a firm basis for training Party cadres and created a thoroughly revolutionary atmosphere of studying in the whole Party and throughout the country.

However, we cannot by any means rest content with this. Present developments call for a larger number of competent cadres with high political and practical qualifications. To train more cadres prepared to meet the needs of the situation which is now developing, it is necessary to improve the role of the Party cadre-training centres.

The Party cadre-training institutions are entrusted with the important and glorious mission of raising cadres, the hard core of our Party and the leading personnel of the revolution. It will only be possible to raise more cadres who are politically and practically competent when these institutions give their students a proper education. These institutions should improve their instructional and educational work so that their students are deeply imbued with our Party’s revolutionary ideas and theories and, at the same time, acquire its revolutionary methods and popular style of work. They will then be competent workers, capable of performing all their revolutionary tasks admirably in any difficult and complex situation.
1. ON ARMING OFFICIALS WITH OUR PARTY’S REVOLUTIONARY METHODS AND POPULAR STYLE OF WORK

As you all know, a working-class party is a political organization comprising large numbers of people who adhere to Marxist-Leninist ideas; it is a revolutionary General Staff which organizes and leads the broad masses of the people in the revolutionary struggle and in construction. Therefore, people are the object of the work of Party organizations, and work with people is the basic element in Party activities. In other words, work with cadres, Party members and non-Party people is the basic element in Party activities.

Success in Party work depends largely on how Party officials run Party organizations and how they work with people. Party work can only be successful when the officials directly responsible for this use the correct methods and style of work. So the mastering of the correct methods and style of work by Party officials is of major importance in the building of a Marxist-Leninist party. The matter of improving the methods and style of work in our Party has assumed particular importance because at one time wicked men infected with flunkeyism occupied leading Party positions and spread bureaucratic methods of work throughout the whole Party.

When the Party was founded immediately after liberation, one complex and difficult task followed another, concerning the establishment of organs of power and the building of the army. This prevented us from devoting enough time to inner-Party work. So for some time we entrusted the inner-Party work to those who came from a certain large country in the belief that that country must have accumulated a wealth of experience in Party organizational work. We did so because we thought that those people were proficient in the
methods of Party work since they had lived in a country with a long
history of revolution. But instead of carrying out inner-Party work
properly, they spread bureaucratic methods fundamentally
incompatible with revolutionary work methods.

The outdated methods of work introduced by the flunkeyists greatly
impeded the advancement of our Party work and their evil
consequences manifested themselves even more seriously in the
postwar years. That is why after the Third Party Congress we made a
great effort to eliminate the outmoded work methods which had spread
throughout the Party, and to rectify the officials’ methods and style of
work.

On numerous occasions, we have emphasized the need to eradicate
the outdated methods and style of work and to introduce revolutionary
methods and a popular style of work among the officials. We did not
confine ourselves to making speeches on this matter; we found a
solution to this in the course of our guidance to the Party organizations
of Kangso County and Chongsan-ri, and applied it throughout the
whole Party. Our Party documents give a detailed account of all
matters ranging from the methods of Party work to the officials’ style
of work.

However, our officials still cling to the old methods and style of
work. It is true that compared with the past, their methods and style of
work have greatly improved. But some shortcomings are still apparent
among our Party officials, such as doing Party work in an
administrative manner, monopolizing all work, wielding Party
authority, behaving bureaucratically and just allocating work without
checking whether it has been done.

We have recently been reflecting on the reason why we should have
to keep on discussing the officials’ methods and style of work in spite
of the fact that our Party has a revolutionary history going back 40 or
50 years and that ten years have passed since the Chongsanri work
method was evolved. We consider that although the cause of the slow
improvement in their methods and style of work partly rests with the
officials themselves, its main cause is the failure of the cadre-training
institutions at all levels to give a sound education.

Today most of our Party officials are graduates of Party schools. The personal histories of those cadres whose appointment is subject to approval by the Party Central Committee show that they completed the three-year course of the Central Party School or of the Marxist-Leninist School. The Party Central Committee approves their appointment as cadres, believing that they have firmly established the monolithic ideological system of the Party, and that they have assimilated Marxist-Leninist theories and the correct methods of Party work because they have studied in the Central Party School or the Marxist-Leninist School for three complete years. But after leaving these schools, some of them often act contrary to the Party’s intentions. Some cannot even define the social status of a man correctly. This proves that the Party cadre-training institutions have given them only academic knowledge and neglected the practical knowledge and methods for Party work.

Of course, it is important to teach officials general theory, too. But if they are taught in a purely academic way divorced from concrete revolutionary practice, they will be unable to get to grips with the realities to do Party work properly. Accordingly, the theory they have learned will prove useless. While teaching general theory to the students, therefore, the Party cadre-training institutions must make a great effort to improve their methods and style of work.

In order to improve Party officials’ methods and style of work, it is necessary, first of all, to discard administrative methods of work.

A number of Party officials now use administrative methods instead of a Party style of work. So some time ago we told the departmental heads of the Party Central Committee to reject the administrative methods in Party work. Nevertheless, according to recent information, some officials appear to have a mistaken idea about administrative methods, regarding this as the taking of administrative work wholly upon themselves.

As we have already pointed out, by taking administrative work upon themselves we mean that Party officials push out the
administrative and economic workers and take their place. This is not what the administrative method is. In origin, the word *haengjong* (administration—Tr.) means governing by law. When we refer to administrative methods of work, we mean working by issuing orders and instructions and receiving reports and statistics.

Administrative methods have nothing in common with the Party’s method of work, they are alien to it.

As I have already mentioned, the Party is not an individual but a political organization uniting a large number of people. If the Party were an individual, the problem of work methods, whether administrative or otherwise, would not have arisen. An individual can do what he likes, whether he reads books or works. But since the Party is a political organization composed of a great many people, the need for a method of work with people arises. And if work with people is carried on by administrative methods, it will be impossible to inspire the people to action and, accordingly, to succeed in undertaking revolutionary tasks.

Administrative methods are only used by state organs to govern people by law. The state organs may work by preparing and issuing orders and directives. If the Cabinet, for instance, issues orders as to when to start ploughing and when to complete it, when and how to change working hours, or what districts are to be declared “prohibited” zones, then these orders have to be carried into effect accordingly.

The Chongsanri work method and Taean work system created by our Party demand that the administrative and economic organs should also avoid working simply in an administrative way and should conduct political work beforehand so as to inspire people to act with enthusiasm. How much more important it is that in doing Party work, the main content of which is work with people, we should avoid administrative methods, that is, issuing orders and directives.

Some Party organizations and officials still work in the old style: they prepare and issue decisions or directives to the lower units, insist on their execution and demand unnecessary reports and statistics from their subordinates. This is not how Party work should be carried out.
As far as statistics are concerned, the Minister of Commerce, for instance, may require these in order to ascertain the quantity of goods the stores have sold. But statistics of this kind are utterly useless for those who are engaged in Party work.

Party officials would be unable to understand the state of affairs in the lower units if they were merely to issue directives and demand statistics on what dues the Party members have paid and how many times they have attended Party and study meetings. Still less would they be able to know what the people are thinking. Take this example. If you only receive information to the effect that a certain Party member obediently carries out his assigned task without grumbling, attends each and every Party meeting, and pays his Party dues on time, you would not be able to tell whether he is really equipped with the Party’s monolithic ideological system and whether he thinks and acts as the Party Central Committee does.

Party work has now become very complex because Party officials occupy themselves with useless paper work instead of working amongst the people. That is why Party organs, which have a large staff, ask for more personnel when a new task is assigned. This applies to the Party Central Committee as well as to the provincial and county Party committees.

The administrative method in Party work is also evident in the conduct of Party meetings. Some Party officials believe that a Party meeting is successful when a report and speeches written in advance by other people have been read out and a resolution adopted. They are wrong. What counts at a Party meeting is not formality but substantial discussion of the particular problems and correct decisions on ways of implementing Party policy. For a Party meeting to be fruitful, thorough preparations must be made beforehand and the report and speeches should be prepared by the speakers themselves. If the report and speeches are prepared by others than those who deliver them, the Party meeting cannot discuss correct ways and means of carrying out Party policy.

The administrative method of work is also shown in the ideological
work of the Party. When a new Party document is published or a new Party policy is formulated, Party organizations and officials must inform their members and the working people about it by means of repeated and effective studies until they are able to understand its basic meaning and thus find the means of carrying it out. But they have so far failed in this. When a new Party policy is put forward, they merely call people together and read it out or give an explanatory lecture. If you ask the Party members and the working people to carry out Party policy without having made them understand it clearly, this is the same thing as the administrative bodies’ method of ordering people about.

Since Party policies are propagated in such an administrative way, the cadres themselves, let alone the Party members and the working people, do not understand them thoroughly.

The administrative method of work also finds expression in the implementation of Party policies. When a Party policy is set forth, some Party officials do not more than give instructions several times to their subordinates to carry it out, and after some time they stop caring whether the policy in question has been carried out or not.

Let me give you some examples.

A long time ago, the Party set the task of initiating a strong mass movement to plant oil-bearing forests and trees. Then there was a great deal of talk for a time about tree planting, but it has now died down.

River improvement projects have also been left uncompleted. A few years ago Pyongyang and South Phyongan Province suffered from floods. For a year or two after that, they carried out river improvement work to some extent, but it has all been dropped just because there have been no floods in recent years. The reason for this is that the senior officials here merely gave instructions and urged people on once or twice, but they did not organize and mobilize the officials concerned and the working people to carry the project through.

As you see, because the Party organizations and officials conduct their work by administrative methods inner-Party work is poorly organized. Party leadership of economic activities is not fully ensured, and Party policies are not carried out satisfactorily.
We must see to it that all the Party organizations and officials do away with the administrative methods of work as soon as possible, and turn Party work wholly into work with people.

In the work with people the main stress should be placed on explanation and persuasion.

When the Party’s line and policies are laid down, Party organizations and officials must begin by thoroughly inculcating them in the minds of Party members. Various forms and methods are available to propagate the Party’s line and policies. They include individual talks, intensive studies, short courses and discussions of the matters concerned at meetings. The Party’s line and policies can only be brought home to them by properly combining various forms and methods to suit the specific qualities of the Party members being dealt with.

After informing Party members of the Party’s line and policies, their comprehension of them must be checked through practical work. Advanced as science is now, no gadget can detect people’s thoughts. Practical work is the only means of verification. We can only judge whether or not Party members have a clear understanding of the substance of Party policies and whether or not they correctly carry them out, through practical work. When they reveal shortcomings in the course of executing Party policies, Party officials must clarify the policies to them again and give them detailed explanation on how to rectify their shortcomings.

Whenever we advance a new Party policy, we give an adequate exposition of it, first of all, to members of the Political Committee, and to secretaries and departmental heads of the Party Central Committee. Then if they make a mistake in the course of their work regarding the new policy, we help them to rectify it.

Party organizations and officials must continue the method of work whereby one person educates and rouses another ten to activity, ten people—a hundred, a hundred people—a thousand, thus educating and rousing all the Party members and the working people into activity. Party organizations must begin by arming Party members with our
Party policy and, through them, explain and propagate it to the working masses. Only by doing this can we make all Party members and the working people understand our Party policy correctly and organize and mobilize them to implement it.

As for exact ways of conducting the work with people, I spoke about this to the heads of the organizational and personnel administration departments of the provincial Party committees in 1968 and also on many other occasions. So I will not deal with it at length today.

Now, in order to improve their method and style of work, Party officials must rid themselves of the mistaken tendency to take all work exclusively upon themselves.

By its very nature, the revolution is for the people and by the people. It is impossible, and also impermissible, for the Party to have a monopoly of all the complex and difficult revolutionary tasks without organizing and mobilizing the broad masses.

The Party is the highest of all forms of the working people’s organizations and it is their political leader. The Party organizations must therefore guide state organs and the working people’s organizations correctly in carrying out revolutionary tasks.

Depending on the prevailing situation and on the importance of the revolutionary tasks in question, Party organizations may stand either in the van or at the rear of the working people’s organizations. But they should never take upon themselves the tasks of the working people’s organizations; they must only give correct political guidance to these organizations. By conducting work with people, political work, Party organizations and officials must stimulate the mass organizations to greater activity and, through them, rally the masses around the Party and mobilize them to carry out Party policies.

We have more than once emphasized the need for Party organizations and officials to use this method of work.

In spite of this, some Party organizations and officials still take all activities into their own hands, instead of mobilizing the working people’s organizations as well as the administrative, economic and cultural organizations.
This is particularly true of the officials of the Party’s information and publicity departments. Instead of guiding the work of the press organs, they undertake the whole of it; they even go so far as taking the education of non-Party people upon themselves. Of course, the Party’s information and publicity departments are directly responsible for the education of Party members, but they should have the working people’s organizations conduct the education of non-Party people. It is not even an easy task for the personnel of the Party’s information and publicity departments to educate just Party members properly. And yet they undertake the education of all non-Party people as well. The result is that they fail to get anywhere.

Because Party organizations and officials now monopolize all work, the trade unions, the Union of Agricultural Working People, the League of Socialist Working Youth and the Women’s Union are relegated to the background, and even government bodies are prevented from fulfilling their duties properly. That is why people bring trilling practical problems to Party organizations, although their solutions lie within the competence of government organs, and Party officials fail to pay sufficient attention to inner-Party work because they are bogged down in administrative work while dealing with such problems.

The main reason why Party officials do not cast away the bad habit of monopolizing all work is that they entertain an erroneous view about the administrative and economic organs and, in particular, about the working people’s organizations.

Some Party officials regard the mass organizations as something unnecessary like a “sixth” finger on a person’s hand. That is quite wrong. If they are really so superfluous, why have we founded the trade unions, the Union of Agricultural Working People, the League of Socialist Working Youth and the Women’s Union? These organizations are in no way superfluous. They are not like the useless “sixth” finger on a hand, but are indispensable like the normal five fingers, each of which has a particular function. If the hand of a man is to perform its role adequately, it must have five working fingers.
Similarly, if Party organizations are to fulfil their revolutionary tasks satisfactorily, all the working people’s organizations must operate normally.

First of all, the instructors of the Party cadre-training institutions must see this clearly and give their students a correct understanding of the working people’s organizations. In addition, the Party cadre-training institutions must teach their students how to stimulate the administrative and economic organs as well as the working people’s organizations.

The next important factor in improving the methods and style of work of Party officials is to stop spreading out work and to make it a rule to review the completion of the assigned tasks correctly and promptly.

At present one of the main defects in the work methods of our officials is too wide a dispersion of work and inadequate checking of the completion of the assigned tasks. Such shortcomings are largely due to the fact that they work in an administrative way and take all activities into their own hands. If Party work, work with people, is done in an administrative way by issuing commands and directives, it will be impossible to organize and mobilize people properly for the revolutionary tasks which have been set, and to understand the actual conditions which exist in the lower units correctly. Moreover, if all undertakings are monopolized by one person, none of them can be carried out properly and many things will slip through his fingers. So, it will ultimately be impossible to review the implementation of the assigned tasks correctly.

I have heard that nowadays many Party cadres have their reports and concluding speeches written by others. This is not accidental. These officials have a vague idea of both Party and economic activities because, instead of working in the Party way, they work in an administrative manner and only distribute tasks without duly checking on them. As a result, they have no choice but to read out speeches prepared by other people.

We must ensure that officials thoroughly establish a revolutionary
habit whereby they conduct work by means of finishing one thing at a time without distributing it and promptly and correctly review the implementation of the given assignments. The institutions training Party cadres will have to pay particular attention to this question in their work.

In order to improve the Party officials’ method and style of work, the abuse of Party authority, bureaucratism and subjectivism must be completely eliminated.

As was pointed out in the report to the Fifth Party Congress, the abuse of Party authority, bureaucratism and subjectivism should be most carefully guarded against in a ruling party’s method and style of work. If a party in power does not have confidence in the strength of the masses and abuses its authority, working in a bureaucratic and subjective manner, it will not maintain correct guidance of the revolution and construction, and will fail to protect the revolutionary gains which have already been achieved.

Ever since its inception, our Party has advanced the Juche-motivated line and policies suited to our specific conditions in all fields of the revolution and construction and has energetically mobilized the people’s inexhaustible creative force for their implementation. As a result, our Party has, in a short time, changed our once backward country into a socialist industrial state with a solid independent national economy and powerful potential for the country’s defence.

Although our people are not living in luxury, they are now happy and free from worries about clothing, food, medical care and the education of their children.

Further, we are now fully able to repulse any enemy invasion by ourselves and staunchly defend the socialist gains and the people’s security.

In the past, our people, their country usurped by the Japanese imperialist aggressors because of their weak defence potential, were forced to live as slaves for 36 long years under Japanese imperialists’ colonial rule. During the Ri dynasty our country’s feudal ruling circles
were not in the least concerned about the security of the nation and people. They wasted their time wearing horse-hair hats and riding donkeys, and reciting poems about the beauty of the landscape. As a result, our forefathers barely managed to make matchlocks while the Japanese imperialists were carrying five-round repeating rifles. Thus, they were unable to stop the Japanese imperialists’ invasion and in the end lost their country to them.

In order to avoid a repetition of such a bitter history, we put forward the new policy of simultaneously carrying on economic and defence construction to cope with the intensified military provocations of US imperialism and its stooges. We extended the Seven-Year Plan for another three years and allocated more funds for the strengthening of the nation’s defence capacity. This enables us to make various kinds of modern weapons and military supplies for ourselves.

The signal victories our Party has so far won in the revolution and construction are ascribable to the fact that the Party not only set forth a correct revolutionary line and correct policies at each stage of the revolution, but always went amongst the masses and rallied them closely around itself, organizing and arousing the creative enthusiasm and activity of the broad masses of the working people.

In order to consolidate the successes already attained and score greater achievements in the future, it is essential to keep applying our Party’s method of leadership based on a revolutionary mass line whose validity has been irrefutably proved in practice. To do so, officials must stop abusing Party authority and indulging in bureaucracy and subjectivism.

We have always stressed the need for doing away with the abuse of Party authority, bureaucracy and subjectivism amongst the officials. But some still resort to such practices; they regard themselves as special beings, pay no heed to the voices of the masses, and work bureaucratically, issuing commands to their subordinates. If officials do their work in such a bureaucratic manner, their subordinates will fear and flatter them, finding it hard to tell them the truth.

Some senior officials, I have heard, take no steps themselves to
overcome obstacles in their particular fields, but if a subordinate then takes his request to a still higher level and it is granted, they hurl abuse at him and ill-treat him.

We learned through our on-the-spot guidance that because our officials work in this bureaucratic way, many people, on studying the faces and moods of their superiors, make false reports to please them or remain silent instead of suggesting problems to be solved, for fear of getting it in the neck later.

In addition to the bureaucratic style of work, some officials have a mistaken attitude towards criticism. They claim that it is improper to take revenge for being criticized but when they themselves are criticized, they gradually shun those who have criticized them or transfer them to other places, and torment them by various covert means.

Urged to discard the bureaucratic method of work and go among the masses, some officials only wander about like sightseers, and this is also wrong, because, in this way, they cannot hear the real opinions of the masses.

According to recent information, the secretary of a certain factory Party committee only drives about in his car. When he meets his subordinates and workers while driving, he stops his car and asks them a few questions and then drives on. That is how, it is said, he makes a round of the factory premises once every day. When we were giving guidance to Chongsan-ri before, we dubbed the cooperative farm chairman a “motorcycle chairman” because he simply used to ride around unnecessarily. If you have seen the feature film *When We Pick Apples*, you probably know that the fruit-growing team head in the film is called a “bicycle workteam head” because he only rides about on a bicycle. Perhaps we should characterize the method of work of the Party secretary of the factory as a “motorcar-style work method”.

If a cadre drives around in a car, he will only waste petrol, and will fail to attain any success in his work. Senior officials, notably Party workers, should not go about as if they are sightseeing, but should go right amongst the masses and discuss matters with them. Only by
doing this can they learn about actual conditions at the lower levels and fully understand what the people are thinking.

In order to get rid of the abuse of Party authority, bureaucracy and subjectivism, the Party cadre-training institutions should educate the students properly. They must bring it home to them that to perform their duties as servants of the people adequately, they must treat the masses of the people with motherly care, mix with them constantly so as to listen to their opinions, and always be modest and simple in their work and daily life.

2. ON TEACHING OFFICIALS THE SPECIFIC EXPERIENCE OF THE REVOLUTION AND CONSTRUCTION IN OUR COUNTRY

One of the main shortcomings in the instruction and education at the Party schools is that they do not give their students a detailed account of the strategy and tactics we advanced at each stage of the revolution and construction, and of the rich experience our Party has accumulated.

Formerly, the Party schools failed to give a Juche-oriented education and, copying foreign patterns, conducted a kind of patchwork education in which distinctions between socialism and capitalism were not brought out. Such shortcomings have now been rectified to a large extent. But the lectures at the Party schools still fail to deal with specific questions comprehensively and in depth. Although students are taught the revolutionary traditions of our Party in some detail, they are not presented with specific material on the building of the Party, the state, the army and the working people’s organizations. In particular, the Party schools fail to explain to the students in detail against whom the struggle was waged in the rural areas, who were isolated, who were won over, who were designated as
pro-Japanese elements and how the struggle against the forces of Japanese imperialism that remained was carried out in the period of the democratic revolution, and in the period of the socialist revolution, what the driving force of the revolution was, who the enemies were and how the fight was launched against them. They teach no more than general principles. Consequently, officials who graduate from the Party schools are falling into this or that deviation when carrying out their work.

The majority of cadres who participated in the democratic revolution immediately after liberation have aged, and many young people have been appointed as cadres. Although these young people are Party school graduates, they have neither a detailed knowledge of the situation at the time of the democratic revolution, nor a clear idea of our Party’s class policy. That is why some officials define as pro-Japanese elements even those who had served with Japanese imperialist establishments as low-ranking clerks or those who had been employed for some time as servants of Japanese imperialists. At times they also make mistakes in defining the social status of landlords and rich farmers. Since they define the social status of people incorrectly and give the cold shoulder to those who could be readily won over, they make them hesitate and prevent them from playing an active part in the revolution and construction.

There are many former soldiers of the puppet army amongst the south Korean people, and large numbers of young people are still serving in the army. And a great many people are working in the puppet government organs. If our officials were to continue their work in south Korea as they work today, they would not win these people over.

Party schools must give their students detailed instruction about the experience accumulated by our Party in the course of revolution and construction. Only by doing this can they conduct active organizational work in any complex circumstances to rally the broad masses closely around the Party and mobilize them for revolutionary struggle and construction efficiently. And when the country is
reunified some day, they will be able to organize the Party, government bodies and social organizations, and unite the people of all walks of life around the Party in the southern half of the country.

The Party schools should compile good textbooks on the basis of profound study of the Party’s policies and, at the same time, expound to the students our Party’s strategic and tactical lines at each stage of the revolution and construction, and train them to implement Party policies skilfully.

Party schools should competently teach their students the lines and policies we have laid down at each stage of the revolution ever since it began. In particular, they must pass on to them the rich experience of struggle accumulated in the course of the democratic and socialist revolutions after liberation.

In deciding who were the enemies of the revolution immediately after liberation, we did not regard as pro-Japanese elements all those Koreans who had served in Japanese imperialist institutions. At that time our Party clearly defined who the pro-Japanese elements were. We classified as pro-Japanese elements all Koreans who had been councillors and advisers of the Central Council of the Government-General of Korea, all Koreans who had been on the Provincial and the City Councils, all Koreans who had held responsible posts in the Government-General of Korea and the provincial administration offices, all Koreans who had served as policemen and heads of public prosecutors’ offices and courts of law in the period of Japanese imperialist rule, those who had voluntarily offered munitions and other supplies to the Japanese state with the aim of aiding it, and those who had actively assisted Japanese imperialism as leaders of pro-Japanese organizations.

In other words, we defined as pro-Japanese elements the faithful stooges of Japanese imperialism who had participated directly in suppressing the Korean revolution or actively helped to carry out the Japanese imperialists’ reactionary policies; but we did not classify as such those who had served as sub-county clerks or those who had been in the lower echelons of officialdom in the Government-General,
Before liberation the Koreans had to earn a living wherever they could. Since our country was a colony of Japanese imperialism, our intellectuals could only find employment in Japanese imperialist establishments. So they had no choice but to work as sub-county clerks or employees in such Japanese imperialist institutions as the Government-General and the provincial and county administration offices. It is wrong, therefore, for some of our officials to classify as pro-Japanese elements all those who served as minor officials in these establishments.

Some officials brand former public scribes as exploiters. This work consists of selling one’s clerical knowledge. It is nonexistent in the developed countries; it is a phenomenon which occurred only in countries where illiteracy was widespread.

Before liberation our population was largely illiterate due to Japanese imperialism’s colonial policy of enslavement. Many people were even unable to write a letter or a note of complaint for themselves. Therefore, educated men, or public scribes, wrote letters or notes for them for no more than a small sum of money. They did not exploit others much and should not be regarded as bad people.

Today many of our officials lack a sound knowledge of the policy our Party put forward and of how the class struggle was carried on during agrarian reform.

When carrying out agrarian reform, we made a concrete analysis of rural conditions and class relationships in our country and, on this basis, defined as landlords those who owned more than five hectares of land, and we confiscated their estates. In those days our Party fought the landlords by firmly uniting the hired and poor peasants and allying itself with the middle peasants. As for the rich farmers, it pursued the policy of leaving them alone so as to make as small a number of enemies as possible. The middle peasants came out in support of agrarian reform, which aimed at dispossessing the landlords of their estates and at distributing them to the landless peasants. The rich farmers did not turn against us because they were left alone. They were
not our enemies in the democratic revolution.

Some who had been well-off gave up their land voluntarily after liberation. They did so of their own accord, saying that they felt qualms of conscience about exploiting their own people through the medium of the land. We made sure that such progressive people were clearly distinguished from the vicious landlords and rich farmers.

Our Party documents give a full description of the pro-Japanese elements, of the landlords and rich peasants, and show how we fought against the reactionary forces immediately after liberation.

The textbooks used in Party schools should be prepared well on the basis of a profound study of Party documents and various other materials. If it is impossible to include every detail in the textbooks, then separate reference books will have to be published. This will enable the students to be presented with realistic material and given detailed instruction about our Party’s line and policies in the period of the democratic revolution, and about the successes and experience attained in the course of implementing them.

The experience of the socialist revolution should also be adequately passed on to the students of Party schools.

In the period of socialist revolution we completed the socialist transformation of production relations within a short time without much trouble. Foreigners who visit our country ask us how it was possible to carry through the socialist revolution so smoothly and so quickly in Korea, and say that stories about the socialist revolutions in some other countries are horrendous.

It was because our Party’s line and policy on the socialist transformation of production relations were correct that our socialist revolution was completed smoothly and quickly.

As everyone knows, in April 1955 we published the theses for accelerating the socialist revolution on a full national scale. At that time, the flunkeyists and great-power chauvinists claimed that even in the European countries with their high level of industry, the agricultural cooperative movement had not become widespread, and asked how we could carry out agricultural cooperation when our level
of industrialization was low and everything was in short supply because of the destruction caused by the war. Until then people believed that agricultural cooperatives could only be formed when the material and technical foundations, capable of giving powerful assistance to the rural technical revolution, had been laid after the country’s industrialization. But our Party, basing itself on a scientific analysis of the class relations and specific conditions of our country in the postwar days, drew the final conclusion that the formation of cooperatives was well within our power and had to be achieved without fail; and it put forward the policy of realizing, as soon as possible, the socialist transformation of production relations.

As you know full well, the postwar situation in our country areas was very bad. The material foundations of the rural economy had been demolished and the peasants’ living standards had fallen drastically because of the war. Under these conditions, if the individual peasant farming had not been converted into cooperative farming, it would have been impossible to restore the devastated agricultural productive forces quickly and to solve the problem of the peasants’ impoverished life.

Because of the war, even the rich farmers were on the verge of bankruptcy and their strength was quite insignificant. They lost their houses, farm implements and draught animals during the bombing by the US imperialists, and were left with little property. Consequently, they were unable to hire farm hands. Although the former rich farmers survived, their economic base was practically nonexistent. Still more difficult was the position of the middle and well-to-do middle peasants.

Our Party decided that that was the most appropriate time for forming cooperatives, when the peasants found it impossible to farm without pooling their forces because everything had been wrecked by the US imperialists’ bombing, and when the rich and middle peasants were almost bankrupt. It was much more expedient to persuade the rich and middle peasants to join the cooperatives voluntarily by organizing them with poor peasants and demonstrating their superiority at a time when they were on the verge of ruin, rather than put off their admission
to cooperatives until they regained their standing. With this in mind, our Party followed a policy of organizing the poor peasants into cooperatives and giving them state assistance to enable them to live more abundantly than the individual peasants, thereby persuading the rich and middle peasants to join the cooperatives of their own free will.

After the formation of cooperatives with poor peasants we took different state measures to strengthen their economic basis. The state supplied more fertilizers at lower prices to the cooperatives than to individual peasants, and levied less tax in kind on the cooperatives than on private peasants. The state granted long-term loans to cooperative farmers to enable them to buy farm implements, draught cattle, and so on, while it only gave short-term loans to private peasants. The state carried out irrigation projects and gave priority to the cooperatives in the use of water, and charged their members lower water rates than it charged private peasants.

Thanks to such state measures, the cooperative farmers’ living standards rose quickly. But it was impossible for the private peasants to improve their livelihood as quickly as the cooperative farmers because they could not obtain long-term loans and had to pay more for fertilizers and a higher tax in kind than the cooperative farmers. As the advantages of the cooperative economy became apparent, the private peasants joined the cooperatives voluntarily, for they realized that it would be better to engage in cooperative farming and enjoy a great many state benefits than to farm on their own land without assistance.

As in the period of agrarian reform, the middle peasants were not the targets of our struggle during the stage of the socialist revolution either. Since they had lost their homes, farm implements and draught animals in the war, their situation was virtually little better than that of the poor peasants. That is why they did not oppose our Party’s cooperative policy and a great number of them, conscious of the superiority of a cooperative economy, joined the cooperatives voluntarily. Needless to say, some of the middle peasants hesitated to join and even opposed the formation of cooperatives, but these were isolated cases. Nevertheless, the novel *Spring in Sokgaeul* describes as
a typical phenomenon a farmer who was given land and became a middle peasant after liberation, opposing the formation of cooperatives. So we criticized the novel.

At the stage of the socialist revolution our Party also induced the rich farmers to join cooperatives of their own accord. Some countries dispossessed their rich farmers during the socialist revolution. But instead of doing this, we followed the policy of restricting and gradually drawing them into cooperatives to reform them along socialist lines.

It is true that the rich farmers were the main target of our conflict at the stage of the socialist revolution. But in fact the struggle against the rich farmers in our country did not pose a big problem. If they had owned many draught animals and wide tracts of land and kept many hired hands, harshly exploiting the peasants, the struggle against them might have been much more acute. But our rich farmers had been mostly ruined by the bombing of the US imperialist rogues, and so had to rely on state assistance in operating their economy. Thus, the socialist revolution in our country knew no counter-revolutionary actions worth mentioning, on the part of the rich farmers and there was no breakup of cooperatives because of them. At worst, their actions consisted of abuse and slander. In fact, some vicious rich farmers plotted against the cooperatives but they failed to damage our revolution seriously.

Thus the struggle against the rich farmers in our country presented no great problem in the period of the socialist revolution. This notwithstanding, some officials think that the rich farmers behaved very viciously, and regard them as terrible ogres.

Nor did private merchants and manufacturers present any great problems during the socialist revolution. Small and weak from the outset, they had mostly gone bankrupt as a result of the US imperialists’ bombings. Many entrepreneurs and merchants were reduced to the status of handicraftsmen and petty tradesmen. Immediately after the armistice, they found themselves incapable of running their business and improving their living conditions without
state assistance or pooling their efforts and funds.

This being the case, our Party adopted the policy of gradually transforming the private merchants and manufacturers on socialist lines by drawing them into various forms of cooperatives. Because this step accorded with their interests, they did not turn against us and almost all of them promptly accepted our Party’s policy. Consequently the socialist reorganization of private trade and industry in our country was carried out comparatively smoothly and in a short period after the war.

As you can see, our socialist revolution differed in many ways from that in other countries and it was completed with great success within a short period.

In future, the Party cadre-training institutions must acquaint the students well with our Party’s original policies in the period of the socialist revolution and with our specific experiences in this revolution.

In conclusion, I should like to make some remarks on specific problems.

We have to intensify the anti-revisionist education of officials.

Crippled by the principled struggle of our Party and other revolutionary parties of the world, modern revisionism is already on the decline. However, it still remains a big danger to the international communist movement and manifests itself in various subtle forms. Therefore, unless our officials have a correct idea of revisionism, they might unwittingly be infected by it. What is more, because many people in some of the countries with which we are in contact adhere to revisionism, it is liable to find its way into our country if the anti-revisionist education is not thoroughly carried out amongst our cadres and the working people.

The Party cadre-training institutions and the social science institutes should make a correct theoretical analysis of the reactionary nature and harmful effect of revisionism and explain them to the cadres and students. This is essential in helping our officials to fight resolutely against revisionism without being infected by it.
In addition, the Party schools must cultivate in the officials the ability to analyse, judge and deal with international affairs from our Party’s Juche standpoint.

Today the general international situation is very complex and complicated. So we must analyse and assess international affairs carefully from the Juche standpoint and deal with them correctly in the interests of our revolution. If we judge and deal with them carelessly without any political consideration, we may commit serious political mistakes in foreign affairs.

When Nixon’s plan to visit China was announced last July, opinions were divided in many countries. Some capitalist countries hailed his visit while some socialist countries criticized China. At the time, however, we carefully studied and judged this matter from the Juche standpoint, and concluded that Nixon was coming to China not as a victor but as a defeated supplicant.

The US imperialists are now facing a grave political, economic and military crisis at home and abroad. Viewed in this light, Nixon’s visit is aimed at improving relations with China and relaxing tension temporarily so as to get a breathing space.

There is nothing strange in Nixon’s visit to China. The history of the world revolutionary struggle knows a number of instances where communists made temporary compromises with the enemy to turn the situation in favour of the revolution. After the triumph of the revolution, Soviet Russia concluded a peace treaty with the enemy in order to protect the country against a surprise attack. On the eve of World War II, the Soviet Union concluded a treaty of nonaggression with fascist Germany, and a neutrality pact with the Japanese imperialists. So there is no need to get nervous about Nixon’s Chinese visit or speak ill of China.

Of course, Nixon might visit China and conclude a neutrality or a nonaggression treaty with her, and then immediately start a war. Hitler concluded a nonaggression treaty with the Soviet Union and unleashed a war against it soon afterwards.

But the present international situation is different from that of
those days. At that time, fascist Germany was at the zenith of its power, but US imperialism today is on the decline. US imperialism received a severe blow in the Korean war and is again being mutilated in the Viet Nam war; it is now limping along with the aid of crutches. So there is no need to worry about Nixon’s visit to China. If the situation improves after his visit to China, we should use it for the benefit of the revolution, and if it deteriorates, we should be fully prepared to deal with it. This is all that there is to it. In the speech of August 6 we stressed the point that we must always be on the alert because the deeper into trouble the imperialists get, the more they cling to the double-dealing tactics of holding out an olive branch in one hand and brandishing a sword in the other.

The annals of the world revolutionary struggle know no instance in which communists relinquished their anti-imperialist stand or gave up the revolution simply because they concluded a treaty or held a dialogue with the imperialists. The Soviet Union continued the revolutionary struggle without giving up its anti-imperialist stand even though it had signed a nonaggression treaty with fascist Germany. In no circumstances will the Chinese Communist Party, which has fought for a long time against domestic reactionaries and imperialist aggressors, abandon the revolution or act against the interests of the socialist countries just because of Nixon’s visit.

Today’s developments clearly prove that our judgment was absolutely correct. In the future, too, we should assess international affairs from the Juche standpoint and deal with them in favour of our own revolution.

If we do so, we shall be able to find the means to check and frustrate the new invasion schemes of Japanese militarism, and find better ways to accomplish the south Korean revolution and the country’s independent, peaceful reunification. At present the south Korean puppet clique, scared by the powerful revolutionary forces in the northern half of Korea, are making loud noises about the “threat of aggression from the north” in their efforts to obtain a few dollars and weapons from the US imperialists, their masters. If we make a
scientific analysis of the prevailing situation at home and abroad and pursue a foreign policy in favour of our revolution from the Juche standpoint, we can create an international situation which helps the accomplishment of the cause of national reunification.

In future the Party cadre-training institutions must cultivate in the cadres and students the ability to analyse and judge the situation correctly from the Juche standpoint and deal with international issues in favour of our own revolution. Party schools must teach their students the history of the international working-class movement and the experiences of revolutionary struggles in many countries, and give them up-to-date information about changes in the international situation. To do this, the teachers themselves who train cadres must be sensitive to developments and be able to analyse and judge international issues correctly. From now onwards, the International Department of the Party Central Committee and the Ministry of Foreign Affairs must send their members to the Party cadre-training institutions frequently to give lectures on the situation.

I hope you will improve and strengthen instruction and education in the Party schools, and train a large number of competent personnel who are firmly armed with our Party’s Juche idea and with its revolutionary method and popular style of work.
Comrades,

I consider the report and the debate by many comrades at this Fifth Congress of the General Federation of Trade Unions of Korea to have been highly instructive and valuable. The report and debate fully convinced us once again that our working class has been built up with revolutionary ranks unboundedly faithful to the Party.

I am satisfied that our heroic working class has accomplished much in the revolutionary struggle and the work of construction, displaying boundless loyalty to the Party and a lofty revolutionary spirit. I value this highly.

The Party Central Committee and all the people firmly trust and have great expectations of the working class. Only when the working class, the leading class of the revolution, works well, is it possible to rebuild and develop our country quickly and hasten national reunification, the unanimous desire of our people.

I firmly believe that following this congress our working class, deeply conscious of its important mission, will work more actively and will assuredly meet the expectations of the Party and the people.

Taking advantage of this opportunity, I should like to talk briefly
about the character and tasks of the trade unions at the present stage.

Internationally speaking, the working-class movement has a long history of development. Ever since its emergence the working class has constantly fought against the oppression and exploitation of capital and for liberation from its yoke.

The history of the working-class movement in our country is not short. Our working-class movement started in the 1920s. At about this time our working class grew rapidly and began its active struggle; from then onwards the national-liberation movement in our country developed under the leadership of the working class.

At a time when we were deprived of our country and all our people were groaning under Japanese imperialism’s colonial rule, the Korean working class was faced with the task of achieving national liberation by crushing Japanese imperialism and of freeing itself from capital’s exploitation. In its early days, however, our working-class movement could not develop greatly; being weak and having neither a leader capable of guiding the struggle along the right path nor a revolutionary Marxist-Leninist party, it was torn by factions.

Only in the early 1930s as a Marxist-Leninist leadership and a correct line of struggle emerged, did our working-class movement enter a new phase of development. From this time onward the Korean working class fought more dynamically in various ways against the Japanese imperialist aggressors and capitalists. In particular, the awakened workers, weapons in hand, fought bravely in the sacred anti-Japanese armed struggle to liberate the country. Through a long-drawn heroic struggle, the anti-Japanese armed ranks centring around the working class defeated the Japanese imperialist aggressors and accomplished the historic task of national liberation, opening up before our people a bright prospect of building a new society.

After liberation, a people’s government was established in the northern half of our country and the workers and other working people became the masters of the country. Under these circumstances the fighting tasks of the working class were fundamentally different from those before liberation. So were the character and tasks of the trade
unions, the mass organizations of the working class.

However, the factionalists and local separatists infected with dogmatism failed to see the changed situation and argued that even in the position where the working class was in power, the trade unions must fight the government just as in a capitalist society; they attempted to oppose the working class to the people’s power and conspired to lead the working-class movement in the wrong direction. Our Party quickly delivered a crushing blow to this scheme of the factionalists and clarified the trade unions’ character and tasks under the people’s government.

The trade unions’ main task at the stage of democratic revolution was that of protecting the people’s government, actively supporting all the policies mapped out by the working-class party and people’s government and organizing and mobilizing the working class to work hard for their implementation. At the same time, the trade unions, assisting the people’s government, performed a supervisory function, making sure that the factories and enterprises guaranteed the factory and office workers the vital rights and working conditions as provided for by the state.

Following liberation our people’s government allowed the national capitalists to carry on limited business activity, because it was a government which relied on a united front of broad democratic forces based on the worker-peasant alliance led by the working class. This being the case, it was necessary for the masses to supervise the private enterprises to ensure that the workers and office employees were guaranteed their democratic rights and working conditions and that the private entrepreneurs did not exploit their employees at will. Therefore, our Party saw to it that the trade unions made collective contracts with the entrepreneurs and exercised supervision over their correct implementation of the stipulations of the Labour Law such as on the eight-hour day, labour protection and social insurance.

Another reason for the trade unions supervising the management of the enterprises was that the workers had no experience in running the factories and enterprises. As a result of the enforcement of the Law on
Nationalization of Industries the factories, mines, railways and other major industries formerly owned by Japanese imperialism, pro-Japanese elements and traitors to the nation came under the ownership of the state and the workers became their masters. However, because the workers had neither experience nor knowledge of economic management, the factories and enterprises were run by old technicians and experts as before. Therefore, the trade unions, the organizations of the workers, had to exercise supervision over the factories and enterprises in order to ensure that they were run as demanded by the Party and the Government.

After the socialist system was established and the Taean work system introduced, it was no longer necessary for the trade unions to supervise the management of the factories and enterprises and, accordingly, the character and tasks of the trade unions changed.

The successful socialist revolution brought about a great change in socio-economic relations in our country. All private enterprises were eliminated and the socialist sector of the economy reigned supreme; the factories and enterprises were run by the new technicians and experts coming from the working people. Particular mention should be made of the fact that with the establishment of the Taean work system, the one-man management by directors, the capitalist method of enterprise management, was replaced by the system of collective leadership by the Party committee. Now the factory Party committee collectively discusses and adopts decisions on all problems related to enterprise activity and supervises their implementation. The factory Party committee is not only composed largely of those with a working-class background but also of the active workers directly engaged in production. In this way the factory Party committee is directly linked with the masses of the workers and organizes and guides all work of enterprise management according to the collective will of the workers. In this situation supervision by the trade unions became totally superfluous.

Since the factory Party committee is the highest leadership body of the factory, the trade union supervision over enterprise management
runs counter to the organizational principle of the Marxist-Leninist party. The Marxist-Leninist party is the organized detachment of the progressive elements of the working class and is the highest form of organization of the working masses. The trade unions and all other mass organizations are under the Party’s leadership and must play an active part in carrying out its lines and policies. If the trade unions were to supervise enterprise management at the factory, which is directly led and supervised by the factory Party committee, it would, in the last analysis, be tantamount to controlling the Party’s activity, to placing the trade unions above the Party.

Therefore, our Party abolished the system of the trade unions making collective contracts with the factory management and their right to supervise the enterprise administration a long time ago. The trade unions have at the same time been converted from a semi-ideological educational, semi-administrative organization into a full-fledged ideological educational organization which educates the working class and the trade union members in a revolutionary way and rallies them closely around the Party, organizing and mobilizing them to implement the political and economic assignments given by the Party.

Our Party was quite justified in turning the trade unions into ideological educational organizations. This has been clearly proved by the life of our country.

Thanks to the trade unions’ increased educational role and to their intensified ideological education of the workers, our working class’s revolutionary zeal is now very high and, because of their heroic struggle, our nation’s economy is developing at a high rate every year. It is true that we have many difficulties in the building of the socialist economy. Because of the Fatherland Liberation War we are suffering from an acute shortage of manpower; and we are experiencing a strain on electricity because, due to the droughts over the last few years, our reservoirs do not contain enough water. However, these difficulties are just temporary and will be overcome before long. The manpower problem will be solved within a few years. If machines are built on a
large scale and the technical revolution is accelerated as proposed by the Party, this problem may be solved more rapidly. The problem of electricity will also be solved soon because we have already built large thermal power stations and are carrying out the construction of new power stations. Once these two problems are solved, our nation’s economy will develop far more rapidly.

There is also a possibility of raising the people’s standard of living considerably within the next few years. So far we have allocated a huge amount of money for building up the nation’s defences, and have not been able to make great efforts to improve the people’s living standards. However, the opportunities are now at hand for speeding up this task. If we build a few more synthetic fibre plants including an Orlon factory, the problem of clothing will be solved once and for all. As for the food problem, we do not import rice now; and we are planning to supply everyone with 100 grammes of fish daily from next year, although the population does not yet get enough fish. In addition, the newly built chicken plants are beginning to have an effect and large piggeries are being built. The grain needed for meat production will be produced in abundance through two crops with the help of the sprinkler irrigation system on dry fields.

Therefore, as far as socialist economic construction and the people’s living conditions are concerned, our general situation is highly favourable now.

In order to build socialism and communism successfully, it is necessary, as the revolution and construction develop in depth and scope, to strengthen the Party’s leadership and the dictatorship of the proletariat still further, and the trade unions and all other mass organizations must actively support the Party and the Government and unconditionally accept the Party lines and policies and carry them through. People still have some vestiges of old ideas. So, if the workers were allowed to act as they pleased, free from the Party’s leadership, liberalism and egoism would appear, causing the incursion of capitalist ideas from outside, thus destroying the revolution and construction.

In a socialist society the trade unions, as the Party’s transmission
belt, must vigorously organize and mobilize the working class for the struggle to occupy the ideological and material fortresses of communism. Therefore, they must, first of all, increase the ideological education of the working class. The trade unions’ main task in a socialist society is to strengthen ideological education and to working-classize and revolutionize all their members.

At present, some of our officials talk a great deal about working-classization and revolutionization but they have no clear idea what these are. What, then, are working-classization and revolutionization? In brief, working-classization means transforming non-working-class people in the pattern of the progressive working class; and revolutionization means teaching people to be ardent revolutionaries, to be true communists, equipped with a revolutionary world outlook.

Although the trade unions are working-class organizations, they must work to working-classize their members. Their members include not only the working class but also office workers, teachers, and many others who are engaged in other occupations. So the trade unions must strive to transform all non-working-class members in the pattern of the working class.

While working-classizing their members, the trade unions must wage a dynamic campaign to revolutionize and communize them.

At present some people claim that because the word revolution means the fight to crush the old social system, this word must not be used once the socialist system has been set up. This is a wrong interpretation of the term revolution and one which denies the necessity of continuing with revolution in a socialist society.

The work of rooting out the traces of outworn ideologies from the minds of people and arming them with communist ideology is a sharp class struggle between what is feudal and capitalistic and what is communistic—a revolution in the sphere of ideology. Therefore, in order to educate and reform people along communist lines, revolution must be carried on in the ideological sphere even after the establishment of the socialist system and a campaign must be
conducted to revolutionize and communize people. Only when the working people are not only working-classized but also revolutionized and communized, can they hold fast to revolutionary principles in any adversity and fight for the triumph of the communist cause. The trade union organizations should, therefore, strive to working-classize and revolutionize those who do not belong to the working class and revolutionize and communize those who have become workers.

The revolutionization and communization of our working class is a particularly urgent problem because of its characteristic features. Our working class is young. After liberation, particularly during the postwar period when industry developed at high speed, the ranks of the working class expanded quickly. As a result, they were joined by many people who had never been exploited or oppressed in the former society, and in particular, by many former peasants, small merchants and handicraftsmen. These people are now industrial workers, but they still retain selfishness and many other remnants of old ideologies. Hence the necessity to accelerate the ideological revolution so as to root out the remnants of old ideas from the minds of workers and arm them with a communist world outlook.

In working-classifying and revolutionizing trade union members, the most important aspect is firmly equipping them with our Party’s monolithic ideology, the Juche idea.

The Juche idea is Marxism-Leninism creatively applied to conditions in our country, and the most powerful weapon in carrying out our revolution and construction. When all the working people are closely armed with our Party’s revolutionary Juche idea, they can fight resolutely against flunkeyism, dogmatism, revisionism and all other evil ideas and forge ahead successfully with the revolutionary struggle and the work of construction.

Raising high the revolutionary banner of the Juche idea and establishing Juche completely in all spheres of politics, the economy, culture and military affairs, our Party has been able to defend the purity of Marxism-Leninism and consistently lead our revolution and construction to victory, even under the complicated circumstances
where the opportunist trends which have emerged in the international communist movement have obstructed the development of the revolutionary movement and the imperialists have been intensifying their ideological offensive against communism more than ever before.

The imperialists and international reaction took advantage of the crop failures in certain socialist countries to slander the socialist system; they alleged that cooperativization had ruined agriculture and that the agricultural problem could not be solved in a socialist society. At about this time our Party published the theses on the socialist rural question and developed agriculture rapidly, bringing a bumper crop every year. This fully demonstrated the superiority of the socialist agricultural system to the whole world and utterly smashed the imperialists’ reactionary ideological offensive.

In addition, when in certain countries the economy had come to a standstill instead of developing rapidly, some people attempted to justify this, by spreading the revisionist theory that the socialist economy could not develop indefinitely at a high rate. Our Party answered this with a new socialist economic theory. The Chollima Movement and the great revolutionary upswing in the construction of socialism initiated by the heroic Korean working class under our Party’s leadership, and the whole course of the development of our national economy proved that the revisionist theory which claimed that as the scale of the economy expands, production cannot develop at a continued high rate, was nothing more than a baseless sophistry.

Through our practical struggle for the revolution and construction we have clearly demonstrated the correctness and vitality of the Juche idea. Today our Party’s revolutionary Juche idea is rousing sympathy amongst many people of the world.

Striving to defend and enrich the Juche idea is the glorious, sacred duty of our working class and of the working people as a whole. The trade union organizations must educate the working class and their members to continue to arm themselves firmly with our Party’s Juche idea and fight to defend and carry it through.

To revolutionize and working-classize the working people, we must
strengthen their communist education.

I am only going to refer to this matter briefly because I have spoken about it on many previous occasions.

The most important thing in communist education is to rid the working people of individualism and selfishness and equip them with collectivism.

Individualism and selfishness are the legacy of the capitalist society. A capitalist society is a society based on individualism which makes people content with their own affluence and comfort, not caring about others. The current south Korean situation is a good example of a society founded on individualism and selfishness.

In south Korea today a handful of landlords and capitalists eat and live well while the great majority of the working people, including the workers and peasants, are living crowded into matchbox houses and hovels, and millions of unemployed wander about the streets in search of jobs and food. South Koreans now criticize their society, saying that “The rich get richer and the poor get poorer” there. They mean that the rich people amass wealth while the poor people are further impoverished. In south Korea a handful of rich people are getting richer and richer and the overwhelming majority of the people are becoming poorer and poorer because that society is a society which favours the landlords and capitalists.

Not long ago a capitalist journalist wrote a story which ridiculed the situation in south Korea. He said that south Korea had built nice-looking expressways, but they were lined with dilapidated thatch-roofed houses and the streets swarmed with beggars.

A socialist, communist society, unlike a capitalist society, is a society based on collectivism; it is a society where everybody helps and leads each other forward, engaging in productive activity and living happily together. In this society people are not allowed to have an individualist, egoistic desire to live in comfort for themselves.

Individualism and selfishness have no place in communist ideology. In order to build a happy socialist, communist society where everybody is well-fed and well-clothed, lives in a good house, can
study as much as he wishes and is entitled to free medical treatment, it is necessary to eliminate individualism and selfishness completely from the minds of people and arm them with collectivism. And everybody must devotedly strive anywhere and at any time, not for his own comfort and pleasure, but for the society and people, for the Party and revolution.

To eliminate individualism and selfishness, ideological education must be intensified amongst working men and women.

These ideological remnants will not disappear automatically from the minds of the working people just because a socialist system has been established. Experience shows that even though the socio-economic basis for individual selfishness has been eliminated as a result of the establishment of the socialist system, individualism and selfishness will continue to manifest themselves unless the ideological education of the working people is conducted well. Once these ideas are allowed to breed, people seek their own comfort and pleasure rather than work for the interests of the state and people; for this purpose, they do not hesitate to do harm to others’ lives and property or defame their country and people. Needless to say, we cannot expect these individualists and egoists to love their revolutionary comrades and collectives or fight devotedly for the Party and the revolution.

Eliminating individualism and egoism which are rooted deep in the minds of people is the point of departure in the revolutionization of the working people. The trade union organizations must intensify the ideological education of their members to root out individualistic, egoistic ideas.

The revolutionary opera *A True Daughter of the Party* recently produced by the People’s Army Song and Dance Ensemble is an excellent work for educating the working people in communist ideology. This moving opera truthfully depicts the noble comradeship and collectivism of a People’s Army nurse who sacrifices her life for her revolutionary comrades and collective. Unhesitatingly dedicating one’s life to the interests of one’s collective is a noble characteristic of the communist.
From now onwards, the trade union organizations must strengthen collectivist education so that all their members work and live in accordance with the communist principle: “One for all and all for one”.

In order to eliminate individualism and egoism, it is imperative to intensify the education of women.

As we mentioned at the Fourth Congress of the Women’s Union, only by strengthening the education of the women can we both revolutionize and working-classize them and facilitate the work of rooting out the individualism and selfishness of men. Because she is mistress of the household, the woman’s ideological condition affects her children and husband to a considerable extent. When the women still in the grip of individualism and egoism grumble at home or complain to their husbands about this or that, their husbands inevitably become greedy and fail to revolutionize themselves. Therefore, the women’s education must be particularly strengthened so as to revolutionize and working-classize them all.

In eliminating the individualism and selfishness of the women and revolutionizing and working-classizing them it is important to send them out into the world so that they take part in organizational life. If they are not given a chance to participate in public life but are just kept at home, they will not know what is going on around them and they will have an egoistic tendency to enjoy comfortable lives for themselves.

We must send many more of them out into the world and strengthen their organizational, political life. In this way all of them will be revolutionized and working-classized, so that the revolutionization and working-classization of the whole of society will be accelerated.

We are working hard to build a society where everybody will live well, not a society where a handful of people will be prosperous. Therefore, when organizing and conducting any work we must always oppose individualism and selfishness resolutely and give full scope to collectivism.

Another important aspect of communist education is to foster a communist attitude towards labour in all working people.
Communism can only be built successfully when all the working people love work and participate in it earnestly. The word communism itself means that production is run along communal lines. A handful of people cannot produce enough to provide every member of society with an affluent life. So we must ensure that everybody participates in labour and works harder.

If people hate to work and just want to eat the bread of idleness, it would be impossible to occupy the material fortress of communism or, moreover, maintain any society. In order to put into effect the communist principle under which people work according to their abilities and receive their shares according to their needs, all members of society must, first of all, love work, consciously take part in it and dedicate all their energy and talents to the welfare of society.

Loving work and earnestly participating in labour is one of the most important traits of the communist. By observing whether people love work or not, honestly participate in common labour or not, whether or not they are prepared to work devotedly for the country and people throughout their lives, we can gauge the extent to which they have been revolutionized and working-classized.

Let me tell you a story about a communist mother who truly loves labour and works hard for the Party and the revolution.

Some time ago we visited Comrade Ma Tong Hui’s mother. She sacrificed all her family—husband, son, daughter-in-law and daughter for the revolution. And she herself had been severely tortured in prison by the Japanese villains, and still has trouble with her leg. But she had never revealed this fact to anybody in case it should worry us. Although she is old and in poor health, this year she voluntarily took part in the movement to raise castor silkworms, which was initiated by the Women’s Union. She planted and tended castor-oil plants in her yard and presented them to the local members of the Women’s Union as feed for the silkworms.

Comrade Ma Tong Hui’s mother has lived all alone, without any help from others. More than once we advised her to keep a person who would take care of the kitchen work for her because she was too old to
do all the household chores. But she refused; she said she lived in comfort under the grateful care of the Party and the state, even though she could not give any help to the country, and she could not take someone from the nation’s precious manpower pool just to take care of her domestic work. Not long ago we arranged for a hospital nurse to live with her and help her in the evening after her work at the hospital.

This mother is a true communist mother who works as hard as she can and is determined to give the country what little help she can.

The trade union organizations must intensify the ideological education of the working class and their members and equip them with a communist attitude towards labour, so that they will regard nonparticipation in labour as the greatest dishonour, always love labour, consciously observe work discipline and devote all their efforts and talents to the construction of socialism.

The trade unions must educate their members to take loving care of the common property which belongs to the state and society and use it sparingly.

In our society all property of the state and society is the people’s common property. This property has been created by the blood and sweat of the workers, peasants and the rest of the working people and is a valuable asset guaranteeing that our people and posterity will lead happy lives. Unless the common property is protected and looked after, we cannot make our nation rich and strong nor our people prosperous, however much we may produce or build.

What is more, we have not yet reunified our country and are building socialism face to face with our enemies. Recently, on the pretext of a “threat of invasion from the north” south Korea’s puppet clique has even declared a “state of emergency” and is frantically preparing for war. In this situation we must make war preparations, while carrying on economic construction at the same time. Building socialism and simultaneously preparing for war is by no means an easy task for our country which has a small territory and population. Therefore, we must thoroughly prevent waste in all spheres and maximize production and economy.
However, some of our officials and working people are not economical enough and, more often than not, treat the nation’s property carelessly or squander it.

The neglect of state property is to be seen in any sphere, at any unit. There are a lot of people who do not take care of the fine homes built by the state, and everywhere machines and equipment, motor cars and tractors break down through lack of care. Very often materials are wasted and merchandise is treated carelessly and damaged. Those who are engaged in agriculture work zealously from the time of rice planting until harvest but after harvesting they do not take good care of the precious grain. In country areas you can still see plenty of grain stacks in the fields and in some cases the harvested grain stalks are littered there. A considerable amount of grain produced by the hard efforts exerted over the whole year is lost this way because it is not taken in and threshed promptly.

The common property of the state and society is carelessly treated and wasted because egoism remains in people’s minds. The trade union organizations must conduct a powerful ideological struggle against the waste and trespass on common property and strengthen the education of all their members so that they adopt a responsible attitude towards the nation’s economy.

The trade union organizations must teach their members to hate the exploitative system and have a deep love for the socialist system.

To educate the working people to have a boundless love for the socialist system and work devotedly to consolidate and develop it, they must be clearly informed of the essence of the exploitative society and of the former days when our people were oppressed and humiliated.

Among the workers there are many who have never been exploited or oppressed or undergone the harsh trials of the revolutionary struggle. They do not fully understand how the present happy socialist system has come into being, how much blood the revolutionary forerunners shed and how many lives were sacrificed for this system.

The trade union organizations must thoroughly explain to their members the essence of the exploitative system and the superiority of
the socialist system as well as the hard-fought struggle waged by our people to set up and defend this system, so that they can dedicate their all to the battle to protect the socialist system reliably from the encroachment of the enemy and further consolidate and develop it.

Another important task facing the trade union organizations is that of raising the workers’ technological and cultural levels.

To achieve the complete victory of socialism and build communism, the technical revolution must be carried out in partnership with the ideological revolution. Only by making the technical revolution can we eliminate the difference between heavy and light labour, between agricultural and industrial labour and between mental and physical labour and occupy the material fortress of communism.

We are now faced with the important task of successfully carrying out the three major tasks of the technical revolution proposed at the Fifth Party Congress. These are proud revolutionary tasks aimed at freeing all our working people from arduous labour and guaranteeing them prosperous and cultured lives. In order to implement these tasks brilliantly, we must quickly complete mechanization in all spheres of the national economy and introduce semi-automation and automation on a wide scale.

Ours is an era of automation. If we work hard and introduce semi-automation and automation extensively, we can make it possible for our working people to work with much greater ease and efficiency in all spheres of the national economy.

Some time ago I saw a scientific film produced by an advanced country. In this country a large iron works with a capacity of two to three million tons is run automatically. A few people work in a room; when they push buttons, ores enter the furnace automatically and pig iron gushes out, entering the oxygen converter and emerging as steel. When automation reaches such a level we can say that the difference between physical and mental labour has been eliminated completely.

If we also study science and technology extensively and develop them, we can produce steel without making our smelters work in
extreme heat at the open-hearth furnace or electric furnace and without their having to go to the trouble of throwing limestone into it with shovels; and we can also automate the production processes of the extractive industries or capital construction. And if we accelerate the technical revolution in agriculture and raise the level of mechanization and use chemicals more widely, we can free the peasants from backbreaking work.

We should raise the level of mechanization in both industry and agriculture and in all spheres of the national economy and introduce semi-automation and automation so as to free our working people from difficult and arduous labour. This is a glorious revolutionary task which the working class must undertake. It is mainly they who must carry out the technical revolution not only in industry but also in agriculture. The technical revolution in agriculture cannot be carried out successfully by the efforts of the peasants alone. Only when many workers equipped with progressive ideas and techniques go to the countryside, can the mechanization of agriculture and the greater use of chemicals be pushed ahead forcefully.

Some time ago we visited the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory. On our way back we visited a ri in Hyangsan County and met many people and exchanged views on how to raise the level of mechanization and save manpower in agriculture. I told them that new factories, enterprises and workshops were snowballing and this was causing a heavy strain on the nation’s manpower, and I asked them whether they could farm with machines and so use less manpower and transfer it to industry. But an official who was said to have had a long experience in farming there was reluctant to accept mechanization, claiming that farming was done better by workers than machines. However, one of the workteam heads, a demobilized soldier and former worker, actively supported the mechanization of agriculture. He asked for a lorry and tractors, saying that if other people were reluctant to mechanize, his workteam would try it out. He said that if his workteam was provided with a lorry and three tractors, they would save a considerable amount of manpower and produce much more grain than now. A tractor driver
who was present agreed with the workteam head and stressed the need to mechanize farming. This shows that the rural technical revolution can be forcefully accelerated only when many workers with progressive ideas and techniques go to the rural areas.

When large numbers of workers go to the rural areas, and farming is done with lorries, tractors and various farm machines, large quantities of chemical fertilizers and agricultural chemicals, we can not only increase grain production but also eliminate the difference between agricultural and industrial labour and enforce the eight-hour day in the countryside, also. The successful acceleration of the technical revolution in agriculture will also facilitate the working-classization of the peasants.

For the brilliant fulfilment of the tasks of the technical revolution devolving on them, the working class must have a high technological and cultural level. So the workers must work hard to raise their technological and cultural level, while continuing to revolutionize themselves.

To raise their technological and cultural level, the workers must study hard. In addition to the Party’s policies, they must diligently study technology so as to get a profound and extensive knowledge of the latest developments in science and technology.

It is a long time since we set up an excellent system of higher learning such as correspondence courses and factory colleges under which the working people can study while working; and we have introduced the Saturday studies and the system of studying two hours every day. Upholding the Party’s policy for the whole Party, the whole army and the whole nation to study, the workers must make the best use of their favourable conditions and study hard to raise their technological and cultural level at all times.

The trade union organizations must enhance their role in encouraging the workers to study well. As we pointed out at the Second National Meeting of the Vanguard Workers in the Chollima Workteam Movement, one of the major tasks of this movement is to work with books well in order to raise the working people’s
technological and cultural level. The trade union organizations must always take care that the workers study well and regularly and must provide them with every opportunity for raising their technological and cultural level all the time.

Then all our workers will be equipped with as much knowledge and technology and cultural attainments as the intellectuals.

The trade union organizations must also organize and mobilize their members energetically to carry out the immediate economic tasks.

Our major task in the construction of socialism today is that of successfully fulfilling the three major tasks of the technical revolution proposed at the Fifth Party Congress. The trade union organizations must forcefully organize and mobilize the working class for the fulfilment of these tasks which are designed to free the working people from backbreaking labour.

In order to carry out these tasks successfully, it is necessary, first of all, to develop the machine-building industry rapidly, and, in particular, speed up the production of machine tools.

Increasing the production of machine tools is the key to the fulfilment of the technical revolution. The technical revolution can be called a machine revolution. Without machine tools, it is impossible to develop the machine-building industry itself and succeed in carrying out any of the tasks of the technical revolution. Our success in carrying out the three major tasks of the technical revolution depends entirely on the production of large quantities of machine tools. That is why our Party concentrated on the production of machine tools during the battle in the first year of the Six-Year Plan.

Early this year we visited the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory and appealed to its workers to bring about a great innovation in production. In support of the Party’s call they boldly got down to streamlining the equipment and worked hard to automate the production process. As a result, this factory, which had barely managed to produce 2,500 machine tools annually, has now surpassed the 10,000 mark.

Following the torch of technological innovation kindled by the heroic workers at Huichon, strenuous campaigns were carried out by
the workers of machine-tool factories in Kusong and Mangyongdae and by other men and women engaged in the machine-building industry across the nation; as a result, we are witnessing a great innovation in the production of machine tools. At present the working class in this field are determined to produce 30,000 machine tools by April 15 next year and are carrying on a determined battle to put their resolve into practice.

To attain this goal the machine-tool factories must increase their production, while the related branches of industry must supply them promptly with enough raw materials, supplies and equipment needed for the production of machine tools.

The metal industry must produce a large number of different steel materials for the manufacture of machine tools. As the national economy develops rapidly, the demands for steel are daily increasing. At present the machine-building industry uses a tremendous amount of steel. If the metal industry does not supply enough steel, the machine-building industry cannot scale the height of 30,000 machine tools. The working class of the metal industry must fight more actively to meet the increasing demands for steel.

To increase steel production we must develop the mining industry and provide large quantities of iron ore to the metallurgical industry. The workers in the mining industry must achieve the comprehensive mechanization of their industry and bring about a great innovation in the production of iron ore.

For the production of 30,000 machine tools, the factories taking part in cooperative production must produce accessories for the machine-tool factories in plenty of time. However many machine tools the machine-tool factories make, if they do not supply electric motors and other accessories when needed, the machines will be useless. They say that at the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory large quantities of machines are kept in the storehouse half-finished because electric appliance factories do not produce electric motors. They must make many more electric motors and supply them to the machine-building industry and other different branches of the national economy.
To produce more electric motors, copper must be supplied. The demand for copper in the electrical machinery industry and other fields of the national economy is very high now. A great deal of copper is used by the national defence industry in particular. Since we are building socialism face to face with the enemy, we have also to develop the national defence industry. As long as our enemies remain, we must continue to develop this industry however much copper it needs.

To satisfy the increasing demands for copper, we must develop many new copper mines and work harder to increase production at the existing mines.

We must endeavour to economize on copper in all spheres which use it. At present, however, the electrical machinery industry and other branches of the national economy do not do this. If people in electric motor factories use their initiative and work a little harder, they can save a great deal of copper but they do not do so. From now onwards, these factories must conduct an extensive technological innovation movement and endeavour to turn out highly efficient electric motors in large quantities, using less copper. Meanwhile, in all spheres of the national economy, we must do our utmost to economize copper by reducing its consumption to the minimum.

While producing more machine tools, we must, at the same time, strive to increase their variety and raise their quality.

To equip our nation’s industry with modern technology, we need more than 130 kinds of machine tools but we only produce some 40 kinds. Therefore, the Third Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Party Central Committee set forth the task of increasing the variety of machine tools. The working class in the machine-building industry must uphold the decision of this plenary meeting and work hard to increase the variety.

Today our rapidly developing national economy equipped with modern technology needs highly efficient precision machine tools. Unless we improve quality radically we cannot further develop the economy and carry out the three major tasks of the technical revolution properly. Our present situation is different from what it was in 1959
when our nation started the let-one-machine-tool-make-another movement. The trade union organizations must work hard to improve the quality of machine tools at all the machine-building factories in conformity with the requirements of developing modern science and technology.

If we work well and increase the number and variety of machine tools and raise their quality resolutely, we shall considerably hasten the fulfilment of the three major tasks of the technical revolution designed to free our working people from backbreaking work.

In order to fulfil the three major tasks of the technical revolution properly, we must also develop the power industry. Electricity is the main form of power which keeps all industries moving. Without it, we can expect neither the successful carrying out of the technical revolution nor our nation’s economic advance. We must develop the power industry still further and supply enough electricity to the different fields of the national economy and for the implementation of the three major tasks of the technical revolution. The workers engaged in the construction of power stations must speed up the projects which have already been undertaken and complete them as soon as possible, and those power stations which are now producing electricity must work hard to raise their output to the maximum.

In order to carry out the three major tasks of the technical revolution smoothly, it is necessary to begin a dynamic campaign for the semi-automation and automation of production processes in all spheres of the national economy.

Therefore, we must develop the electronics and automation industries. Today our country has modern centres of these industries, which produce electronic tubes, semi-conductors and other electronic components. On this basis, we must expand and strengthen the large electronics and automation industry centres, at the same time as we establish, through a mass campaign, small and medium branch factories which produce automation gauges and instruments at various places. By producing quantities of electronic components and automation gauges and instruments needed for automation, we will
successfully fulfil the task of semi-automating and automating every sphere of the national economy.

For the fulfilment of the three major tasks of the technical revolution it is imperative to eliminate the difference between agricultural and industrial labour and free the peasants from backbreaking labour.

To do this we must first of all mechanize agriculture. Therefore, the working class in the machine-building industry must produce more tractors, lorries and modern farm machines and send them to the countryside. For the present, the working class must provide the farming villages with a great deal of equipment and materials needed for the sprinkler irrigation system.

Now, let me deal briefly with the question of national reunification. We have referred to this question more than once and again, at the Fifth Party Congress, we made clear our policy of reunifying the country.

As we always say, the south Korean revolution must be carried out by its masters—the working class and people of south Korea. As for the people in the northern half of Korea, who are of the same nation, they are in duty bound to give active support to the south Korean people’s revolutionary struggle. They must always be fully prepared to come to the aid of the south Korean people in this.

Today the south Korean people unanimously hope for the independent, peaceful reunification of the country and they are fighting to achieve it.

In particular, the south Korean people still demand that their authorities accept our eight-point peaceful reunification proposal put forward at the Fifth Session of the Fourth Supreme People’s Assembly and the proposal on north-south negotiation made in our August 6 speech. Nowadays the south Korean people are asking Park Chung Hee why he does not visit north Korea when, in his last-ditch effort, Nixon has visited Beijing and Moscow; why he cannot respond to north Korea’s proposal for negotiation with the Democratic Republican Party.
As the people began to call more loudly for north-south negotiation, south Korea’s puppet clique were so frightened that they had to agree to talks between the north and south Korean Red Cross organizations. In the light of their persistent objection to our proposal for north-south negotiation, it is apparent that they agreed to hold the preliminary talks because their masters, the US imperialists, had urged them to hold a dialogue with our side.

Although the south Korean puppet clique have agreed to hold north-south Red Cross talks, they are deeply worried about how to handle the talks. Since the north-south Red Cross talks were proposed, they have only been proposing a movement to search for families who have lost touch with each other. Obviously they expected that our side would not agree and that the talks might, in the long run, be foiled.

Although this movement is unimportant, we agreed to hold talks on this matter. Then we proposed that, instead of confining the subject to searching for the families scattered throughout north and south, discussions be held also on searching for relatives and friends, correspondence between the north and south and free travel. However, the south Korean side is not willing to accept this just proposal of ours. Because the south Korean rulers also know that once free travel starts and the people in the south visit the northern half of Korea and see that everyone here has no worries about food, clothing and housing, studying and working as they wish, and living in happiness, the south Korean people’s complaint and resistance will increase.

Today the south Korean puppets are in a dilemma, and the US imperialists, their masters, are also hard pressed.

The plight the US imperialists are in is clearly seen from the fact that Nixon visited China with which his country has no diplomatic relations and then the Soviet Union. At present they are facing a grave political, economic and military crisis and are being isolated from their allies and colleagues. In this situation the reactionary US rulers apparently thought that they would not get over their present crisis by war alone, and visited China and the Soviet Union in an attempt to find another way out. But this does not mean that there has been a change in
US imperialism’s policy of aggression. It still remains unchanged. Through his visits Nixon has tried to improve Sino-US relations and temporarily relax tension, and reach an agreement with the Soviet Union on the cessation of the arms race and the reduction of production of nuclear weapons. In this way he is trying to get out of the present crisis and buy time to intensify preparations for aggressive war. In brief, Nixon visited China and the Soviet Union to beg them for mercy. So we see nothing strange about his visits.

However, the south Korean puppets are deeply apprehensive of Nixon’s China visit. This is seen from an article written by a reporter of *The New York Times* some time ago. He said that it is an Asian tradition that the weak always visits the strong to pay his respects, so the south Koreans consider that through his China visit Nixon recognized the Chinese leaders as his superiors.

Alarmed by the internal and external situations which are turning unfavourable for them, the south Korean puppet clique have declared a “state of emergency” and are harshly repressing the people on the pretext of the fictitious “threat of invasion from the north”. The “state of emergency” was declared by them to frustrate contact and negotiation between the north and south and suppress the south Korean people’s daily increasing inclination towards peaceful reunification, and thus prolong their days.

They declared the “state of emergency” on the pretext of the “threat of invasion from the north” but no one will be hoodwinked by this sort of deceptive artifice. The south Korean puppets’ cruel fascist repression is arousing great resentment and provoking protest amongst the south Korean people and people throughout the world. Since the declaration of the “state of emergency” on the pretext of the “threat of invasion from the north” public opinion throughout the world has been unanimously condemning the south Korean rulers for this action directed at repressing their opposition. Even some of the reactionary rulers and reptile press in the US, Japan and West Germany regard the “state of emergency” in south Korea as a political trick carried out on account of their internal circumstances rather than a measure to cope
with the threat of “invasion from the north”. The declaration of the “state of emergency” on the unfounded pretext of the “threat of invasion from the north” has isolated the south Korean puppet clique still more and driven them into a difficult situation.

It seems that they are looking for a way out of the tight corner now. This is seen from the fact that since we expressed our readiness to hold negotiations with the Democratic Republican Party also, they are trying by every means to confirm whether this is true or not.

Our attitude to north-south negotiation is clear. If south Korea’s present rulers demand the withdrawal of the US imperialist aggressor army and do not bring the Japanese militarist forces into south Korea, if they release patriots and political prisoners, refrain from repressing the people and guarantee political parties and social organizations free activity, we are ready to negotiate with them at any time. Only when the south Korean puppet clique agree to our conditions, will their crimes against the country and the people be condoned.

Today the domestic and international situations are developing very favourably for our struggle for the country’s independent, peaceful reunification. Under these circumstances we must continue to accelerate our peace offensive for national reunification.

At the same time, we must make full preparations for war. The US imperialists are on the decline but they are still occupying south Korea and have not given up their aggressive ambitions. In addition, the danger of the revived Japanese militarists igniting a new war against our country in alliance with the south Korean puppets still remains. Therefore, in order to be ready to cope with any moves of the enemy, we must strive to increase the political, economic and military might of the northern half of Korea still further.

In order to achieve national reunification successfully, we must strengthen our solidarity with the international revolutionary forces while, at the same time, increasing our own revolutionary forces.

Since the 15th Plenary Meeting of the Fourth Party Central Committee we have intensified our information work abroad and established Juche in our external activities more firmly; as a result, we
have many supporters and sympathizers in foreign countries. Today we have many of them in every part of the world. If we carry on our external activities still better, we will be able to win many more friends.

The trade unions must work hard to unite with the working class in many countries of the world, strengthen solidarity with the international working-class movement and win more supporters and sympathizers. We must even win the uncommitted forces which support and sympathize with our revolutionary cause in a passive way.

Our active support and encouragement of other people’s revolutionary struggle is the basic way to increase our solidarity with the international revolutionary forces. We must actively support those peoples who are fighting imperialists led by US imperialism as well as the newly independent nations. It is true that since our country is small and one half of it has been usurped by the US imperialists, it is no easy task for us to aid other countries. However, we must overcome our hardships and assist other peoples in their revolutionary struggles. Only by doing this, can we accelerate world revolution and win many more supporters and sympathizers for our revolution.

We must work harder in order to give material and moral assistance to the fighting peoples and newly independent nations. We will never allow ourselves to shorten our working hours and do less work as they do in other countries. The more successful we are in socialist construction, the harder we must work to consolidate and develop our country’s socialist system and actively support the revolutionary struggles of the people of the world.

Our working class must stand in the van of the whole people and keep stepping up the revolution and construction, and under the Marxian slogan “Workers of all countries, unite!” they must strive to strengthen unity with the working class of the world and increase solidarity with the international revolutionary forces.

I hope that our heroic working class and the trade union members will firmly unite around the Party Central Committee and work even harder for the country’s independent reunification and for the final triumph of the revolution.
Comrades,

On behalf of the Central Committee of the Party and the Government of the Republic, I should like to express warm congratulations and gratitude to those of you who are present here and to all our educators who, upholding the Party’s policy of education, are working devotedly on the educational front to rear the rising generation in the spirit of communism.

Our educational workers, revolutionary fighters who are loyal to the Party, have successfully carried out the line of education charted by the Party at each stage of the revolution since the days of the democratic revolution after liberation, and scored great achievements in the education of the young. Our Party highly appreciates the great achievements and outstanding endeavours of the educational workers in the past years in their worthwhile, honourable work to train reserves of revolutionaries.

I should like to talk to you now about perfecting the science of socialist education and carrying out its principles more thoroughly.

The most important task in education today is to bring up the new generation as worthy successors to the revolution, as reliable reserves of builders of communism.
Under the wise leadership of the Party and by means of an arduous struggle, our people established an advanced socialist system in our country, and have achieved brilliant victories in socialist construction. However, our revolutionary cause is still to be completed. We are faced with the revolutionary tasks of reunifying our nation, building socialism and communism in our country and wiping imperialism off the face of the earth.

In order to fulfil these honourable and important revolutionary tasks, we must continue with the revolution and train the new generation as staunch communist revolutionaries who will carry the revolution forward.

With a view to raising the new generation as reliable successors to our revolution, we must educate them in communism from childhood. The establishment of the socialist system by no means implies that people will become communists of their own accord. The new generation can only grow up to be ardent revolutionaries and true communists when they are educated along revolutionary and communist lines at kindergartens and schools.

In any society the primary aim of education is to train people to serve the existing social system faithfully.

In a feudal society education served to defend the feudal system by instilling in people respect for the feudal order. In a capitalist society it serves to foster selfishness in people and make them submit to capitalist exploitation and oppression.

In a socialist society the aim of education is fundamentally different from that in exploiter societies. Education in a socialist society should imbue the new generation with communist ideology and impart to them knowledge which is essential for the building of socialism and communism. Therefore, it must serve the purpose of making them oppose the exploiting system, defend the socialist system and work with devotion to build a communist society free from class distinctions, where everybody enjoys a happy life. In a socialist society education must therefore be based on a new theory and methods of teaching radically different from those in preceding societies and have
an entirely new content. It must be a revolutionary and communist education which clarifies the distinctions between the working class and the capitalist class, and between communism and capitalism.

If a socialist state fails to educate the children and young people in a revolutionary and communist fashion, and gives them a mixed education which is neither socialist nor capitalist, it will be impossible to train them to be successors to the revolution and builders of communism. A mixed education can only make people confused. Without a communist education, people cannot succeed to the revolution or build a communist society, the ideal of mankind.

In certain socialist countries, there are various negative factors which impair the building of socialism and communism. What is the explanation for this? Of course, there could be many reasons, one of the main ones being the failure to educate the rising generation in a communist spirit. If the new generation, because of the absence of communist education, are loath to work, are indolent on the job, do not cherish the socialist system won by their revolutionary forefathers at the cost of their blood and detest the revolution, the revolution cannot be furthered and the building of socialism and communism cannot be successful in the country concerned. There can be no doubt about this.

It is wrong to think that socialist education consists only of teaching about *Capital* and other Marxist-Leninist classics and the general principles of Marxism-Leninism regarding political economy, dialectical materialism and historical materialism at universities, colleges and various other schools. Moreover, if a mixture of socialism, feudalism and capitalism is taught in schools, this will be, so to speak, a jumbled education.

It is true that some literary and artistic works of feudal and capitalist societies were progressive. Although these works are regarded as “classics”, they should not be included in toto in textbooks or given as reading matter to schoolchildren whose revolutionary world outlook has not yet been shaped.

For example, Pushkin’s *Evgeni Onegin* and our *Tale of Chun*
Hyang might have been progressive when they were written. However, they contain the limitations of the age and class limitations; they cannot contribute to the communist education of the children and young people in our era.

Evgeni Onegin is the story of some young men from aristocratic families who fall in love with a girl and light a duel with pistols out of jealousy. The progressive aspect of this work, if any, is in its criticism, though mild, of the aristocracy. As for The Tale of Chun Hyang, it criticized social inequality between the nobility and the common people in a feudal society and showed that young men and women could love and marry despite their difference in property and social status. For its time it was progressive. However, it is only the son of a nobleman who opposes the social discrimination imposed by the nobility, and the mental world of the characters differs too greatly from that of today’s youth.

We cannot hope for young people of our age who read such old works as Evgeni Onegin and The Tale of Chun Hyang to derive a revolutionary fighting will and a zeal for production activities from them. On the contrary, the extravagant and depraved life of the feudal nobility and capitalists described in these old works might have a harmful effect on the children and young people, infecting them with feudal and capitalist ideas and with the bourgeois way of life. In some socialist countries today the children and young people are inclined towards a dissolute and indolent life and towards the capitalist system and the bourgeois way of life. This is by no means accidental.

We have learned a serious lesson from the conditions in other countries and from our own experience: if you give the children and young people a jumbled education instead of a communist one, they, and even the whole of society, will not be homogeneous. Therefore, our Party resolutely discarded the old theory and method of education and advanced the policy of evolving a new socialist pedagogy to meet the needs of the building of communism. Our Party has already clarified the basic principle of socialist education and is working actively to carry it through.
The basic principle of socialist pedagogy is to revolutionize and working-classize the children and young people through communist education.

It is a legitimate demand of the building of socialism and communism to revolutionize and working-classize the people. In order to build a socialist and communist society, we must conquer the ideological fortress by revolutionizing and working-classizing all members of society, at the same time capturing the material fortress by developing the productive forces.

Advancing the theory of building communism, Marx and Engels laid great stress on its economic aspect, but wrote little about its ideological aspect. They thought that once the working class in power dispossessed the capitalists of the factories, railways, land and other means of production and placed them under state ownership and developed the productive forces a little more, a communist society would suddenly appear where all would work according to their ability and receive according to their needs.

There are facts which we must take into account when studying the theory of Marx and Engels on building communism: they evolved their theory without having had personal experience in the building of communism; they lived in the era of premonopoly capitalism; they studied the question of building communism bearing in mind the conditions in the developed capitalist countries where they lived. They believed that the proletarian revolution would break out almost simultaneously or successively in the major capitalist countries and that world revolution would triumph relatively soon. They thought that once the working class in a country had taken power and nationalized the means of production, it would take a comparatively short time to lay the material and technical foundations of communism. Consequently, they thought that the period of transition from capitalism to communism would be short. They failed to foresee clearly that the remnants of the old ideas in the minds of people and the bourgeois ideology infiltrating from outside would greatly impede the building of communism, and that many difficulties would arise in the
course of communist construction.

Lenin carried out the revolution in Russia, then a backward capitalist country, and personally guided the building of socialism. Therefore, he did not consider the period of transition from capitalism to communism to be as short as Marx and Engels did, but relatively long. However, Lenin did not specify the need for the state of proletarian dictatorship to carry through an ideological revolution in the period of transition from capitalism to communism.

Lenin formulated his view of communist construction by his proposition that Soviet power plus electrification of the whole country is communism. In this context the word electrification would have to be construed as meaning that through a technical revolution all production processes should be automated and the country’s material foundations built solidly. And by Soviet power he meant the dictatorship of the proletariat. Of course, if we stretch the meaning of this word, it can be interpreted as signifying that the state of the working class should carry on the class struggle and an ideological revolution. However, Lenin failed to expound the idea that in order to build socialism and communism, people have to be revolutionized and working-classized through the ideological revolution, and the ideological fortress as well as the material fortress must be conquered without fail.

The building of communism cannot be said to have been completed simply when the working class has taken power and the country has been electrified. In our country today, every ri has electricity, every farmhouse has electric light and electricity is widely used even in farm work. Thus, the country has attained a very high degree of electrification. The Soviet Union has also achieved electrification far beyond Lenin’s electrification plan. Yet, it still has a long way to go to realize the communist principle that each works according to his ability and receives according to his needs. Even if production processes have become highly automated and there is ample material wealth, the building of communism cannot be considered complete.

In order to realize the communist principle of distribution, we must
educate and reform people along communist lines through an ideological revolution, while increasing the material wealth of society. It is true that if material wealth is increased by successful economic construction, the people can live prosperously. But if we fail to reform the thinking of people along communist lines, emphasizing economic construction only, and neglecting the ideological revolution, it would be impossible for us to build a communist society.

Indeed, people’s thoughts are influenced by their material environment, yet they cannot be reformed along communist lines of their own accord even when the economy has developed and the material standards of living have risen. Only when economic construction and the ideological revolution are promoted vigorously and simultaneously, can a firm material and technical basis for communism be built and the thinking of people be reformed along communist lines. This is an absolute necessity for the successful construction of a communist society.

The period of transition from capitalism to communism may be shorter or longer in the developed and less developed capitalist countries. However, whatever the country concerned, the socialist state has to undertake this task of revolutionizing and working-classizing people during the transition period.

Only by waging a successful struggle to revolutionize and working-classize people can we eliminate the poison of bourgeois ideology remaining in their minds and prevent the revival of capitalism. Moreover, imperialism still exists in the world and persists in its ideological and cultural infiltration with the aim of destroying the socialist countries from within. Under these conditions a working-class party and state cannot defend the socialist gains effectively unless they improve the ideological education of the working people.

The effective ideological education of the working people is a prerequisite to successful economic construction. The socialist economy can only be consistently developed by the conscious and positive efforts of the working people who have been freed from exploitation and oppression and have become masters of the country.
Therefore, inspiring the revolutionary enthusiasm of the working people by strengthening their ideological education is a decisive factor in the vigorous promotion of socialist economic construction.

Since vestiges of capitalist ideology remain in the minds of the people, if the socialist state fails to strengthen the ideological education of the working people, they may become selfish people who hate to work, yearn for a life of idleness and are interested only in money and pleasure. This would inhibit the possibility of accelerating economic construction aimed at laying the material and technical foundations of communism and might even nullify the achievements gained in the building of socialism and communism.

Certain people are advancing the theory that when the socialist economy reaches a certain stage of development, its rate of growth gradually drops. This is only a sophistry put forward to justify the fact that the rate of economic construction is slow and the economy marks time because the working people are not educated in a revolutionary way and, consequently, they lose revolutionary activity and become indolent instead of working hard.

Our experience shows clearly that if the working people are encouraged through an intensified ideological revolution to display collective heroism and creative initiative, a socialist society can always develop its economy at a high rate. In the past few years our country has suffered a great deal from a shortage of electric power because of continued drought. Because the supply of coking coal from other countries has been insufficient, we have had great difficulty in normalizing industrial production. We had a shortage of manpower and, moreover, we had to channel considerable forces to strengthen the nation’s defence capacities in the tense situation fraught with the threat of another war because of incessant US imperialist provocations, including the *Pueblo* incident. In spite of such difficult and complex problems, our Party intensified political work amongst the working people and aroused their revolutionary enthusiasm, so that it succeeded in overcoming all difficulties in economic construction and developing the economy at a high annual rate.
From our historical experience in the socialist revolution and in building socialism, we have drawn the conclusion that if we are to build a communist society we should carry on not only economic construction but also the battle for the revolutionization of people, that is, the battle to capture the material and ideological fortresses simultaneously.

It is an indispensable requirement for the building of communism to revolutionize and working-classize the people by intensifying the ideological revolution. Therefore, we must necessarily give first place to the revolutionization and working-classization of the pupils through school education. This must be the basic principle of socialist education.

It is our task now to perfect socialist pedagogy in conformity with this basic principle. This cannot be done through the efforts of one or two individuals only. All educational workers must pool their ideas and solve the problems one by one.

Nobody has ever advanced a perfect theory on socialist education. And no country has provided a model of socialist pedagogy which we can follow. Never again can we introduce in our country a jumbled system of education which has no clear demarcation between socialism and capitalism. Moreover, we should not try to copy the outworn feudal and capitalist theories and methods of education. The system of education of an exploiter society was formed for the purpose of defending the exploiting system, and so we have nothing to learn from it. We must reject it entirely and create a new socialist pedagogy.

We must perfect socialist pedagogy in an original manner solely on the basis of Marxist-Leninist principles and our experiences of revolution and construction.

In his work *Principles of Communism* Engels suggested, as educational measures to be carried out by the working class after the seizure of power, that all children from the age when they no longer need motherly care should be educated in state establishments at state expense, and that education should be combined with factory work. Just as we develop the theory of building communism by enlarging on
Lenin’s idea that communism is Soviet power plus electrification of the whole country, so we must correctly understand Engels’s idea and enlarge on it to develop socialist pedagogy.

Engels’s idea concerning the education of the rising generation may be construed as meaning that they should be educated collectively in state establishments to prevent the old ideas of their parents from exerting an influence on them and that they should be given useful knowledge for the building of communism by combining education with productive labour. But Engels did not answer the question of what kind of subjects and ideas should be taught to children when raising them in state establishments at state expense.

If we are to revolutionize and working-classize the new generation and train them to be staunch revolutionaries and true communists, we must not only raise them in state establishments but also develop a theory and methods of teaching to educate them in communism. However many creches, kindergartens and schools the state may build to institute compulsory education, it will be impossible to revolutionize and working-classize the children and their upbringing at state expense will prove futile, unless we give them a correct ideological education.

Compulsory nine-year technical education is now in effect and compulsory ten-year education will be introduced soon. When compulsory ten-year education becomes universal, all children will go to kindergarten for two years after leaving creche, and will then receive compulsory ten-year education at primary and secondary schools. This means that our children will live collectively in state educational establishments for 12 years from kindergarten onwards. If, during this period, the educational establishments provide a good communist ideological and cultural education for the children, they will at least have shaped the framework of a communist world outlook, even if they do not attain perfection. If they are continually educated and seasoned through the organizational life of the League of Socialist Working Youth at universities and colleges, in the People’s Army or in factories for five or six years after secondary school, they can be equipped
perfectly with a revolutionary world outlook. Then the revolutionization and working-classization of the whole of society will proceed successfully.

Our country now has all the conditions required for bringing up the new generation in communism. What the educators have to do is to apply the principles of socialist education set forth by our Party thoroughly in their work.

In order to bring up the new generation as ardent revolutionaries and true communists by applying the principles of socialist education, we must first educate and train them to have faith in communism.

Faith in communism is one of the noble spiritual traits of communists. They firmly believe in the victory of communism, the highest ideal of mankind, and devote all their energies to the work of bringing it about.

As everyone knows, it is a law of historical development that capitalism will give way to communism. The length of the period of communist construction may differ in various countries according to their specific conditions. But there can be no doubt that communism will ultimately be attained in every country. Nevertheless, communism cannot come of its own accord without struggle. In order to hasten the fall of capitalism and accelerate the building of communism, everyone must be firmly convinced of the victory of communism, and fight for it devotedly. To this end, it is particularly important to educate the new generation in such a way as to inspire them with faith in communism. Only when the new generation have unswerving faith in communism can they take over and continue the building of communism where we have left off.

The communism we are aspiring to is scientific communism. Therefore, our faith in communism has nothing to do with the religious doctrine which preaches that after death men may enter the “Kingdom of Heaven” or “Paradise”. Throughout the ages people have yearned for a society where they could work and live together in comfort. The ancients knew that exploitation and oppression, speculation and jealousy, poverty and sorrow existed in this world, but they did not
know that they could remove such social evils and build a society where all would live in happiness. So they listened to the doctrines of Christianity or Buddhism which said that they could enjoy happiness only if they entered the “Kingdom of Heaven” or “Paradise” after death.

But there is no such “Kingdom of Heaven” or “Paradise”. Modern science and technology have proved beyond doubt that the “Kingdom of Heaven” and “Paradise” do not exist. In our age men frequently make flights into space, and they find no such “blessed lands” however far they go into orbit. That a dead man could enter the “Kingdom of Heaven” or “Paradise” implies that he could enjoy happiness after death. But how can a dead man enjoy happiness?

If people want to abolish misery and suffering and live happily, they have to abolish the exploiter society and build a communist society where they can work according to their abilities and receive according to their needs. Only then can man’s centuries-old dream—a society of genuine happiness—come true in this land.

Some people now say that it will take several hundred years to build communism. This is tantamount to asserting that the building of communism is infeasible in our time and that communism can be built only after the death of our contemporaries. We must not foster such ideas in the minds of people. If a communist society were to appear in several hundred years’ time, people would lose faith in communism and would not fight actively for its triumph.

It may indeed take a long time to complete the building of communism, but this is not a matter of the distant future. Whether or not we build communism at an early date depends entirely on how we fight for it. If all the people unite and fight efficiently, they can build a communist society more quickly.

We can build a communist society quickly, but not at once. We must implement communist policies gradually, one by one, as the conditions for them arise. If we carry out communist policies one by one, without putting off until tomorrow whatever can be done today, a communist society will ultimately be built.
The free medical service introduced in our country is a communist measure. Previously our people could not afford to go to hospital when they were ill, but today, under the system of free medical care, all of them can get medical treatment in hospitals without paying even a penny. This system still has some shortcomings, though; we are short of doctors, medicines and medical facilities, and so cannot give the people enough medical assistance. When we do produce various kinds of medicines and medical appliances in large quantities by further developing industry and when we train more doctors, we can eliminate such shortcomings and bring the advantages of the free medical service into full play. By implementing such communist policies one by one and consolidating their achievements, we can build a communist society in our country so that all the people can live happily.

Therefore, while we convince the pupils of the doom of capitalism and the victory of socialism and communism, we must teach them how to build communism after the overthrow of capitalism. We must ensure that our younger generation work energetically to build socialism and communism with faith in communism.

Furthermore, we must teach the students to hate the landlord and capitalist classes, and the exploiter system.

Today we are living in an age of fierce class struggle. The landlord and capitalist classes are making desperate attempts to save themselves from imminent doom, and are challenging socialism. It is therefore necessary to crush the resistance of the exploiter classes completely in order to consolidate the socialist system and build socialism and communism successfully.

Because we are now living in an age of class struggle and revolution, it is most important to educate the rising generation to hate the landlord and capitalist classes and the exploiter system. If we do not educate our young people along these lines, they will lose sight of the class enemies and, lapsing into pacifism, will be reluctant to make revolution and, in the end, may become degenerate. Then not only will it be impossible to build socialism and communism successfully but even the revolutionary gains which
we have already won may be endangered.

In our school education, therefore, stress must be laid on driving home to the pupils the true face of the landlord and capitalist classes as exploiters and their malevolence, the corruption of capitalist society and the perfidy of bourgeois democracy. And it must be made known to them correctly that in a capitalist society the toiling masses, including the working class, are not treated as human beings and they receive nothing but poverty and sorrow for their backbreaking labour.

The pupils must be well acquainted, in particular, with the reactionary and corrupt nature of south Korean society. At present, the middle classes of south Korea, to say nothing of the workers and peasants, curse south Korean society and say, “The rich get richer and the poor get poorer.” This means that in south Korea while the wealthy become still more wealthy, the poor become more and more poverty-stricken with the passage of time. In fact, south Korea has now turned into a land of darkness where all democratic liberties and rights have been trampled underfoot, and the misery of the people there is beyond description owing to the colonial plunder by the US imperialists and to the ruthless exploitation by the landlords and the comprador capitalists.

We must fully inform the new generation of the true nature of a capitalist society and the reactionary character of south Korean society, thereby inculcating in them a fierce hatred for the landlord and capitalist classes and for the exploiter system and inducing them to fight against them resolutely.

At the same time, the superiority of socialism to capitalism must be fully explained to the pupils.

A socialist society is incomparably superior to a capitalist society. In a socialist society the masses of the people are masters of the country. Everybody studies and works as much as he wishes, and enjoys a happy life, free from exploitation and oppression. Also, in a socialist society the distinctions between heavy and light labour, between agricultural and industrial labour, and between physical and mental labour will disappear gradually; so all working people can
enjoy a more affluent and cultured life while working more easily. Only when schoolchildren are well acquainted with this superiority of a socialist society, can they be brought up to be ardent revolutionaries who work actively to consolidate the socialist system and build socialism and communism.

When explaining to the younger generation the superiority of socialism over capitalism, it is important to show them the contrast between the northern and the southern halves of Korea.

Today the people in the northern half of Korea are not worried about food, clothing and housing. Even when our working people fall ill and stay away from work, they receive rice and are provided with all the necessary living conditions by the state. Although our people cannot afford to dress as attractively as capitalists now, none of them is poorly clad, and no one is homeless. People in the northern half of Korea are not only free from anxiety about food, clothing and housing, but send their sons and daughters to school, to college and university free of charge.

But the south Korean people today are not provided with any living conditions, and are suffering from cold and hunger. If they fail to earn their bread one day, they have to starve the next; when they fall ill they cannot afford to buy medicine; and they are not in a position to send their children to school. Some time ago a south Korean newspaper reported that a woman who had been desperate about being unable to raise the money for her children’s school fees killed her little ones and herself.

The realities of north and south Korea, which form a sharp contrast, demonstrate the overwhelming superiority of the socialist system in the north over the social system in the south. All foreign visitors speak about the superiority of the socialist system in the northern half of Korea. On returning home many of them wrote articles praising the socialist system in the northern half of Korea.

The puppet clique in south Korea are now greatly alarmed to see that the socialist system in the north is being consolidated and that its superiority is becoming increasingly obvious. They are making frantic
efforts to prevent the socialist system from influencing the south Korean people. At present, delegates of the Red Cross organizations of north and south Korea are meeting at Panmunjom to discuss relief for our fellow countrymen who are separated in the two halves of the country. The south Korean side refuses to accept our just proposal to put on the agenda of the full-scale meeting the question of seeking families, relations and friends torn apart in north and south and enabling them to travel freely between the two zones. This is because the south Korean rulers are well aware that if free travel is allowed between north and south and people in the southern half come to the northern half of Korea and see for themselves the superiority of the socialist system, they would fight more courageously for the reunification of the country. The puppet clique of south Korea now claim that should free travel between north and south be allowed, south Korea would turn “Red”. This clearly shows how afraid they are lest the socialist system in the northern half of Korea should influence the south Korean people.

The south Korean puppet clique have recently proclaimed a “state of emergency” on the excuse of an alleged “threat of invasion from the north”; their real aim is to frustrate the contacts and negotiations between north and south, and suppress the south Korean people’s ever-increasing yearning for the northern half of Korea and peaceful reunification. In addition to the “state of emergency”, they are daily imposing a variety of evil fascist laws. To top it all, in defiance of the objections of the opposition parties and the public at large, they met together at 3 o’clock this morning like cat burglars and promulgated an unprecedented evil fascist law, the “special law on measures for national security”.

This is only the last desperate convulsion of a dying man. No matter what suppressive, noisy fascist tricks they try, the puppet clique in south Korea will never be able to stifle the yearning of the south Korean people for the northern half of Korea; nor can they halt our people’s struggle for the peaceful reunification of the country.

By teaching pupils the totally different situations in north and south
Korea, we must make them understand even more clearly the superiority of the socialist system in the northern half of Korea. When pupils and students can clearly see the superiority of the socialist system established in the north, they will defend it jealously, and fight more resolutely for the victory of the great cause of socialism and communism.

Training the new generation to be industrious is an important factor in bringing them up as staunch builders of communism.

Communism can only be built successfully when all members of society love work and participate conscientiously in labour activities. If we do not inculcate a love for labour in the rising generation, we cannot build socialism and communism successfully.

As society advances and life becomes more affluent, we must work better. It will not do to try to lead an idle life. It would be wrong to think that one could live indolently in a communist society. Communism does not mean a society where people can live without working. It is true that in a communist society the people’s living standards will be the highest possible and work will become very easy. But even then everybody will have to work, for without working one cannot live well.

Labour is necessary for one’s health as well. People should always do suitable work if only to be healthy and live for a long time.

In future we must teach all pupils to regard labour as most sacred and honourable and to love work, to observe labour discipline voluntarily and to acquire good working habits.

When cultivating a communist attitude towards labour amongst the students, an effective method is to quote living examples of devoted communists who sincerely love labour. Our country now boasts of countless true and diligent communists. Their examples can exert a great educational influence on the pupils.

I think the story of the “communist uncle” from the village of Jaegyong-ri, which has already been reported in *Rodong Sinmun*, will provide good teaching material for pupils. The old man had lived his life in Rajin. His son graduated from Kim Il Sung University and
taught at Kim Chaek University of Technology after the war. He
brought his father to Pyongyang to live with him. One day the old man
opened the window of his room in the apartment house in Pyongyang
and looked out over the streets at the cranes moving to and fro, the new
buildings springing up in many places and the young people working
nimbly and singing. On seeing this busy scene, the old man decided
that though old he must go back to the country area again and work.
That was how he came to Jaegyong-ri to become a cooperative farmer
again. When we went to Jaegyong-ri once, we met this old man. He
was working better than anybody else on the cooperative farm. On the
evening of that day I attended a meeting of the cooperative farmers,
where I found him to be an active speaker. Under such a good social
system as ours, he said, people must work hard, and must not shun
work. And he strongly criticized those who did not take their work
seriously.

I was told that his daughter-in-law in Pyongyang once came to see
him. The mother-in-law had offered to give her some rice to help her
out. When the old man came to hear this, he scolded his wife and
daughter-in-law, saying, “We are now living under such a good
system; the state supplies us with enough rice to live on. What do you
need more for? You must not take the rice with you; I’m going to put it
aside for some families whose breadwinners were killed in the war or
are now on active service.”

We can say that this grandfather is not only devoted wholeheartedly
to labour but also is deeply convinced of the superiority of the socialist
system by his own life experience. He is aware of his duty to
consolidate this system further through his labour.

The mother of Comrade Ma Tong Hui, whom you know well, is
also communist-minded. She is a bereaved member of a revolutionary
family, who has given her son and daughter, her daughter-in-law and
her husband to the revolution. She is close on 90, yet she finds it
against her conscience to sit idle and remain under the Party’s care. She
is living alone and working diligently despite the Party’s advice to
have a home help.
Not long ago we called on the mother of Comrade Ma Tong Hui. We advised her again to have someone to cook for her at least because she was now so old and cooking was too hard for her. To this she replied, “I am ready to do anything you say, dear Premier, except this. I am sorry that I am now old and living at state expense without serving the country in any way; how can I ever allow myself to have a much-needed work hand just to look after my house?” As there was no use arguing with her, we appointed a nurse to live with her and help her at night, while going to work in the daytime.

Though old, Comrade Ma Tong Hui’s mother is outstanding in the castor silkworm raising movement started by the Women’s Union. She has sown the whole of her garden with the castor-oil plants to provide feed for the silkworms raised by the Women’s Union.

I think besides these people there are numerous unsung heroes among our working people today who are devoting all their energies and talents to the building of socialism. We must look for many such good examples and teach the pupils more actively by means of them. All our children and young people must work and live with a communist attitude towards labour, at all times and in all places, whether they are engaged in physical or mental labour.

In raising the new generation to be staunch builders of communism it is also important to educate them to take loving care of the common property of the state and society.

State and social property in a socialist society is owned by the people on a communal basis. Our property such as factories, schools and hospitals is all valuable assets in making the country rich and strong and in assuring a happy life for the people. It is therefore the sacred duty of all the working people in a socialist society to preserve and treasure the common property of the state and society. The better we manage state and social property and the more carefully we use it, the richer and stronger will the country become and the faster will the living standards of the people rise.

But, instead of taking care of the common property, some of our workers treat it carelessly and waste a great deal of it.
Workers in the building industry use thick steel rods and pipes where thin ones would do; they handle cement carelessly, leaving it to be blown away by the wind and uncovered in the rain. The amounts of structural steel and cement wasted in this way at the construction sites alone are enormous. Much cloth is also wasted. Few of the garments now produced at our clothing factories are well-tailored and elegant. It is tantamount to wasting cloth to make ill-fitting clothes out of nice fabrics.

We are still unable to supply the people with enough fish; it is not that our catch is small. We catch hundreds of thousands of tons of fish a year, sometimes 16,000 tons of pollack a day. But our workers fail to preserve the fish well and transport it speedily, thus spoiling a large part of it. That is why we still do not supply the people with sufficient fish.

We have spent a large amount of manpower and money to build schools for raising the successors to our revolution. But the schools are neglected and are wasted.

If state and social property is mismanaged and wasted like this, the living standards of the people cannot be raised quickly, nor can a socialist and communist society be built successfully no matter how much is built and produced. Although we now have solid economic assets, we are not yet able to improve our well-being. This is because our workers are indifferent to the state’s economic life and waste a great deal of property; they lack the spirit of public service and of caring for and treasuring state and social property.

In order to do away with malpractices which lead to a waste of state and social property, it is necessary to educate people from childhood in the spirit of economizing and treasuring this property. We must strengthen the ideological education of the pupils, so that they take loving care of the common property of the state and society.

To continue. We must educate the pupils in the spirit of collectivism.

Collectivism constitutes the basis of social life under socialism and communism. In a socialist and communist society the interests of the
collective and society include those of every working man and woman; they are identical with those of the working people themselves. It is, therefore, an essential requirement of socialist and communist society that all people should work helping each other under the slogan of “One for all and all for one”.

In order to equip the pupils with the collectivist spirit, they must first be awakened to the fact that the force of the collective is greater than the force of individuals, that collective heroism is superior to individual heroism and that the organizational or collective life is more important than the private life of individuals. The pupils must be encouraged from childhood to reject individualism and selfishness, to love the organization and the collective, and devote themselves to society and the people, to the Party and the revolution.

It must also be made clear to the pupils that the aim of their education and their scientific and technological studies is to serve the country and the people. As everyone knows, in a capitalist society science and technology are geared to the enjoyment of individuals and to the interests of the capitalist class, but in a socialist society they serve the interests of the working class and all the people. In other words, in a socialist society science and technology do not serve lucrative ends or individual pleasures, but the cause of freeing the working people from heavy, arduous work, of enriching and strengthening the country, and improving the people’s living standards.

In former times, it was thought by some that though they themselves were uneducated and were engaged in arduous farm work, their sons should be educated by one means or another to earn a comfortable living as sub-county office clerks or school teachers. I think rather elderly comrades present at this conference must have been influenced by this kind of idea.

We must not instil such ideas in the minds of the rising generation. We must not bring them up to be people who would serve the capitalists should the latter ask them to do so, or who would do anything for money. In our society today, science and technology
which do not serve the interests of the revolution and the working class are of no use. We must encourage the pupils to clearly understand the aim and significance of scientific and technological studies in a socialist society, so that they can dedicate all their learning and talents to the cause of the Party and the revolution, to the welfare of the working class and all the people.

Furthermore, in order to mould the new generation into true communists we must teach them to discard the way of life belonging to the old society and to work and live according to the new, socialist way of life.

We still have many remnants of the old life in our private life and in various spheres of social life. Such practices as giving extravagant feasts on festive occasions and burning incense at funerals are all manifestations of the old way of life. These meaningless formalities and ostentatious, outdated customs are unnecessary for us who are now building socialism.

In order to build socialism and communism successfully, we must get rid of the way of life inherited from the old society in all social spheres and establish a new way of life consistent with a socialist society. The old way of life cannot be abolished at once by force, but it can be eliminated gradually through patient education and criticism.

In abolishing the old way of life and establishing a socialist way of life it is important to educate the rising generation to live and work along socialist lines. If they all live and act according to socialist standards and rules of conduct in keeping with the inherent nature of our society, every aspect of the old way of life will ultimately be eliminated and the socialist way of life will prevail in all spheres of society. Our schools, therefore, must in every respect teach their pupils to live and work in the socialist way of life.

To apply the principles of socialist education thoroughly to educational work, a child psychology suited to socialist society must be created and pupils educated according to it.

Child psychology is of great importance for school education. Only
a schoolmaster who knows the mental state of the pupils well can educate them properly. Children are better educated in kindergartens and schools than at home because the teachers train them in a way best suited to their psychological peculiarities.

Child psychology must be developed to educate the schoolchildren in a way suitable to their mentality. The child psychology of bourgeois society cannot be adopted in our socialist education today without certain changes.

Some people maintain that child psychology is the same in any society because the mentality of children is the same whatever the social system. This is clearly incorrect.

A child’s mentality, too, is closely affected by its social environment. In a feudal society the juvenile mentality reflects the social environment of that society; this is also the case in a capitalist society. So the mentality of children growing up in a capitalist society and in a socialist society cannot be identical. Nowadays we frequently meet children who have just been repatriated from a capitalist society. Young as they are, they think money is all-important and claim their own share of money even amongst brothers. This is something alien to the children growing up in our country today. The young repatriates from a capitalist society have this mentality not because their parents brought them up in that way, but because in the society where they were born and bred—a capitalist society based on individualism—money is everything.

Because the mentality of children in a capitalist society differs from that in a socialist society, child psychology is naturally different.

Yet the textbooks on child psychology now being used in teachers training institutions cannot be regarded as completely socialist-oriented. They contain many remnants of the child psychology of the old society. Educational workers must get together and examine these textbooks, eliminate the bourgeois and revisionist elements which can still be found in them, and create a child psychology based entirely on socialism.

In order to apply the principles of socialist education
comprehensively in their work, teachers must be revolutionized and working-classized.

Unless the teachers, who are directly in charge of educational work, are revolutionized and working-classized, they cannot carry through the Party’s educational policy; and unless they are communists themselves, they will not be able to make their pupils into communists. The revolutionization and working-classization of the teachers is an important guarantee for the thorough implementation of the Party’s educational policy and of the principles of socialist education.

The revolutionization and working-classization of the intellectuals, including the teachers, acquires still greater importance since theirs is mainly mental labour. By saying that theirs is mental labour I do not mean, of course, that they have an easy job. To give a lecture, standing for hours on end and writing on the blackboard, is very hard work. Intellectuals engaged in mental work, however, are not tempered through collective labour for production like workers, and so they lack the working-class spirit of devoting all one’s efforts to the good of the collective and society. That is why our Party attaches great importance to the question of revolutionizing and working-classizing intellectuals, including the teachers.

The revolutionization and working-classization of intellectuals does not necessarily imply that they must work in factories. The point is to uproot the remnants of old ideas from their minds and firmly equip them with the communist spirit of diligence and selfless work for the Party and the revolution, for society and the collective.

An important way of revolutionizing and working-classizing the teachers is by strengthening their revolutionary organizational life. This alone will make it possible to eradicate the old ideas which still exist in people’s minds and continue to temper them politically and ideologically. We should further strengthen the organizational life of the teachers in Party and working people’s organizations, and thus lead them to wage an intense struggle against all kinds of unhealthy ideas and temper themselves untiringly.
In order to revolutionize and working-classize teachers we must also establish a proper reorientation system for them and educate them tirelessly. In particular, we should strengthen the system of an annual one-month course and make the course compulsory for all teachers however busy they may be. While attending the course they must combine study with ideological struggle.

In the revolutionization and working-classization of the teachers it is important to develop universities, colleges and other teachers training centres adequately.

These teachers training centres are what one might call “seedbeds” for rearing successors to our revolution. Only when the teachers training institutions educate their students proficiently can they produce revolutionized and working-classized teachers, without whom we cannot bring up our pupils and students to be ardent revolutionaries and communists.

In the past our officials did not pay great attention to the training of teachers and failed to build up the teachers training centres. Educational workers ought to have selected and admitted capable boys and girls to the universities of education, teachers training colleges and colleges for kindergarten teachers. Instead, they selected and admitted the capable ones to Kim Il Sung University and other institutions of higher learning, and enrolled the remainder in teachers training universities and colleges. It is indeed important to build up Kim Il Sung University. But it is no less important to build up these teachers training universities and colleges. These establishments train teachers who are to educate successors to our revolution. From now onwards, we should select and admit to them those who have a stronger feeling of loyalty to the Party and a stronger revolutionary spirit.

In the meantime, we must reinforce the teaching staff in the teacher training sector with people who have a strong Party spirit and working-class spirit and allegiance to the people. There is no need to dismiss all the present teachers on the grounds of developing the teaching staff in this sector with people devoted to the Party. We must make them communists by educating, revolutionizing and
working-classizing them in every possible way.

In order to improve teacher training we must revise the textbooks. Educational workers should examine all the textbooks and eliminate everything in them which is contrary to the principles of socialist education. On this basis, all the universities and colleges training teachers should give a revolutionary education to the students, using textbooks which conform to the working-class principle, and teach them the scientific, communist theory and methods of education.

We must further improve Party guidance to the training of teachers. Party organizations at all levels should supervise and give day-to-day guidance to this work. In particular, the Science and Education Department of the Party Central Committee and the education departments of the provincial Party committees should correctly guide and assist in developing the teaching staffs and student bodies in the teacher training sector and in examining the textbooks.

An important goal in the field of education today is to carry out creditably the task of training a large contingent of technicians and specialists, a large army of intellectuals for the country—a task put forward by the Fifth Congress of the Party.

During the Six-Year Plan we must more than double the number of technicians and specialists as compared with now, thus bringing it to 1,000,000. Without expanding their ranks to more than 1,000,000 in the near future, we cannot properly run the national economy equipped with modern technology; nor can we fulfil the tasks of the technical and cultural revolutions successfully. The demand everywhere in our country today is for technicians and specialists.

We are planning to transform the village clinics into hospitals. If we are to convert a village clinic into a hospital, we will need at least one doctor or assistant doctor each for internal medicine, surgery, pediatrics and obstetrics. Therefore, nearly 20,000 doctors will be needed to turn all the village clinics of our country into hospitals. We shall also need a large number of doctors to open more modern hospitals in cities.

We are planning to introduce compulsory ten-year education in the
near future. To do so, we must have many more teachers.

The technical revolution in the rural areas and highly intensive farm production call for large numbers of technicians and specialists in mechanics, electric power, chemistry and biology. We must have nearly 20,000 technicians and specialists in order to appoint only four of them to each cooperative farm.

We also intend to build many new large modern factories in the Six-Year Plan period. In order to operate these factories properly in the future, we also need numerous technicians and specialists. And many more are required for the expansion and further development of the existing factories and enterprises.

As you see, we need a great many technicians and specialists. So we shall have to train as many as 500,000 intellectuals in the next few years. It is true that this is not an easy job to undertake within a short time. But if our officials adhere to the Party’s policy of training a large army of intellectuals and work energetically for its realization, the task will be quite feasible.

In order to create a large army of intellectuals for the country, it is essential, first of all, to improve and stimulate the work of the existing institutes of higher learning and higher technical schools and establish more universities and colleges. At the same time, we must open a large number of factory colleges and factory higher technical schools to enrol worker-students and increase the correspondence and evening courses of universities and colleges.

If we are to establish new institutes of higher learning and increase various types of colleges and higher technical schools for worker-students, we need large numbers of teachers. While training more teachers in the sphere of education, we must ensure that working technicians and specialists take up teaching duties and lecture and teach the classes at colleges and higher technical schools and guarantee production at the same time.

In order to train a large army of intellectuals, adequate study facilities must be provided for students and working people. More schools should be built through a mass movement, laboratories should
be well equipped, and large quantities of textbooks and reference books published.

Libraries should be established everywhere, including towns and workers’ districts, and the students and working people should be encouraged to make full use of them. We are still unable to provide enough textbooks and reference books for all students and working people. So we must set up many libraries and see that they are used. If we open a well-equipped library in Huichon, for example, and stock it with sufficient textbooks and reference books, the students and working people, including young workers, of the city will be able to study without being inconvenienced.

Efficient organizational work is needed to fulfil successfully those tasks which are essential for the creation of a large army of intellectuals. If we neglect organizational work and fail to make strenuous efforts, we shall not be able to succeed in creating a large army of intellectuals in the Six-Year Plan period. All Party organizations and educators must organize work down to the last detail so that we attain the goal of increasing the number of technicians and specialists to more than 1,000,000.

To continue, educational workers must work hard to carry out the Party’s policy of introducing compulsory ten-year education.

Our Party is planning to introduce compulsory ten-year schooling in future. The aim is to give a higher secondary general education to the rising generation. If all young people acquire a higher level of general knowledge, they will be able to perform their duties with credit when they go to work in factories or serve in the People’s Army, and they will find it easier to enter university. Those who have received a higher secondary general education will find it quite possible to cover the whole university programme by self-tuition even if they are unable to attend university.

At present compulsory nine-year technical education is in force in our country, and compulsory ten-year education means giving pupils one more year at school. We are going to introduce compulsory ten-year education by lowering the age at which children are
admitted to school by one year, to six.

When the Party first suggested this, some voiced the opinion that if the children were too young, it would be hard to teach them. This, however, is the view of those who are unfamiliar with the characters of children. It could be said that the mental development of a human being begins at the age of four or five. We can say this because people over fifty remember certain incidents in their lives when they were four or five.

Last year we tried teaching six-year-olds in some 40 schools, and reviewed the results in the autumn of this year. We came to the conclusion that if we prepare the children properly for primary school in their last months of the middle class of kindergarten, it will be quite possible to admit six-year-olds to school and teach them. What troubles us is that children whose homes are widely scattered in mountainous areas have to travel a long distance to school. They find it particularly difficult to go to school in the blizzards of winter. Therefore, branch schools have to be set up in the mountain regions. If all join in building branch schools, just as the Women’s Union did in the past when building mothers’ schools, I think this problem, too, can be solved quite soon. Only one teacher is needed to teach in a branch school.

If we are to introduce compulsory ten-year education throughout the country, more schools have to be built, large numbers of teachers trained, and the production of textbooks and school requisites increased. It is therefore impossible to put compulsory ten-year education into effect at once. Maintaining the principle of giving priority to urban communities, we should introduce it in over 20 per cent of the whole country each year, thus completing the work by 1976.

Comrades,

The present meeting of educationalists has discussed an extremely important subject relating to the thorough application of the principles of socialist education.

So far we have achieved great results in creating a system of
socialist education and applying it in educational work. But we cannot rest content with the present successes, for they are only elementary ones. In future we must develop and perfect socialist pedagogy and apply it comprehensively.

Those responsible for the first process of revolutionizing and working-classizing the whole of society are the teachers. They are bringing up the rising generation to be builders of communism equipped with a revolutionary world outlook and qualified in the fields of science and technology. They are thus contributing actively to the work of revolutionizing and working-classizing the whole of society and conquering the ideological and material fortresses of communism. Therefore, teachers are not salary-earners but revolutionaries.

I hope that all our teachers will keenly realize the importance and honourable nature of their work, and will strive to carry out the responsible revolutionary assignments entrusted to them by the Party with credit.